A Commentary on Isaiah

Lewis P. Hussell
BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Isaiah wrote during the stormy period marking the expansion of the Assyrian empire and the decline of Israel. Under King Tiglath-Pileser III (745-727 B.C.) the Assyrians swept westward into Aram (Syria) and Canaan. About 733 the kings of Aram and Israel tried to pressure Ahaz king of Judah into joining a coalition against Assyria. Ahaz chose instead to ask Tiglath-Pileser for help, a decision condemned by Isaiah (see note on 7:1). Assyria did assist Judah and conquered the northern kingdom in 722-721. This made Judah even more vulnerable, and in 701 King Sennacherib of Assyria threatened Jerusalem itself. The godly King Hezekiah prayed earnestly, and Isaiah predicted that God would force the Assyrians to withdraw from the city (37:6-7). Nevertheless Isaiah warned Judah that her sin would bring captivity at the hands of Babylon. The visit of the Babylonian king’s envoys to Hezekiah set the stage for this prediction. Although the fall of Jerusalem would not take place until 586 B.C., Isaiah assumes the demise of Judah and proceeds to predict the restoration of the people from captivity. God would redeem his people from Babylon just as he rescued them from Egypt Isaiah predicts the rise of Cyrus the Persian, who would unite the Medes and Persians and conquer Babylon in 539. The decree of Cyrus would allow the Jews to return home in 538.

HIGHLIGHTS OF ISAIAH

Isaiah is a book that unveils the full dimensions of God’s judgment and salvation. God is “the Holy One of Israel” who must punish his rebellious people (1:2) but will afterward redeem them (41:14,16). Israel is a nation blind and deaf (6:9-10; 42:7), a vineyard that will be trampled (5:1-7), a people devoid of justice or righteousness (5:7; 10:1-2). The awful judgment that will be unleashed upon Israel and all the nations that defy God is called “the day of the LORD.” Although Israel has a foretaste of that day (5:30; 42:25), the nations bear its full power. It is a day associated in the NT with Christ’s second coming and the accompanying judgment (see 24:1,21; 34:1-2 and notes). Throughout the book, God’s judgment is referred to as “fire. He is the “Sovereign LORD”, far above all nations and rulers (40:15-24). Yet God will have compassion on his people (14:1-2) and will rescue them from
both political and spiritual oppression. Their restoration is like a new exodus (43:2,16-19; 52:10-12) as God redeems them and saves them (43:3; 49:8). Israel’s mighty Creator (40:21-22; 48:13) will make streams spring up in the desert (32:2) as he graciously leads them home. The theme of a highway for the return of exiles is a prominent one (11:16; 40:3 and notes) in both major parts of the book. The Lord raises a banner to summon the nations to bring Israel home.

Peace and safety mark this new Messianic age (11:6-9). A king descended from David will reign in righteousness (9:7; 32:1), and all nations will stream to the holy mountain of Jerusalem (2:2-4). God’s people will no longer be oppressed by wicked rulers (11:14; 45:14), and Jerusalem will truly be the “City of the LORD” (60:14).

The Lord calls the Messianic King “my servant” inchs. 42-53, a term also applied to Israel as a nation (see 41:8-9; 42:1). It is through the suffering of the servant that salvation in its fullest sense is achieved. Cyrus was God’s instrument to deliver Israel from Babylon (41:2), but Christ delivered mankind from the prison of sin (52:13-53:12). He became a “light for the Gentiles” (42:6), so that those nations that faced judgment (chs. 13-23) could find salvation (55:4-5). These Gentiles also became “servants of the LORD” (see 54:17).

The Lord’s kingdom on earth, with its righteous Ruler and his righteous subjects, is the goal toward which the book of Isaiah steadily moves. The restored earth and the restored people will then conform to the divine ideal, and all will result in the praise and glory of the Holy One of Israel for what he has accomplished.

KEYS TO OPEN ISAIAH

Isaiah son of Amoz is often thought of as the greatest of the writing prophets. He was a contemporary of Amos, Hosea and Micah, beginning his ministry in 740 B.C., the year King Uzziah died (see note on 6:1). According to an Jewish tradition, he was sawed in half during the reign of Manasseh (cf. Heb 11:37). Isaiah was married and had at least two sons, Shear-Jashub (7:3) and Maher-Shalal-Hash-Baz (8:3). He probably spent most of his life in Jerusalem, enjoying his greatest influence under King Hezekiah (see 37:1-2). Isaiah is also credited with writing a history of the reign of King Uzziah (2Ch 26:22).
SURVEY OF THE BOOK

Isaiah contains both prose and poetry; the beauty of its poetry is unsurpassed in the OT. The poetry is indeed rich and varied, as is the prophet’s vocabulary (e.g., he uses nearly 2,200 different Hebrew words—more than any other OT writer).

One of Isaiah’s favorite techniques is personification. The sun and moon are ashamed (24:23), while the desert and parched land rejoice (see 35:1) and the mountains and forests burst into song (44:23). The trees “clap their hands” (55:12). A favorite figure is the vineyard, which represents Israel (5:7). Treading the winepress is a picture of judgment (see 63:3), and to drink God’s “cup of wrath” is to stagger under his punishment (see 51:17). Isaiah uses the name “Rock” to describe God (17:10), and animals such as Leviathan and Rahab represent nations (see 27:1; 30:7; 51:9).

INSPIRATIONAL INTRODUCTION

Isaiah is a book that unveils the full dimensions of God’s judgment and salvation. God is “the Holy One of Israel” who must punish his rebellious people (1:2) but will afterward redeem them (41:14,16). Israel is a nation blind and deaf (6:9-10; 42:7), a vineyard that will be trampled (5:1-7), a people devoid of justice or righteousness (5:7; 10:1-2). The awful judgment that will be unleashed upon Israel and all the nations that defy God is called “the day of the LORD.” Although Israel has a foretaste of that day (5:30; 42:25), the nations bear its full power. It is a day associated in the NT with Christ’s second coming and the accompanying judgment (see 24:1,21; 34:1-2 and notes). Throughout the book, God’s judgment is referred to as “fire. He is the “Sovereign LORD”, far above all nations and rulers (40:15-24). Yet God will have compassion on his people (14:1-2) and will rescue them from both political and spiritual oppression. Their restoration is like a new exodus (43:2,16-19; 52:10-12) as God redeems them and saves them (43:3; 49:8). Israel’s mighty Creator (40:21-22; 48:13) will make streams spring up in the desert (32:2) as he graciously leads them home. The theme of a highway for the return of exiles is a prominent one (11:16; 40:3 and notes) in both major parts of the book. The Lord raises a banner to summon the nations to bring Israel home.

Peace and safety mark this new Messianic age (11:6-9). A king descended from
David will reign in righteousness (9:7; 32:1), and all nations will stream to the holy mountain of Jerusalem (2:2-4). God’s people will no longer be oppressed by wicked rulers (11:14; 45:14), and Jerusalem will truly be the “City of the LORD” (60:14).

The Lord calls the Messianic King “my servant” in chs. 42-53, a term also applied to Israel as a nation (see 41:8-9; 42:1). It is through the suffering of the servant that salvation in its fullest sense is achieved. Cyrus was God’s instrument to deliver Israel from Babylon (41:2), but Christ delivered mankind from the prison of sin (52:13-53:12). He became a “light for the Gentiles” (42:6), so that those nations that faced judgment (chs. 13-23) could find salvation (55:4-5). These Gentiles also became “servants of the LORD” (see 54:17). The Lord’s kingdom on earth, with its righteous Ruler and his righteous subjects, is the goal toward which the book of Isaiah steadily moves. The restored earth and the restored people.
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isaiah Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 1

This bunch of misguided God dropouts has walked out on God. We wonder why bother even trying to get this bunch of featherbrained misfits back into the fold. They were bad from the top of their head to the bottom of their feet. They lived like they had been in a Sodom and Gomorrah training camp. However, they still sacrificed but it was all a sham. God wanted them to straighten up and do what’s right and he promises to wipe the slate clean. The leaders are dishonest cronies who love idols but its curtains for these God-traitors if they continue fooling around in the goddess gardens. My commentary will give you more insight into the book.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 1

1The vision of Isaiah the son of Amoz, which he saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.

Isaiah was divinely granted a sight into the future while in a state of ecstasy. In these visions God showed him what would happen in future times.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT:

Num 12:6 And he said, Hear now my words: If there be a prophet among you, I the LORD will make myself known unto him in a vision, and will speak unto him in a dream.

Num 24:4 He hath said, which heard the words of God, which saw the vision of the Almighty, falling into a trance, but having his eyes open:

The vision occurred during the following four administrations. (Uzziah 783-
2Hear, O heavens, and give ear, O earth: for the LORD hath spoken, I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against me.

They are admonished to listen as God makes his case against them. God had taken care of them like a parent takes care of their children but Israel had rebelled against him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Deu 30:19 I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live:

3The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master’s crib: but Israel doth not know, my people doth not consider.

Even animals know whose boss and where the feed comes from. God says his people have no discernment they acted like a bunch of guilt ridden God-dropouts.

4Ah sinful nation, a people laden with iniquity, a seed of evildoers, children that are corrupters: they have forsaken the LORD, they have provoked the Holy One of Israel unto anger, they are gone away backward.

Isaiah describes them as a bunch of vandals rotten to the core staggering beneath a heavy load of guilt. The prophet paints a picture of them as bad to the bone, degenerate, perverted, wrongdoers. They had walked out on God, gave him the cold shoulder, never looked back and broke the contract with God and he is going to kick them out.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Jer 16:12 And ye have done worse than your fathers; for, behold, ye walk every one after the imagination of his evil heart, that they may not hearken unto me:
Why should ye be stricken any more? ye will revolt more and more: the whole head is sick, and the whole heart faint.

You keep betraying God so why should he send corrective measures? You will revolt more and more. From head to heart you are diseased. The gears inside their head are not meshing and their heart has a large clot.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ENDORSE THE TEXT:

Jer 2:30 In vain have I smitten your children; they received no correction: your own sword hath devoured your prophets, like a destroying lion.

6 From the sole of the foot even unto the head there is no soundness in it; but wounds, and bruises, and putrifying sores: they have not been closed, neither bound up, neither mollified with ointment.

Your country has been devastated by foreigners, plunder and devastation is everywhere. You stand by and watch helplessly as they devour your crops.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Psa 77:2 In the day of my trouble I sought the Lord: my sore ran in the night, and ceased not: my soul refused to be comforted. READ: Jer 6:14, Jer 30:12, Nah 3:19.

7 Your country is desolate, your cities are burned with fire: your land, strangers devour it in your presence, and it is desolate, as overthrown by strangers.

The prophet pictures the cities devastated and lying in ashes; their farms plundered; barns burned down, fences wrecked, everything turned upside down and ransacked.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 6:11 Then said I, Lord, how long? And he answered, Until the cities be
wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate,

8And the daughter of Zion is left as a cottage in a vineyard, as a lodge in a garden of cucumbers, as a besieged city.

Isaiah paints three graphic pictures of Zion: She looks like a shanty in a cucumber patch after harvest time; or a city blockaded so no supplies can enter, or a guard shack in a vineyard after the grapes have been gathered.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Lam 2:1 How hath the Lord covered the daughter of Zion with a cloud in his anger, and cast down from heaven unto the earth the beauty of Israel, and remembered not his footstool in the day of his anger!

9Except the LORD of hosts had left unto us a very small remnant, we should have been as Sodom, and we should have been like unto Gomorrah.

If you could travel back in time and take a look at Sodom and Gomorrah. If God had not intervened they would have been wiped out like Sodom and Gomorrah. With this comparison Isaiah won’t win the “person of the year” award at the next city banquet.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT:

Rom 9:29 And as Esaias said before, Except the Lord of Sabaoth had left us a seed, we had been as Sodoma, and been made like unto Gomorrha.

10Hear the word of the LORD, ye rulers of Sodom; give ear unto the law of our God, ye people of Gomorrah.

God had his fill of their grain-fed fatted calves what he wants them to do is wash of the grime of their schemes and crimes he wants them to block oppression and defend the vulnerable.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUSTRATE THE TEXT:

Mic 3:10-11 They build up Zion with blood, and Jerusalem with iniquity. The heads thereof judge for reward, and the priests thereof teach for hire, and the prophets thereof divine for money: yet will they lean upon the LORD, and say, Is not the LORD among us? none evil can come upon us.

11To what purpose is the multitude of your sacrifices unto me? saith the LORD: I am full of the burnt offerings of rams, and the fat of fed beasts; and I delight not in the blood of bullocks, or of lambs, or of he goats.

God says that when they came into his court of worship who gave them the idea of acting like this.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

1Sa 15:22 And Samuel said, Hath the LORD as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the LORD? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams.

12When ye come to appear before me, who hath required this at your hand, to tread my courts?

All of this was meaningless and worthless without true justice. Isaiah describes them as a bunch of pious frauds holding solemn meetings, festivals and convocations; it was all talk and no walk.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Mic 6:8 He hath shewed thee, O man, what is good; and what doth the LORD require of thee, but to do justly, and to love mercy, and to walk humbly with thy God?

13Bring no more vain oblations; incense is an abomination unto me; the new moons and sabbaths, the calling of assemblies, I cannot away with; it is iniquity, even the solemn meeting.
God says he can’t tolerate any more of their new moons and appointed feasts. It was no more than ritual and charade. God was weary with their trivial religious gatherings.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Mal 1:10 Who is there even among you that would shut the doors for nought? neither do ye kindle fire on mine altar for nought. I have no pleasure in you, saith the LORD of hosts, neither will I accept an offering at your hand.

14 Your new moons and your appointed feasts my soul hateth: they are a trouble unto me; I am weary to bear them.

Meetings, meetings, meetings, monthly, weekly, daily-meetings for this, meetings for that; God says he hated them. When they did their prayer performance God was looking the other way.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Amo 5:21 I hate, I despise your feast days, and I will not smell in your solemn assemblies.

15 And when ye spread forth your hands, I will hide mine eyes from you: yea, when ye make many prayers, I will not hear: your hands are full of blood.

With blood on their hands it was drowning out their prayers. God says to take a spiritual shower and wash up—take a long shower and wash off the grime and grit of evil and help the down-and-out.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 59:2 But your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid his face from you, that he will not hear.

16 Wash you, make you clean; put away the evil of your doings from before mine eyes; cease to do evil;
They are called on to redress the wronged and champion the cause of orphans and widows.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Jer 4:14 O Jerusalem, wash thine heart from wickedness, that thou mayest be saved. How long shall thy vain thoughts lodge within thee?

17 Learn to do well; seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow.

God wants them to sit down and settle the dispute between them and then he will wash them white as snow. God gives them the options and they are making the call.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Psa 82:3-4 Defend the poor and fatherless: do justice to the afflicted and needy. Deliver the poor and needy: rid them out of the hand of the wicked.

18 Come now, and let us reason together, saith the LORD: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool.

They can dig in and resist God or they can have an attitude adjustment and eat the best of their land.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Act 18:4 And he reasoned in the synagogue every sabbath, and persuaded the Jews and the Greeks.

19 If ye be willing and obedient, ye shall eat the good of the land:

If you refuse and rebel you will not eat the best of the land.
Hos 14:1-2 O Israel, return unto the LORD thy God; for thou hast fallen by thine iniquity. Take with you words, and turn to the LORD: say unto him, Take away all iniquity, and receive us graciously: so will we render the calves of our lips.

But if ye refuse and rebel, ye shall be devoured with the sword: for the mouth of the LORD hath spoken it.

If they rebel the sword of their enemies will eat them. Isaiah reinforces the statement by saying, “the Lord has spoken it.”

1Sa 12:25 But if ye shall still do wickedly, ye shall be consumed, both ye and your king.

How is the faithful city become an harlot! it was full of judgment; righteousness lodged in it; but now murderers.

Whoredom had become a way of life for them. They had frequented the “sex-and-religion-shrines.” The chaste city had become unchaste—she was a slut and Isaiah had likened her to Sodom and Gomorrah. In olden days she was a city that was known for justice and righteousness but now murder was on the headlines of the daily paper.

Jer 2:20-21 For of old time I have broken thy yoke, and burst thy bands; and thou saidst, I will not transgress; when upon every high hill and under every green tree thou wanderest, playing the harlot. Yet I had planted thee a noble vine, wholly a right seed: how then art thou turned into the degenerate plant of a strange vine unto me?

Thy silver is become dross, thy wine mixed with water:
You are filled with a bunch of counterfeiters—your silver is mixed with worthless alloy and you water down the wine.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Eze 22:18,19 Son of man, the house of Israel is to me become dross: all they are brass, and tin, and iron, and lead, in the midst of the furnace; they are even the dross of silver. Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Because ye are all become dross, behold, therefore I will gather you into the midst of Jerusalem.

23 Thy princes are rebellious, and companions of thieves: every one loveth gifts, and followeth after rewards: they judge not the fatherless, neither doth the cause of the widow come unto them.

Your politicians are in cahoots with the mob, you are hand in glove with crooks—bribery, greed and corruption are the norm. Your judges itch for a gift, justice is denied the poor and money buys justice. These corrupt officials never stand-up or stick-up for the homeless or defenseless.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Exo 23:8 And thou shalt take no gift: for the gift blindeth the wise, and perverteth the words of the righteous.

24 Therefore saith the LORD, the LORD of hosts, the mighty One of Israel, Ab, I will ease me of mine adversaries, and avenge me of mine enemies:

This is God’s sentence: The maker of atoms and angels is about to bring down the house on them. God is going to enjoy getting back at his enemies.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Rev 18:8 Therefore shall her plagues come in one day, death, and mourning, and famine; and she shall be utterly burned with fire: for strong is the Lord God who judgeth her.
25 And I will turn my hand upon thee, and purely purge away thy dross, and take away all thy tin:

The ones who were not avenged in the previous verse are promised that their dross and tin (their sin and injustice is compared to dross and tin in precious metal) will be purged away by the smelting pot of God’s justice.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Eze 20:38 And I will purge out from among you the rebels, and them that transgress against me: I will bring them forth out of the country where they sojourn, and they shall not enter into the land of Israel: and ye shall know that I am the LORD.

26 And I will restore thy judges as at the first, and thy counsellors as at the beginning: afterward thou shalt be called, The city of righteousness, the faithful city.

God promises to restore their judges as they once were. The city will once again have a faithful government and will be called “the faithful city.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 60:17-18 For brass I will bring gold, and for iron I will bring silver, and for wood brass, and for stones iron: I will also make thy officers peace, and thine exactors righteousness. Violence shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction within thy borders; but thou shalt call thy walls Salvation, and thy gates Praise.

27 Zion shall be redeemed with judgment, and her converts with righteousness.

God has a right way and will put Zion back on the correct path and when he does her people will be converted and redeemed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Rom 11:26-27 And so all Israel shall be saved: as it is written, There shall
come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob: For this is my covenant unto them, when I shall take away their sins.

28 And the destruction of the transgressors and of the sinners shall be together, and they that forsake the LORD shall be consumed.

This will be the doom of the damned. Those who never repent will be crushed; these rebels and transgressors will be consumed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Psa 37:38 But the transgressors shall be destroyed together: the end of the wicked shall be cut off.

29 For they shall be ashamed of the oaks which ye have desired, and ye shall be confounded for the gardens that ye have chosen.

They had dallied in the sacred grove-shrines and committed abominable acts in the garden-shrines with idols and now you will be confounded.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Eze 6:13 Then shall ye know that I am the LORD, when their slain men shall be among their idols round about their altars, upon every high hill, in all the tops of the mountains, and under every green tree, and under every thick oak, the place where they did offer sweet savour to all their idols.

30 For ye shall be as an oak whose leaf fadeth, and as a garden that hath no water.

You will end up like an oak tree that loses its leaves or like a garden that turns brown for lack of water.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 5:6 And I will lay it waste: it shall not be pruned, nor digged; but there
shall come up briers and thorns: I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

31And the strong shall be as tow, and the maker of it as a spark, and they shall both burn together, and none shall quench them.

The strongest (oaks) are likened to tow and the idol maker is likened to a spark and both are going to burn together and none can quench them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

 Isa 43:17 Which bringeth forth the chariot and horse, the army and the power; they shall lie down together, they shall not rise: they are extinct, they are quenched as tow.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 2

God tells us that he will establish his church in the last days in Zion and that the word would go forth from Jerusalem to all the world. He further tells us that the character of his people will be peace loving. They will beat their spears into pruning-hooks and their swords into plowshares. He calls for Israel to walk in the light of the Lord. They were a people that had borrowed the customs and idols from the heathen. He likens them to trees, hills and mountains that would soon be obliterated. This chapter is a gold mine just waiting for you to pan your own gold.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 2

1 The word that Isaiah the son of Amoz saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem.

The emphasis is upon the message and not on the messenger.

2 And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the LORD’s house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it.

Isaiah is told that in the distant future that God’s house will be higher than the hills and established in the mountains and that all races and ethnic groups will flow into it like a mighty river. Jesus said he would build his church.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT:

Jesus said that he would build his church Mat 16:18

Peter said that Pentecost was the last days. Act 2: 17
Paul calls the Christian age the last days. **Heb 1:2**

Peter calls Pentecost the beginning. **Act 11:15**

Paul calls the church the house of God. **1Ti 3:15**

Paul says that their word went to the end of the world. **Rom 10:18**

Paul says that the word was preached to all the world. **Col 1:23**

Daniel’s vision of the latter days had its fulfillment at Pentecost. **Dan 2:28-45**

Daniel pictures the stone (Jesus) smiting the metallic man and destroying the four kingdoms and becoming a mountain and filling the whole earth.

Isaiah pictures the Gentiles coming to Christ.

**Isa 11:10 Isa 49:6, Isa 60:11,12**

David also speaks of all nations serving God. **Psa 2:8**

**Psa 22:27, 72:8, 86:9.**

Malachi prophecies that all nations shall call God blessed. **Mal 3:12**

This is my summary of these verses: In the last days beginning at Pentecost all nations were present and the apostles called this the last days, the church was established and the word of the Lord went forth from (Zion) Jerusalem to all nations, within one generation the entire world was evangelized. All of this has its fulfillment in Jesus.

3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.
Zion will be the source of revelation and it will originate from Jerusalem. Jesus applied this scripture to the beginning of the church in Luke 24:46-47.

4And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

No longer will it be Jewish, but rather among the nations, and he will rebuke many people. They will not be warlike but a people of peace. Isaiah tells us that Jesus will rebuke the nations. These verses are fulfilled under the administration of our Messiah Jesus.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 11:3-4 And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the LORD: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears: But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked. Read: Isa 9:7; 11:6-Psa 72:3, 4-9.

5O house of Jacob, come ye, and let us walk in the light of the LORD.

The word of the Lord is likened to a lamp that dispels darkness and prevents us from stumbling.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Luk 1:79 To give light to them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace. Read: Joh 12:35-36; 1Th 5:5

6Therefore thou hast forsaken thy people the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and are soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

God had abandoned his people because they had practiced the customs of the
land; they had become soothsayers, diviners, fortunetellers, a degenerate race full of hokey religion and pagan hocus-pocus.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

**Lev 19:31**  Regard not them that have familiar spirits, neither seek after wizards, to be defiled by them: I am the LORD your God. Read **Isa 47:12-13**; **Lev 20:6**, **Deu 18:10-11**, **1Ch 10:13**, **1Ki 11:1, 2**

Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots:

Everywhere you looked there was gold and silver and gadgets and trinkets, horses and chariots (chariots were their war machines).

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Deu 17:16**  But he shall not multiply horses to himself, nor cause the people to return to Egypt, to the end that he should multiply horses: forasmuch as the LORD hath said unto you, Ye shall henceforth return no more that way. Read: **1Ki 10:21-27**

Their land also is full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made:

They had all sorts of gods and idols which they had made with their own hands to worship.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Jer 11:13**  For according to the number of thy cities were thy gods, O Judah; and according to the number of the streets of Jerusalem have ye set up altars to that shameful thing, even altars to burn incense unto Baal.

And the mean man boweth down, and the great man humbleth himself: therefore forgive them not.
These pretentious egos from commoner to nobility were caught up in the worship of Idols. Isaiah paints a picture of them as a degenerate race not worthy of forgiveness.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUSTRATE THE TEXT:

Jer 18:23 Yet, LORD, thou knowest all their counsel against me to slay me: forgive not their iniquity, neither blot out their sin from thy sight, but let them be overthrown before thee; deal thus with them in the time of thine anger.

10 Enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for fear of the LORD, and for the glory of his majesty.

Perhaps this is where we got the phrase “crawl under a rock and hide”. They needed to hide from their shame.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Jdg 6:1,2 And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the LORD: and the LORD delivered them into the hand of Midian seven years. And the hand of Midian prevailed against Israel: and because of the Midianites the children of Israel made them the dens which are in the mountains, and caves, and strong holds. Read: Isa 10:3 Isa 42:22 Hos 10:8

11 The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the LORD alone shall be exalted in that day.

These haughty men who were so high minded were about to be brought down by the Almighty.

12 For the day of the LORD of hosts shall be upon every one that is proud and lofty, and upon every one that is lifted up; and he shall be brought low:

God is going to bring these big heads down a notch. God has had enough of their pride and arrogance and pomp. The scripture makes it plain that God is sending Babylon to punish Israel for their sins and they will be hiding in
the dens and caves but they will be discovered and killed. God is going to pay them a visit but it will not be a friendly visit.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES

Isa 13:9 Behold, the day of the LORD cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate: and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it. Read: Amo 5:18

13 And upon all the cedars of Lebanon, that are high and lifted up, and upon all the oaks of Bashan,

These high and mighty self-important, eminent men are likened to the giant cedars of Lebanon or the mighty oaks of Bashan that are chopped down.

14 And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills that are lifted up,

Isaiah carries the picture further and compares these men to high mountains and lofty hills. The prophets were good with word pictures—they likened Egypt to a “dragon of the Nile” and Babylon to a crooked sea serpent.

15 And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall,

These high ranking, snobbish arrogant people will come down like a toppled high tower or a wall that tumbles down from a gigantic mudslide.

16 And upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.

These big heads are going down like a sinking ship or a fading picture.

17 And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low: and the LORD alone shall be exalted in that day.

When God gets through with these hoity-toity, self important, snooty folks they will look like a dwarfed cedar of Lebanon. These swell heads will look like a pygmy in a giant exhibition.

18 And the idols he shall utterly abolish.
Their religious icons are heading for the garbage dump.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 27:9 By this therefore shall the iniquity of Jacob be purged; and this is all the fruit to take away his sin; when he maketh all the stones of the altar as chalkstones that are beaten in sunder, the groves and images shall not stand up.

19 And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for fear of the LORD, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

After getting all their idols dumped they will try to hide from the terror of God. They will be looking for a rock cave for a hang out from the dazzling presence of our God.

20 In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which they made each one for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;

These very gods that they had worshipped are being discarded as if of no value. They will load them up on an ox cart and haul them to the dump.

21 To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for fear of the LORD, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

Men are pictured as crawling into caverns or under cliffs to get away from the terror of God when he rises to shake the earth. Their chance of escaping the wrath of God was as unlikely as a small boat surviving an ocean vortex. Later in this book Isaiah will give an expanded view of how God will shake the earth.

22 Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils: for wherein is he to be accounted of?
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 3

God is going to take away their food supply—their war machine is going to be destroyed. There is going to be chaos in the streets, the government is going to collapse. Anarchy is everywhere; the politicians have ruined the country. A foreign government is sending their army to destroy the populace and carry away some as war prisoners. The case against Zion is presented and heaven’s court will decide the verdict. All of this and more will be presented in the exposition.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 3

1 For, behold, the Lord, the LORD of hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem and from Judah the stay and the staff, the whole stay of bread, and the whole stay of water.

God is going to take away the staff of life and their supply of water.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Eze 4:16-17 Moreover he said unto me, Son of man, behold, I will break the staff of bread in Jerusalem: and they shall eat bread by weight, and with care; and they shall drink water by measure, and with astonishment: That they may want bread and water, and be astonished one with another, and consume away for their iniquity.

2 The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient,

The lord is going to take away the soldiers and judges, the prophets, educators and statesmen.
2Ki 24:14-16 And he carried away all Jerusalem, and all the princes, and all the mighty men of valour, even ten thousand captives, and all the craftsmen and smiths: none remained, save the poorest sort of the people of the land. And he carried away Jehoiachin to Babylon, and the king’s mother, and the king’s wives, and his officers, and the mighty of the land, those carried he into captivity from Jerusalem to Babylon. And all the men of might, even seven thousand, and craftsmen and smiths a thousand, all that were strong and apt for war, even them the king of Babylon brought captive to Babylon.

3The captain of fifty, and the honourable man, and the counsellor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.

Army officers, business men, advisors, captains, generals, and politicians.

4And I will give children to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

Young boys will be their princes and rule over them your kids will be in charge.

2Ch 33:1 Manasseh was twelve years old when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty and five years in Jerusalem:

2Ch 34:1 Josiah was eight years old when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem one and thirty years. Read: 2Ch 36:9; Ecc 10:16

5And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbour: the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honourable.

Neighbor against neighbor, people bullying each other, no respect for the older people, anarchy in the streets.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Mic 3:11 The heads thereof judge for reward, and the priests thereof teach for hire, and the prophets thereof divine for money: yet will they lean upon the LORD, and say, Is not the LORD among us? none evil can come upon us.

When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, saying, Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let this ruin be under thy hand:

Probably means that their house had a robe of office and could put this piece of clothing on and act as one in charge. The government was in such a mess and no one had a clue on how to fix it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

7In that day shall he swear, saying, I will not be an healer; for in my house is neither bread nor clothing: make me not a ruler of the people.

He knew that he couldn’t cure the situation so he didn’t want to get involved.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES

8For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen: because their tongue and their doings are against the LORD, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

Their government was collapsing—their mouth and actions had got them into trouble with God. Jerusalem and Judah was on its last leg. This passage was fulfilled 150 years later at the fall of Jerusalem (586 B.C.).

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT
ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

9The shew of their countenance doth witness against them; and they declare their sin as Sodom, they hide it not. Woe unto their soul! for they have rewarded evil unto themselves.
They didn't try to conceal their sin they paraded it in the public and flaunted it in the streets. This degenerate people was brazen in their depravity. Does this look like the gay rights parades today?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Jer 3:3** Therefore the showers have been withholden, and there hath been no latter rain; and thou hadst a whore’s forehead, thou refusedst to be ashamed. Read: Jer 6:15

**10**Say ye to the righteous, that it shall be well with him: for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

The righteous shall eat the good of all they have done.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

**Jer 15:11** The LORD said, Verily it shall be well with thy remnant; verily I will cause the enemy to entreat thee well in the time of evil and in the time of affliction.

**Zep 2:3** Seek ye the LORD, all ye meek of the earth, which have wrought his judgment; seek righteousness, seek meekness: it may be ye shall be hid in the day of the LORD’S anger.

**11**Woe unto the wicked! it shall be ill with him: for the reward of his hands shall be given him.

Not so with the wicked—these lawless wicked people will get what’s coming to them. They had made their bed so they must sleep in it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

**Psa 11:5** Upon the wicked he shall rain snares, fire and brimstone, and an horrible tempest: this shall be the portion of their cup. Read: Psa 1; Psa 11:6

**12**As for my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over
them. O my people, they which lead thee cause thee to err, and destroy the way of thy paths.

They will get some real fools to rule over them. Children that are out of control—maybe they had some punk-rock baggy pants, kids that hung-out on the street corner. They evidently had some loud mouthed political woman leading them down the path to ruin.

13 The LORD standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.

God walks into the court room and calls court into session and opens the indictment and argues the case. The docket is set and opening arguments are about to begin.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Hos 4:1, 2 Hear the word of the LORD, ye children of Israel: for the LORD hath a controversy with the inhabitants of the land, because there is no truth, nor mercy, nor knowledge of God in the land. By swearing, and lying, and killing, and stealing, and committing adultery, they break out, and blood toucheth blood.

14 The LORD will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people, and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard; the spoil of the poor is in your houses.

As the case gets under way the first to be charged in the indictment are the princes—they are charged with oppression, exactions and ruining the country.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Eze 22:29 The people of the land have used oppression, and exercised robbery, and have vexed the poor and needy: yea, they have oppressed the stranger wrongfully.

15 What mean ye that ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor? saith the Lord GOD of hosts.
Without getting into the specifics he opens the case with the picture of beating people and rubbing their heads in the ground. As the case gets under way evidence will be presented. The leaders have played havoc with the country. This place was totally bankrupt.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:**

**Amo 2:6** Thus saith the LORD; For three transgressions of Israel, and for four, I will not turn away the punishment thereof; because they sold the righteous for silver, and the poor for a pair of shoes; Read: **Amo 8:6; Psa 11:6; Mic 3:3**

**16**Moreover the LORD saith, Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet:

An entire list of complaints is being presented before the judge. These rich well-to-do women are walking around with their nose in the air, ogling with their eyes at other men, swinging their hips, tossing their hair, neck thrown back and prancing as they walk and jingling the ankle bracelets. The Eastern ladies wear on their ankles large rings to which smaller ones are attached, which make a tinkling sound as they move nimbly.

**17**Therefore the LORD will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the LORD will discover their secret parts.

God is going to fix these Zion women with itchy scalp and scabs and some female disorder.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Deu 28:27** The LORD will smite thee with the botch of Egypt, and with the emerods, and with the scab, and with the itch, whereof thou canst not be healed.

**Isa 20:4** So shall the king of Assyria lead away the Egyptians prisoners, and the Ethiopians captives, young and old, naked and barefoot, even with their buttocks uncovered, to the shame of Egypt.
18In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments about their feet, and their cauls, and their round tires like the moon,

The invading army will take care of the ankle ornaments. These soldiers will take the ornaments and pendants home with them for their wives and girl friends or maybe to keep, as a souvenir in their memorabilia box.

19The chains, and the bracelets, and the mufflers,

These women will be stripped of everything they own from earrings, arm chains, scarf’s and veils.

20The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the earrings,

The invaders will plunder everything and remove these women’s head dress, anklets, leg ornaments and perfume boxes.

21The rings, and nose jewels,

They will strip them of their wedding rings, rings on their toes and nose rings.

22The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping pins,

They will take their party dresses, festival robes, shawls, hand bags and gowns.

23The glasses, and the fine linen, and the hoods, and the vails.

The plunder goes on and on and on. They take their mirrors, their lingerie, their head-dress, combs, diamond brooches and pearl necklaces.

24And it shall come to pass, that instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle a rent; and instead of well set hair baldness; and instead of a stomacher a girding of sackcloth; and burning instead of beauty.

These women will endure a long march to Babylon—no bath—they will smell
to high-heaven, they will stink like a bearded bicyclist with B.O. Instead of modeling a flowing gown they will be wearing rags. Instead of sporting a fancy hairdo they will be sporting a shaved head they will be bald as an eagle. Instead of wearing a stomacher they will be dressed in an old gunny sack with a sea grass string around the waist. Instead of diamond broach they will wear a brand burned on their body to identify them as slaves.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Eze 7:18 They shall also gird themselves with sackcloth, and horror shall cover them; and shame shall be upon all faces, and baldness upon all their heads.

25Thy men shall fall by the sword, and thy mighty in the war.

The men are going to be killed or slain in battle.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Lam 2:21 The young and the old lie on the ground in the streets: my virgins and my young men are fallen by the sword; thou hast slain them in the day of thine anger; thou hast killed, and not pitied.

26And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she being desolate shall sit upon the ground.

Sitting on the ground at the city gates will be young women ravished, raped and stripped bare crying because their husbands and family have be slain.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Lam 1:4 The ways of Zion do mourn, because none come to the solemn feasts: all her gates are desolate: her priests sigh, her virgins are afflicted, and she is in bitterness.

Lam 2:10 The elders of the daughter of Zion sit upon the ground, and keep silence: they have cast up dust upon their heads; they have girded
themselves with sackcloth: the virgins of Jerusalem hang down their heads to the ground.

One final note: Doomsday was arriving—they will be going into captivity but the leaders were telling the people that the Prophet Isaiah was loony and not to worry about his dire predictions.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 4

With the death toll in the millions and the main populace sold into slavery a few surviving women are desperate to have a child so they are willing to practice polygamy. God blesses the land and it is filled with fruit for the escaped of Israel and their names are recorded among the living and God purifies them and they are called the holy people. God is visible by fire at night and a cloud in the day to make his presence known to the escapees.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 4

1And in that day seven women shall take hold of one man, saying, We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel: only let us be called by thy name, to take away our reproach.

War had taken its toll on the population —90% of the people had been killed and most of the male population was decimated, women suffered the awful disgrace of being widows and childless. Seven women tell one man that they will furnish their own food and clothing if he would allow the children born from her to bear his name. They want him to make them pregnant so as to take away their reproach.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Gen 30:23 And she conceived, and bare a son; and said, God hath taken away my reproach: Read: Isa 17:7; Isa 10:21; Isa 10:20

2In that day shall the branch of the LORD be beautiful and glorious, and the fruit of the earth shall be excellent and comely for them that are escaped of Israel.
Isaiah sees the escapees from the war once again enjoying the fruit of the land. The survivors will gather in the crops and there will be an abundance of harvest.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 60:21-22  Thy people also shall be all righteous: they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of my planting, the work of my hands, that I may be glorified. A little one shall become a thousand, and a small one a strong nation: I the LORD will hasten it in his time. Read: Psa 85:11; Psa 85:12; Psa 85:13

3And it shall come to pass, that he that is left in Zion, and he that remaineth in Jerusalem, shall be called holy, even every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem:

This is the remnant who has survived the war and God reclassifies them as holy. Their names are on the register of survivors from the city’s purging.

4When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment, and by the spirit of burning.

God washes away the moral filth of the survivors and purges the blood guilt of Jerusalem he does it with a devastating blast of searing judgment.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Eze 16:6-9  And when I passed by thee, and saw thee polluted in thine own blood, I said unto thee when thou wast in thy blood, Live; yea, I said unto thee when thou wast in thy blood, Live. I have caused thee to multiply as the bud of the field, and thou hast increased and waxen great, and thou art come to excellent ornaments: thy breasts are fashioned, and thine hair is grown, whereas thou wast naked and bare. Now when I passed by thee, and looked upon thee, behold, thy time was the time of love; and I spread my skirt over thee, and covered thy nakedness: yea, I sware unto thee, and entered into a covenant with thee, saith the Lord GOD, and thou becamest mine. Then
washed I thee with water; yea, I throughly washed away thy blood from thee, and I anointed thee with oil. Read: Eze 36:29

5And the LORD will create upon every dwelling place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day, and the shining of a flaming fire by night: for upon all the glory shall be a defence.

The ancient pillar of cloud by day and the pillar of fire by night will reappear to reassure the remnant of his protective presence.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Exo 14:19 And the angel of God, which went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them; and the pillar of the cloud went from before their face, and stood behind them: Read: Isa 33:20

6And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the day time from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and for a covert from storm and from rain.

Isaiah assures the remnant that survive that there is a place of refuge and protection to the righteous.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Psa 27:5 For in the time of trouble he shall hide me in his pavilion: in the secret of his tabernacle shall he hide me; he shall set me up upon a rock.

Psa 121:5-6 The LORD is thy keeper: the LORD is thy shade upon thy right hand. The sun shall not smite thee by day, nor the moon by night. Read: Exo 40:34-38
ISAIAH CHAPTER 5

INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 5

Isaiah is singing a song about a vineyard that had been well cared for—it had been grubbed, briers cut and burned, cultivated and a good selection of vine stock planted. The owner had built a fence around it and built a guard tower in the center of it and a wine vat to squeeze the grapes in. However, at harvest time it yielded nothing more than a few sour grapes. As the song continues we are informed that the vines are the leaders of Judah and Jerusalem and that the owner is going to cut down the vineyard and turn the field into a pasture for sheep and goats. The owner was looking for a crop of justice but all he got was a crop of victims. The song is about these high-rollers, rising before breakfast and boozing it up and then spending the day evicting land owners so they could acquire their land. They were using lies to sell evil so they could line their pockets but the land owner is going to “hiss” a nation from the north and they are going to come with a vast army and carry these people into exile. The entire song is waiting for you in the exposition.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 5

1Now will I sing to my wellbeloved a song of my beloved touching his vineyard. My wellbeloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill:

This love song or ballad is about the vineyard that God planted high up on a piece of fertile land.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Deu 31:19 Now therefore write ye this song for you, and teach it the children of Israel: put it in their mouths, that this song may be a witness for me against the children of Israel. Read: Isa 27:2-3; Psa 80:8; Jer 2:21
2And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with
the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a
winepress therein: and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and
it brought forth wild grapes.

He built a fence around it and cleared it of all the stones and prepared the
soil for planting, next he picked the very best grape vines and planted them.
While they are growing he builds a lookout tower in the center in order to
keep the animals and thieves out then he builds a winepress in the center of
vineyard expecting a grape harvest. But the unexpected happened at harvest
time the grapes were wild grapes, not many on the cluster and they were
small and sour.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 2:21 Yet I had planted thee a noble vine, wholly a right seed: how then art
thou turned into the degenerate plant of a strange vine unto me? Read: Psa
44:1-3; Rom 9:4; Neh 13:15; Mat 21:34-40.

3And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray
you, betwixt me and my vineyard.

The ballad asks the question as to what God will do with this bunch of grape vines.

Mar 12:9 What shall therefore the lord of the vineyard do? he will come and
destroy the husbandmen, and will give the vineyard unto others Read: Psa
50:4-6.

4What could have been done more to my vineyard, that I have not done
in it? wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes, brought
it forth wild grapes?

Who’s to blame for the sour grapes? What more could the owner of the
vineyard do?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

2Ch 36:14-16 Moreover all the chief of the priests, and the people, transgressed
very much after all the abominations of the heathen; and polluted the house of the LORD which he had hallowed in Jerusalem. And the LORD God of their fathers sent to them by his messengers, rising up betimes, and sending; because he had compassion on his people, and on his dwelling place: But they mocked the messengers of God, and despised his words, and misused his prophets, until the wrath of the LORD arose against his people, till there was no remedy. Read: Mat 23:37

5And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard: I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down:

The song says that he is going to remove the fence and turn the field into a pasture field for sheep or goats.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 27:10-11 Yet the defenced city shall be desolate, and the habitation forsaken, and left like a wilderness: there shall the calf feed, and there shall he lie down, and consume the branches thereof. When the boughs thereof are withered, they shall be broken off: the women come, and set them on fire: for it is a people of no understanding: therefore he that made them will not have mercy on them, and he that formed them will shew them no favour. Read: Lev 26:31-35; Lam 1:2-9

6And I will lay it waste: it shall not be pruned, nor digged; but there shall come up briers and thorns: I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

On second thought I will turn it into waste land, no more hard work hoeing out the weeds and briers—un-pruned—un-dug—un-weeded—an overgrown piece of waste land. He also decides to not water the vineyard.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 24:12 In the city is left desolation, and the gate is smitten with destruction. Read: Isa 32:13; Isa 32:13, 14; Lev 26:33-35; 2Ch 36:19-21; Deu 28:23-24
For the vineyard of the LORD of hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant: and he looked for judgment, but behold oppression; for righteousness, but behold a cry.

Now for the application of the story: Israel is the grape vine and the fruit he looked for was justice but the wild grapes of oppression and distress appeared.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Psa 80:8-11 Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt: thou hast cast out the heathen, and planted it. Thou preparedst room before it, and didst cause it to take deep root, and it filled the land. Read: Jer 12:10; Exo 22:22-27

Woe unto them that join house to house, that lay field to field, till there be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

He pronounces a woe on them for driving out the poor people and taking their land for housing development. Large land owners now owned the vineyards and they had drove out the inhabitants.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Hab 2:9-12 Woe to him that coveteth an evil covetousness to his house, that he may set his nest on high, that he may be delivered from the power of evil! Thou hast consulted shame to thy house by cutting off many people, and hast sinned against thy soul. For the stone shall cry out of the wall, and the beam out of the timber shall answer it. Woe to him that buildeth a town with blood, and stablisheth a city by iniquity. Read: Mat 23:14; 1Ki 21:16-20

In mine ears said the LORD of hosts, Of a truth many houses shall be desolate, even great and fair, without inhabitant.

He says that these splendid mansions will lay uninhabited.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 22:14 And it was revealed in mine ears by the LORD of hosts, Surely
A Commentary on Isaiah

this iniquity shall not be purged from you till ye die, saith the Lord GOD of hosts.

10 Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of an homer shall yield an ephah.

The song says that ten acres of vineyard will yield a little more than a pint of wine and that their grain fields would produce an equally poor yield.

Hag 1:9-11 Ye looked for much, and, lo, it came to little; and when ye brought it home, I did blow upon it. Why? saith the LORD of hosts. Because of mine house that is waste, and ye run every man unto his own house. Therefore the heaven over you is stayed from dew, and the earth is stayed from her fruit. And I called for a drought upon the land, and upon the mountains, and upon the corn, and upon the new wine, and upon the oil, and upon that which the ground bringeth forth, and upon men, and upon cattle, and upon all the labour of the hands.

11 Woe unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink; that continue until night, till wine inflame them!

He shames those who are engaging in a drinking bout seeking any thing that makes them intoxicated. They continue drinking till late at night and stagger in sometime in the morning and sleep it off during the day so that they can heat up their veins again the following night.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 28:1 Woe to the crown of pride, to the drunkards of Ephraim, whose glorious beauty is a fading flower, which are on the head of the fat valleys of them that are overcome with wine! Read Pro 23:29-30

12 And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine, are in their feasts: but they regard not the work of the LORD, neither consider the operation of his hands.

At their drinking party they had lovely music and plenty of food. They had no regard for their family or work.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

**Amo 6:4-7** That lie upon beds of ivory, and stretch themselves upon their couches, and eat the lambs out of the flock, and the calves out of the midst of the stall; That chant to the sound of the viol, *and* invent to themselves instruments of musick, like David; That drink wine in bowls, and anoint themselves with the chief ointments: but they are not grieved for the affliction of Joseph. Therefore now shall they go captive with the first that go captive, and the banquet of them that stretched themselves shall be removed.

13 Therefore *my* people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge: and their honourable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

They had been inconsiderate about the operation of God; no heed or thought about their health, family, or friends. Therefore they are headed for exile.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

**2Ki 17:6** In the ninth year of Hoshea the king of Assyria took Samaria, and carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor by the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes. Read: **Hos 4:6; Lam 4:4-5**

14 Therefore hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure: and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.

Hell is ready to welcome this madding crowd of rabble rousers to their new home.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

**Isa 14:9** Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming: it stirreth up the dead for thee, *even* all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.
15*And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled:*

These callous, uncaring, despicable men shall be brought down to their rightful place and some of the haughty, high-ceiling, disdainful people who think they are superior to others will be humiliated.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:**

**Isa 13:11** And I will punish the world for their evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible. Read: **Isa 9:14-17**

16*But the LORD of hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.*

This holy God is being justified by his judgment and be assured that he is righteous in doing so.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Eze 36:23** And I will sanctify my great name, which was profaned among the heathen, which ye have profaned in the midst of them; and the heathen shall know that I am the LORD, saith the Lord GOD, when I shall be sanctified in you before their eyes. Read: **1Ch 29:11; Psa 46:10**

17*Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.*

Among the ruins of the vineyard lambs shall feed and strangers will eat the fat lambs.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:**

**Deu 28:33** The fruit of thy land, and all thy labours, shall a nation which thou knowest not eat up; and thou shalt be only oppressed and crushed alway: Read: **Lam 5:2 Isa 32:14**
Woe unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope:

They were dragging their sin of perversity and iniquity along like a 4H boy leading a calf with a rope around the show ring at the county fair.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

They break in pieces thy people, O LORD, and afflict thine heritage.

6 They slay the widow and the stranger, and murder the fatherless.

Jer 8:5-6 Why then is this people of Jerusalem slidden back by a perpetual backsliding? they hold fast deceit, they refuse to return. I hearkened and heard, but they spake not aright: no man repented him of his wickedness, saying, What have I done? every one turned to his course, as the horse rusheth into the battle. Read: Psa 94:5-6

19 That say, Let him make speed, and hasten his work, that we may see it: and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it!

These sneering people were saying “let’s see what God will do so we can take a good look at it”.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Jer 17:15 Behold, they say unto me, Where is the word of the LORD? let it come now. Read: 2Pe 3:3-4

20 Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil; that put darkness for light, and light for darkness; that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

What perversity! They called evil good and good evil; they were slick talkers and knew how to manipulate public thinking.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**Pro 17:15** He that justifieth the wicked, and he that condemneth the just, even they both are abomination to the LORD. Read: 2Ti 3:1; 2Ti 3:2-3; 2Pe 2:18-19

21Woe unto them that are wise in their own eyes, and prudent in their own sight!

They had a high opinion of themselves–knew everything–thought they were smart; they saw themselves shrewd in their dealings.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**Pro 26:12** Seest thou a man wise in his own conceit? there is more hope of a fool than of him. Read: Job 11:12; Pro 26:16; Pro 3:7

22Woe unto them that are mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink:

They were always bragging about the amount of liquor they could drink and how to mix drinks at the bar.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORESE THE TEXT:

**Isa 28:7** But they also have erred through wine, and through strong drink are out of the way; the priest and the prophet have erred through strong drink, they are swallowed up of wine, they are out of the way through strong drink; they err in vision, they stumble in judgment. Read: Hab 2:15; Pro 23:19-20; Isa 28:1-3

23Which justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

For a bribe they would release the guilty and then fine the innocent.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Exo 23:6-8** Thou shalt not wrest the judgment of thy poor in his cause. Keep thee far from a false matter; and the innocent and righteous slay thou not: for I will not justify the wicked. And thou shalt take no gift: for the gift blindeth the wise, and perverteth the words of the righteous. Read: **Pro 24:24**

24Therefore as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, so their root shall be as rottenness, and their blossom shall go up as dust: because they have cast away the law of the LORD of hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.

God is going to dole out punishment to them: Just as sure as fire whips thru a field of broom sage or chaff left behind by the threshing crew. From fire he changes the metaphor to their root being rotten or their blossom (youth) disappearing as dust. All of this is happening because they have refused to respect the word of God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Nah 1:10** For while they be folden together as thorns, and while they are drunken as drunkards, they shall be devoured as stubble fully dry. Read: **Isa 47:14**

25Therefore is the anger of the LORD kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them: and the hills did tremble, and their carcases were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

God was angry with them; he has kicked down the gate and tore down the wall and now he’s likened it to a flame that was kindled and this flame reached out and smote them. Animate and inanimate objects tremble and although God is angry with them he is still poised to give them more of their just due.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Deu 31:17 Then my anger shall be kindled against them in that day, and I will forsake them, and I will hide my face from them, and they shall be devoured, and many evils and troubles shall befall them; so that they will say in that day, Are not these evils come upon us, because our God is not among us? Read: Deu 32:19-22; 2Ki 13:3

26 And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth: and, behold, they shall come with speed swiftly:

The prophet pictures God signaling to the nations that he wants them to muster an army to come and destroy Jerusalem. He will hiss (as bees are hissed from a bee hive) and they will come running.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jer 51:27 Set ye up a standard in the land, blow the trumpet among the nations, prepare the nations against her, call together against her the kingdoms of Ararat, Minni, and Ashchenaz; appoint a captain against her; cause the horses to come up as the rough caterpillars. Read: Isa 7:18; Zec 10:8

27 None shall be weary nor stumble among them; none shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken:

They will come with haste and none shall stumble, they will not be too tired or exhausted no one will faint or lag behind they will run without stopping to rest or take a break. They will not take time to stop and wash their clothes and even their shoe laces will not break.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Psa 18:32 It is God that girdeth me with strength, and maketh my way perfect. Read: Eph 6:13-17
Whose arrows are sharp, and all their bows bent, their horses’ hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind:

They have re-curved bows and the tips of their arrows are sharp for penetration. Their horses are shod so that they will not get lame on the journey and the wheels on their chariots make a whirling noise that sounds like a tornado roaring across the plains of Kansas.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Psa 45:5 Thine arrows are sharp in the heart of the king’s enemies; whereby the people fall under thee. Read: Jer 5:16; Jer 47:3; Nah 2:3,4

29 Their roaring shall be like a lion, they shall roar like young lions: yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry it away safe, and none shall deliver it.

They are going to attack like a lion growling and seizing its prey and carrying it to a safe place where it can devour the carcass and they are helpless to rescue it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Jer 4:7 The lion is come up from his thicket, and the destroyer of the Gentiles is on his way; he is gone forth from his place to make thy land desolate; and thy cities shall be laid waste, without an inhabitant. Read: Isa 42:22 Eze 32:7-8

30 And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea: and if one look unto the land, behold darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

It will be a deafening roar like the waves lashing the shoreline during a hurricane. This army will usher in trouble—this will be the darkest day in their history.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Jer 6:23 They shall lay hold on bow and spear; they are cruel, and have no mercy; their voice roareth like the sea; and they ride upon horses, set in array as men for war against thee, O daughter of Zion. Read Jer 50:42; Isa 13:10; Eze 32:7-8; Isa 8:22
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 6

In 759 B.C. Isaiah saw the LORD sitting upon his throne seraphim’s were hovering above him they were singing a song about our HOLY GOD. It was an awesome scene the foundations of the temple shook and smoke filled the temple. Isaiah was terror stricken and thought it was dooms day for him—he reflects on the dirty mouth that he had but God sent a seraphim with a hot coal and touched his lips and God spoke the word of forgiveness. When God calls you to service he can clean your dirty mouth. God was looking for someone to go into the cities and villages with his message. Isaiah said, “here I am send me” he wants to know how long it will take and the Lord’s reply was till every city is emptied, every house deserted, they will all go to a prison camp and serve a life sentence. However, the tree will be cut down but it will sprout up again. All the details are awaiting you in the exposition.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 6

1In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the LORD sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

Uzziah (792-740) He reigned 52 years and died at the age of 68. He was a leper for 10 years. This vision occurred in B.C. 759

Josephus Book 9: Ch. 10. Art.4 “While Uzziah was in this state, and making preparation [for futurity], he was corrupted in his mind by pride, and became insolent, and this on account of that abundance which he had of things that will soon perish, and despised that power which is of eternal duration (which consisted in piety towards God, and in the observation of the laws); so he fell by occasion of the good success of his affairs, and was carried headlong into those sins of his father, which the splendor of that prosperity he enjoyed, and the glorious actions he had done, led him into, while he was not able to govern himself well about them. Accordingly, when a remarkable day was come, and
a general festival was to be celebrated, he put on the holy garment, and went into the temple to offer incense to God upon the golden altar, which he was prohibited to do by Azariah the high priest, who had fourscore priests with him, and who told him that it was not lawful for him to offer sacrifice, and that “none besides the posterity of Aaron were permitted so to do.” And when they cried out that he must go out of the temple, and not transgress against God, he was wroth at them, and threatened to kill them, unless they would hold their peace. In the mean time a great earthquake shook the ground and a rent was made in the temple, and the bright rays of the sun shone through it, and fell upon the king’s face, insomuch that the leprosy seized upon him immediately. And before the city, at a place called Eroge, half the mountain broke off from the rest on the west, and rolled itself four furlongs, and stood still at the east mountain, till the roads, as well as the king’s gardens, were spoiled by the obstruction. Now, as soon as the priests saw that the king’s face was infected with the leprosy, they told him of the calamity he was under, and commanded that he should go out of the city as a polluted person. Hereupon he was so confounded at the sad distemper, and sensible that he was not at liberty to contradict, that he did as he was commanded, and underwent this miserable and terrible punishment for an intention beyond what befitted a man to have, and for that impiety against God which was implied therein. So he abode out of the city for some time, and lived a private life, while his son Jotham took the government; after which he died with grief and anxiety at what had happened to him, when he had lived sixty-eight years, and reigned of them fifty-two; and was buried by himself in his own gardens.”

According to John 12:41 Isaiah saw Jesus in this vision. In this vision he sees Jesus sitting upon his throne. The train of his robe was spread out over the floor of the temple.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Eze 1:26-28 And above the firmament that was over their heads was the likeness of a throne, as the appearance of a sapphire stone: and upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man above upon it. And I saw as the colour of amber, as the appearance of fire round about within it, from the appearance of his loins even upward, and from the appearance of his loins even downward, I saw as it were the appearance of fire, and it had brightness round about. As the appearance of the bow that is in the cloud in the day of rain, so was the appearance of the brightness round about. This was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the LORD. And
when I saw it, I fell upon my face, and I heard a voice of one that spake. Read: 2Ch 26:22-23; Exo 24:10-11; Joh 1:18; Joh 12:41; 1Ki 22:19; Eze 10:1; Dan 7:9-10; Mat 25:31; Rev 4:2; Rev 4:10; Rev 5:1; Rev 5:7; Rev 6:16; Rev 7:15; 1Ki 8:10-11; Rev 15:8

2 Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

Angelic beings were hovering above him they each had six wings and with two of these wings they veiled the face of God so that Isaiah could not see his face and two wings covered his feet and the other two wings kept them poised in flight.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

1Ki 22:19 And he said, Hear thou therefore the word of the LORD: I saw the LORD sitting on his throne, and all the host of heaven standing by him on his right hand and on his left. Read: Dan 7:10; Zec 3:4; Rev 7:11; Exo 25:20; 1Ki 8:7; Eze 10:21; Dan 9:21; Rev 14:6

3 And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory.

They were calling back and forth to one another. Holy, Holy, Holy is the Lord God Almighty his majestic splendor fills the whole earth.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Rev 4:8-9 And the four beasts had each of them six wings about him; and they were full of eyes within: and they rest not day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come. And when those beasts give glory and honour and thanks to him that sat on the throne, who liveth for ever and ever, Read: Num 14:21; Psa 57:11; Psa 72:19

4 And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.
The voice of the seraphim’s singing shook the posts of the temple door the entire temple was shook to it foundation and suddenly the temple is filled with smoke.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

2Ch 5:13-14 It came even to pass, as the trumpeters and singers were as one, to make one sound to be heard in praising and thanking the LORD; and when they lifted up their voice with the trumpets and cymbals and instruments of musick, and praised the LORD, saying, For he is good; for his mercy endureth for ever: that then the house was filled with a cloud, even the house of the LORD; So that the priests could not stand to minister by reason of the cloud: for the glory of the LORD had filled the house of God. Read: 1Ki 8:10-12; Exo 40:34; Eze 10:5; Eze 1:24; 2Ch 6:1; Rev 15:8

5Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the LORD of hosts.

Isaiah was dismayed—he thought that he was doomed—he seen himself as finished. He thought of himself as a foul-mouthed sinner in the midst of a foul mouth people. In this vision he has seen the Lord of Heaven in his splendor and knows that no one sees God and lives to tell about it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Exo 33:20 And he said, Thou canst not see my face: for there shall no man see me, and live.

Jdg 13:22 And Manoah said unto his wife, We shall surely die, because we have seen God. Read: Deu 5:26; Dan 10:6-8; Rev 1:16;

6Then flew one of the seraphims unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar:

One of the seraphim’s takes a red hot glowing coal from the altar with a pair of tongs and fly’s over to where Isaiah is standing.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Dan 9:21 Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation.

Eze 10:2 And he spake unto the man clothed with linen, and said, Go in between the wheels, even under the cherub, and fill thine hand with coals of fire from between the cherubims, and scatter them over the city. And he went in in my sight. Read: Rev 8:3-5; Lev 16:12

7And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

The seraphim touched Isaiah’s lips with the glowing hot coal and said your iniquity is now removed and your sins are forgiven.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jer 1:9 Then the LORD put forth his hand, and touched my mouth. And the LORD said unto me, Behold, I have put my words in thy mouth.

Dan 10:16 And, behold, one like the similitude of the sons of men touched my lips: then I opened my mouth, and spake, and said unto him that stood before me, O my lord, by the vision my sorrows are turned upon me, and I have retained no strength. Read: Isa 43:25; Mic 7:18-19; Mat 9:

8Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying, Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then said I, Here am I; send me.

He heard the voice of God asking a question, “who will go for us?” Isaiah said: “Lord, I’ll go! Send me.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Act 28:25-28 And when they agreed not among themselves, they departed, after that Paul had spoken one word, Well spake the Holy Ghost by Esaias the
prophet unto our fathers, Saying, Go unto this people, and say, Hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and not perceive: For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; lest they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them. Be it known therefore unto you, that the salvation of God is sent unto the Gentiles, and that they will hear it. Read: Exo 4:10-13; Act 26:16-17

9And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not.

This newly awakened and fully pardoned messenger is now commissioned to go on an errand to a people who will listen but never see the connection they will hear but never get the point. They will see demonstrations and illustrations of God at work, over and over again but just don’t catch on. Isaiah will be preaching to a group of people who have a dehydrated heart.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Mar 4:11-12 And he said unto them, Unto you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of God: but unto them that are without, all these things are done in parables: That seeing they may see, and not perceive; and hearing they may hear, and not understand; lest at any time they should be converted, and their sins should be forgiven them.

Rom 11:8 (According as it is written, God hath given them the spirit of slumber, eyes that they should not see, and ears that they should not hear;) unto this day. Read: Isa 30:8-11

10Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.

Isaiah will make their hearts unreceptive and sluggish, their ears will be sealed and their eyes glued shut. With their wits dulled and their ears deafened and their eyelids pasted shut and their heart unreceptive there is no chance of them responding and being converted. Isaiah is like a doctor who lances a wound and it only gets worse or amputating a leg that will not heal. Now he is told
that he is a messenger of judgment, an instrument in God’s hands to bring a wicked nation into a state of “non-compliance.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 29:10 For the LORD hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep, and hath closed your eyes: the prophets and your rulers, the seers hath he covered. Read: Exo 10:27; Exo 14:17; Deu 2:30; Eze 3:6-11; Jer 6:10; Zec 7:11; Joh 3:19, 20

Then said I, Lord, how long? And he answered, Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate,

How long will it be before they will listen? God tells Isaiah that these people are not going to change till every city is destroyed and no one living in their houses and their gardens and farms turned into an animal sanctuary.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Psa 74:10 O God, how long shall the adversary reproach? shall the enemy blaspheme thy name for ever? Read: Isa 24:1-12

And the LORD have removed men far away, and there be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

The land will be abandoned, and the Eternal has banished the people, and they are slaves in a far away country.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

2Ki 25:21 And the king of Babylon smote them, and slew them at Riblah in the land of Hamath. So Judah was carried away out of their land. Read: Jer 15:4; Jer 52:28-30; Jer 4:29; Jer 12:7; Rom 11:15

But yet in it shall be a tenth, and it shall return, and shall be eaten: as a
tell tree, and as an oak, whose substance is in them, when they cast their leaves: so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.

God will have a remnant—ten percent will survive—this group will be scattered and serve a life sentence in slavery but like a tree that has been cut down the holy seed will survive and be planted again in the Promised Land.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Isa 1:9 Except the LORD of hosts had left unto us a very small remnant, we should have been as Sodom, and we should have been like unto Gomorrah. Read: Isa 10:20-22
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 7

The king of Israel and Syria are going to war with Judah. The heart of Ahaz was moved like a palm tree in a hurricane. Isaiah was instructed to take his son Shearjashub and meet with the King of Judah at the public laundry mat. Isaiah told him to not be afraid, calm down, don’t panic. This conspiracy is a lot of hot air. These two kings with burning rage are nothing but a couple of smoldering torches. Sometime later Isaiah tells Ahaz that these two kings will soon get killed and that Judah will be punished for its sins that he is going to send for the army of Assyria and they will swarm on Judah like flies on a dead carcass and all their lush vineyards will be cut down and her gardens destroyed. Following my comments are scriptures that amplify the text.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 7

1And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin the king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

Ahaz was the son of Jotham and the grandson of Uzziah who reigned from (735-715 B.C.) King Rezin of Syria and the combined forces of King Pekah of Israel (the ten northern tribes) are at war with Judah but the city of Jerusalem stood firm and they were not able to capture it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

2Ch 28:1-6 Ahaz was twenty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem: but he did not that which was right in the sight of the LORD, like David his father: For he walked in the ways of the
kings of Israel, and made also molten images for Baalim. Moreover he burnt incense in the valley of the son of Hinnom, and burnt his children in the fire, after the abominations of the heathen whom the LORD had cast out before the children of Israel. He sacrificed also and burnt incense in the high places, and on the hills, and under every green tree. Wherefore the LORD his God delivered him into the hand of the king of Syria; and they smote him, and carried away a great multitude of them captives, and brought them to Damascus. And he was also delivered into the hand of the king of Israel, who smote him with a great slaughter. For Pekah the son of Remaliah slew in Judah an hundred and twenty thousand in one day, which were all valiant men; because they had forsaken the LORD God of their fathers. Read: 2Ki 16:1; 2Ki 15:37

2And it was told the house of David, saying, Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

When the news reached the royal palace of David that the allied forces of Syria and Ephraim (Ephraim was a patronymic name for the 10 northern tribes) that the army was proceeding south to capture the city of Jerusalem Ahaz trembled like a teenager shaving the first time with a dull razor.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Hos 12:1 Ephraim feedeth on wind, and followeth after the east wind: he daily increaseth lies and desolation; and they do make a covenant with the Assyrians, and oil is carried into Egypt. Read: 2Sa 7:16; 1Ki 11:32; 1Ki 12:16; 2Ch 25:10; Deu 28:65-66

Then said the LORD unto Isaiah, Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou, and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller’s field;

Isaiah was instructed to take his son Shearjashub and meet with the King of Judah at the public laundry mat.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 36:2** And the king of Assyria sent Rabshakeh from Lachish to Jerusalem unto king Hezekiah with a great army. And he stood by the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller’s field.

**2Ki 20:20** And the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and all his might, and how he made a pool, and a conduit, and brought water into the city, 

Isaiah told him to not be afraid, calm down, don’t panic. This conspiracy is a lot of hot air. These two kings with burning rage are nothing but a couple of smoldering torches.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

**2Ch 20:17** Ye shall not need to fight in this battle: set yourselves, stand ye still, and see the salvation of the LORD with you, O Judah and Jerusalem: fear not, nor be dismayed; to morrow go out against them: for the LORD will be with you. Read: **Lam 3:26; 1Sa 17:32; 2Ki 15:29-30**

Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying,

These two countries have laid a plot to do Judah harm.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Psa 83:3-4** They have taken crafty counsel against thy people, and consulted against thy hidden ones.

They have said, Come, and let us cut them off from being a nation; that the name of Israel may be no more in remembrance.
6Let us go up against Judah, and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, even the son of Tabeal:

Their plan was to dethrone Ahaz and set up a vassal king.

7Thus saith the Lord GOD, It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.

Isaiah tells Ahaz that God told him that the plans of these two kings will fail it won’t happen now and never will.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 46:10-11 Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure: Calling a ravenous bird from the east, the man that executeth my counsel from a far country: yea, I have spoken it, I will also bring it to pass; I have purposed it, I will also do it.

Dan 4:35 And all the inhabitants of the earth are reputed as nothing: and he doeth according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth: and none can stay his hand, or say unto him, What doest thou?

8For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus is Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken, that it be not a people.

This prophecy received its full accomplishment when Esarhaddon carried away the remains of the ten tribes.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 8:4 For before the child shall have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria. Read: Isa 17:1-15; 2Ki 17:16-23
And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah’s son. If ye will not believe, surely ye shall not be established.

Pekah was Remaliah’s son and was king of the 10 northern tribes and ruled from Samaria. Ahaz is told to believe the prophet instead of the reports from other sources. If he fails to believe what God says he will not be established. He is told to take his stand on faith.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

2Ch 20:20 And they rose early in the morning, and went forth into the wilderness of Tekoa: and as they went forth, Jehoshaphat stood and said, Hear me, O Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem; Believe in the LORD your God, so shall ye be established; believe his prophets, so shall ye prosper. Read: 1Ki 16:24-29

Moreover the LORD spake again unto Ahaz, saying,

Sometime later God spoke to Ahaz through the prophet Isaiah.

Ask thee a sign of the LORD thy God; ask it either in the depth, or in the height above.

Ahaz is told to ask for some sign or proof that what has been spoken will come to pass, ask what you will whether it be in the sky or here on earth.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jdg 6:36-40 And Gideon said unto God, If thou wilt save Israel by mine hand, as thou hast said, Behold, I will put a fleece of wool in the floor; and if the dew be on the fleece only, and it be dry upon all the earth beside, then shall I know that thou wilt save Israel by mine hand, as thou hast said. And it was so: for he rose up early on the morrow, and thrust the fleece together, and wringed the dew out of the fleece, a bowl full of water. And Gideon said unto God, Let not thine anger be hot against me, and I will speak but this once: let me prove, I pray thee, but this once with the fleece; let it now be dry only upon the fleece, and upon all the ground let there be dew. And God
did so that night: for it was dry upon the fleece only, and there was dew on all the ground.

12 But Ahaz said, I will not ask, neither will I tempt the LORD.

Ahaz says that he is not going to put God to the test by asking for some sign.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Deu 6:16 Ye shall not tempt the LORD your God, as ye tempted him in Massah.

13 And he said, Hear ye now, O house of David; Is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?

Isaiah tells the king that he is about to exhaust his patience.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Eze 16:47 Yet hast thou not walked after their ways, nor done after their abominations: but, as if that were a very little thing, thou wast corrupted more than they in all thy ways.

14 Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Since you will not pick a sign therefore the Lord will give you a sign, a virgin will become pregnant and bear a son and they will name him Immanuel (God-With-Us). The scriptures below show how the people of the bible often named their children after an important event in their life.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Gen 4:1 And Adam knew Eve his wife; and she conceived, and bare Cain, and said, I have gotten a man from the LORD.
Gen 16:11 And the angel of the LORD said unto her, Behold, thou art with child, and shalt bear a son, and shalt call his name Ishmael; because the LORD hath heard thy affliction. (whom God hears) Read: Gen 29:32; Gen 30:6; Gen 30:8; 1Sa 1:20; 1Sa 4:21; Isa 8:8; Isa 9:6; Mat 1:23

15Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil, and choose the good.

He will be eating butter and honey till he knows how to refuse evil and choose good. Other provisions were not available because all their vineyards and crops had been destroyed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 7:22 And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk that they shall give he shall eat butter: for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

16For before the child shall know to refuse the evil, and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

The two kings, Remaliah and Pekah will soon be out of the picture. These two kings will be dead before the child reached manhood.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

2Ki 15:29 In the days of Pekah king of Israel came Tiglathpileser king of Assyria, and took Ijon, and Abelbethmaachah, and Janoah, and Kedesh, and Hazor, and Gilead, and Galilee, all the land of Naphtali, and carried them captive to Assyria.

2Ki 16:9 In the days of Pekah king of Israel came Tiglathpileser king of Assyria, and took Ijon, and Abelbethmaachah, and Janoah, and Kedesh, and Hazor, and Gilead, and Galilee, all the land of Naphtali, and carried them captive to Assyria. Read: Isa 17:1-3

17The LORD shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon
thy father’s house, days that have not come, from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah; even the king of Assyria.

God is going to bring a curse upon you and your people worse than anything since Solomon’s kingdom split. God is going to send the king of Assyria with his army against them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 8:7-8 Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria, and all his glory: and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks: And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel. Read: Isa 10:5-6; 2Ch 28:19-21; 2Ch 32:1-33; 2Ch 33:11

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the LORD shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of the rivers of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

God is going to hiss for the army of Egypt and for the army of Assyria and they will swarm on Judah like flies on a dead carcass or bees stinging you and there is no getting away from them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 5:26 And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth: and, behold, they shall come with speed swiftly: Read: Jos 24:12; Psa 118:12; 2Ki 23:33-34

And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

This invading army will fill the valleys, search every cavern, they will be found everywhere like flies and bees on thorns and bushes.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

2Ch 33:11 Wherefore the LORD brought upon them the captains of the host of the king of Assyria, which took Manasseh among the thorns, and bound him with fetters, and carried him to Babylon. Read: Isa 2:21; Jer 16:16; Mic 7:17

In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, namely, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet: and it shall also consume the beard.

When the Assyrian army arrives with its hired mercenaries, they will shave your head and remove all your hair down to your feet. Your land will be taken, your crops eaten up and your people destroyed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT

Isa 10:6-8 I will send him against an hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge, to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets. So Ahaz sent messengers to Tiglathpileser king of Assyria, saying, I am thy servant and thy son: come up, and save me out of the hand of the king of Syria, and out of the hand of the king of Israel, which rise up against me. And Ahaz took the silver and gold that was found in the house of the LORD, and in the treasures of the king’s house, and sent it for a present to the king of Assyria. Read: Isa 10:13-14

And it shall come to pass in that day, that a man shall nourish a young cow, and two sheep;

When this army finishes swarming over the land and plunders everything a farmer will be lucky to have a heifer and two sheep left.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 17:2 The cities of Aroer are forsaken: they shall be for flocks, which shall lie down, and none shall make them afraid.
22And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk that they shall give he shall eat butter: for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

The few people left will have to make do on the milk from the young cow and live on curds and honey. They will be searching among the rocks and crevices and hollow trees for some honey. Their crops and vegetable have all been destroyed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 37:30 And this shall be a sign unto thee, Ye shall eat this year such as groweth of itself; and the second year that which springeth of the same: and in the third year sow ye, and reap, and plant vineyards, and eat the fruit thereof.

23And it shall come to pass in that day, that every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, it shall even be for briers and thorns.

The lush vineyards that contained a thousand vines valued at millions will be nothing but briers and thorns.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Isa 32:12-14 They shall lament for the teats, for the pleasant fields, for the fruitful vine. Upon the land of my people shall come up thorns and briers; yea, upon all the houses of joy in the joyous city: Because the palaces shall be forsaken; the multitude of the city shall be left; the forts and towers shall be for dens for ever, a joy of wild asses, a pasture of flocks;

24With arrows and with bows shall men come thither; because all the land shall become briers and thorns.

This place will be good for nothing except a place to hunt wild animals.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

**Gen 27:3** Now therefore take, I pray thee, thy weapons, thy quiver and thy bow, and go out to the field, and take me *some* venison;

25**And on all hills that shall be digged with the mattock, there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns: but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and for the treading of lesser cattle.**

All the fertile fields and well tended gardens have disappeared. Farmers will have to clear the land again before they can replant and set out new grape vines and olive and fruit trees which will take years before a harvest can be expected. This required many years of reconstruction because of the invasions by the Egyptians and Assyrians.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 8

God told Isaiah to get his wife pregnant and that the boy will be a sign to Israel that an army is coming. Before the boy is two years old Damascus and Samaria will fall to the Assyrians. His prophecies that the two leaders of those countries will be dead within two years comes true. The prophet predicts a flood but it is not a flood of water but an army will spread across the land like a flood. Isaiah and his two children who have symbolic names is a sign to that generation. Isaiah means Jehovah will save—Shear-Jashub means a remnant will return—Maher-shalal-hash-baz means your enemies will soon be destroyed. Some were seeking fortune tellers and others were consulting spiritualist and others were claiming to talk to the dead—should not a people seek unto their God? Only one book has the real answers and that is the Word of God. The prophet predicts that Israel and Judah will both end up as slaves in captivity. Their life in captivity was sad beyond understanding. All joy had gone from their heart and they were so heartsick that they couldn’t see through the tears. Catastrophe had struck them and their whole world had fallen apart. All the details are in the exposition.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 8

1. Moreover the LORD said unto me, Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man’s pen concerning Mahershalalhashbaz.

The prophet is told to take a scroll and write on it the birth announcement of his son; name him before he is born. Mahershalalhashbaz means (Speed-spoil-hurry-prey)

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT:

Jer 36:2 Take thee a roll of a book, and write therein all the words that I have
spoken unto thee against Israel, and against Judah, and against all the nations, from the day I spake unto thee, from the days of Josiah, even unto this day. Read: Jer 36:28; Isa 30:8; Job 19:23-24; Hab 2:2-3

2 And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

Isaiah asked two of his friends to testify that this was written beforehand so that the whole world would know that before the conception he had told them that his wife would bear a son and that he had pre-named him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Rth 4:10-11 Moreover Ruth the Moabitess, the wife of Mahlon, have I purchased to be my wife, to raise up the name of the dead upon his inheritance, that the name of the dead be not cut off from among his brethren, and from the gate of his place: ye are witnesses this day. And all the people that were in the gate, and the elders, said, We are witnesses. The LORD make the woman that is come into thine house like Rachel and like Leah, which two did build the house of Israel: and do thou worthily in Ephratah, and be famous in Bethlehem:

3 And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived, and bare a son. Then said the LORD to me, Call his name Mahershalalhashbaz.

He goes home and lies with his wife and she has a son and they call him (Speed-spoil-hurry-prey). Imagine that every time he introduces his son to someone that they will ask “why did you give him that name” and this would provide an opening for Isaiah to tell them of the coming doom.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Hos 1:4-9 And the LORD said unto him, Call his name Jezreel; for yet a little while, and I will avenge the blood of Jezreel upon the house of Jehu, and will cause to cease the kingdom of the house of Israel. And it shall come to pass at that day, that I will break the bow of Israel in the valley of Jezreel. And she conceived again, and bare a daughter. And God said unto him, Call her name Loruhamah: for I will no more have mercy upon the house of Israel; but I
will utterly take them away. But I will have mercy upon the house of Judah, and will save them by the LORD their God, and will not save them by bow, nor by sword, nor by battle, by horses, nor by horsemen. Now when she had weaned Loruhamah, she conceived, and bare a son. Then said God, Call his name Loammi: for ye are not my people, and I will not be your God. Read: Jdg 4:4; 2Ki 22:14; Hos 1:3

4For before the child shall have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.

The child will not reach two years old before the capital of Syria (Damascus) and the capital of Israel (Samaria) will be plundered and carried away to the king of Assyria.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

2Ki 17:5-6 Then the king of Assyria came up throughout all the land, and went up to Samaria, and besieged it three years. In the ninth year of Hoshea the king of Assyria took Samaria, and carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor by the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes. Read: 2Ki 16:9; 2Ki 15:29; Isa 17:3

5The LORD spake also unto me again, saying,

This message from the Lord comes at another time.

6Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah’s son;

Because they had rejected the waters of Shiloah (Siloam) typical of God’s care and got all excited over Rezin and Remaliah’s son God is going to bring a flood water over the land. Judah was planning on help from Pekah and Rezin to protect them from Assyria.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Jer 2:13 For my people have committed two evils; they have forsaken me the
fountain of living waters, and hewed them out cisterns, broken cisterns, that can hold no water.

__Jer 2:18__ And now what hast thou to do in the way of Egypt, to drink the waters of Sihor? or what hast thou to do in the way of Assyria, to drink the waters of the river?

7Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria, and all his glory: and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks:

Isaiah paints a word picture of the King of Assyria crossing the Euphrates River and flooding the entire land with his armies.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

__Isa 17:12-13__ Woe to the multitude of many people, which make a noise like the noise of the seas; and to the rushing of nations, that make a rushing like the rushing of mighty waters! The nations shall rush like the rushing of many waters: but God shall rebuke them, and they shall flee far off, and shall be chased as the chaff of the mountains before the wind, and like a rolling thing before the whirlwind. Read: Deu 28:49-52; Eze 31:3-5; 2Ki 18:9-12

8And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

The armies of Assyria will overflow the banks and canals like a mighty river in flood stage. It will reach even to the neck which is Jerusalem.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUSTRATE THE TEXT:**

__Isa 30:28__ And his breath, as an overflowing stream, shall reach to the midst of the neck, to sift the nations with the sieve of vanity: and there shall be a bridle in the jaws of the people, causing them to err. Read: Isa 22:5-10

9Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and
give ear, all ye of far countries; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

Even though they associate themselves together they will lose nerve and be broken by the mighty army of Assyria. They can gird themselves (arm themselves) and still lose the war.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Mic 4:11-13 Now also many nations are gathered against thee, that say, Let her be defiled, and let our eye look upon Zion. But they know not the thoughts of the LORD, neither understand they his counsel: for he shall gather them as the sheaves into the floor. Arise and thresh, O daughter of Zion: for I will make thine horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass: and thou shalt beat in pieces many people: and I will consecrate their gain unto the LORD, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth.

10 Take counsel together, and it shall come to nought; speak the word, and it shall not stand: for God is with us.

They can plot and plan and form a strategy but it will fail, all your war councils and scheming will be baffled. When the dust settles the last word will be O Immanuel (God with us).

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Psa 33:10-11 The LORD bringeth the counsel of the heathen to nought: he maketh the devices of the people of none effect. The counsel of the LORD standeth for ever, the thoughts of his heart to all generations.

Psa 83:3-5 They have taken crafty counsel against thy people, and consulted against thy hidden ones. They have said, Come, and let us cut them off from being a nation; that the name of Israel may be no more in remembrance. For they have consulted together with one consent: they are confederate against thee:

11 For the LORD spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying,
Lewis P. Hussell

God grabs Isaiah firmly and makes it clear to him that under no circumstances was he to go along with the thinking of this people.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jer 20:9 Then I said, I will not make mention of him, nor speak any more in his name. But his word was in mine heart as a burning fire shut up in my bones, and I was weary with forbearing, and I could not stay.

Eze 3:14 So the spirit lifted me up, and took me away, and I went in bitterness, in the heat of my spirit; but the hand of the LORD was strong upon me. Read: Eze 2:6-8

12 Say ye not, A confederacy, to all them to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.

Don’t panic; don’t fear this confederacy of Israel and Syria. If you are going to fear anything then fear the maker of the Universe. He can be a rock to hide behind or a bolder in the road.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

2Ki 16:5-7 Then Rezin king of Syria and Pekah son of Remaliah king of Israel came up to Jerusalem to war: and they besieged Ahaz, but could not overcome him. At that time Rezin king of Syria recovered Elath to Syria, and drave the Jews from Elath: and the Syrians came to Elath, and dwelt there unto this day. So Ahaz sent messengers to Tiglathpileser king of Assyria, saying, I am thy servant and thy son: come up, and save me out of the hand of the king of Syria, and out of the hand of the king of Israel, which rise up against me. Read: Psa 53:5; Luk 12:4-5

13 Sanctify the LORD of hosts himself; and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.

Let the peace of God rule your life—fear him that can destroy both body and soul.
A Commentary on Isaiah

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

 Isa 26:3-4 Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on thee: because he trusteth in thee. Trust ye in the LORD for ever: for in the LORD JEHOVAH is everlasting strength: Read: Num 27:14; Mal 2:5; Luk 12:5; Rev 15:4

14 And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

He can be a shelter from a tornado or a rock impeding your progress he can be a barbed wire fence to get tangled in or a trap to get caught in. In this hour of pearl consecrate yourself to him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

 Psa 46:1-2 To the chief Musician for the sons of Korah, A Song upon Alamoth. God is our refuge and strength, a very present help in trouble. Therefore will not we fear, though the earth be removed, and though the mountains be carried into the midst of the sea; Read: Eze 11:16

15 And many among them shall stumble, and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

Some are going to fall down, others are going to bruise themselves, and some will be trapped and tangled up in some mesh of their own making.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

 Luk 20:18 Whosoever shall fall upon that stone shall be broken; but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder. Read: Mat 15:14; 1Co 1:23

16 Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.

This message given by the prophet was to be rolled up and a leather throng
tied around it and placed in a clay cylinder and sealed with wax so that no 
moisture could penetrate it and it would be preserved for future generations. 
This message was somehow preserved through war and peace and has reached 
even me. The prophetic record has been guarded by and entrusted to godly 
men who have passed it on to future generations.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES 
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 29:11 And the vision of all is become unto you as the words of a book that 
is sealed, which men deliver to one that is learned, saying, Read this, I pray 
thee: and he saith, I cannot; for it is sealed:

Dan 12:4 But thou, O Daniel, shut up the words, and seal the book, even 
to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be 
increased. Read: Deu 4:45; Rev 5:5; Dan 12:9-10; Mat 13:11; 1Co 2:14

17And I will wait upon the LORD, that hideth his face from the house of 
Jacob, and I will look for him.

He is waiting on God who is in hiding and while he waits he lives in faith 
and trust and hope.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT 
speak volumes about the text:

Isa 25:9 And it shall be said in that day, Lo, this is our God; we have waited 
for him, and he will save us: this is the LORD; we have waited for him, we 
will be glad and rejoice in his salvation.

Isa 33:2 O LORD, be gracious unto us; we have waited for thee: be thou 
their arm every morning, our salvation also in the time of trouble. Read: Isa 
64:4; Gen 49:18; Psa 27:14

18Behold, I and the children whom the LORD hath given me are for signs 
and for wonders in Israel from the LORD of hosts, which dwelleth in 
mount Zion.

Isaiah and his two children who have symbolic names is a sign to that 
generation. Isaiah means Jehovah will save—Shear-Jashub means a remnant
will return—Maher-shalal-hash-baz means your enemies will soon be destroyed.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**

**THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:**

**Isa 8:3** And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived, and bare a son. Then said the LORD to me, Call his name Mahershalalhashbaz.

**Eze 14:8** And I will set my face against that man, and will make him a sign and a proverb, and I will cut him off from the midst of my people; and ye shall know that I am the LORD.

**Luk 2:34** And Simeon blessed them, and said unto Mary his mother, Behold, this child is set for the fall and rising again of many in Israel; and for a sign which shall be spoken against;

19And when they shall say unto you, Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep, and that mutter: should not a people seek unto their God? for the living to the dead?

Some were seeking fortune tellers and others were consulting spiritualist and others were claiming to talk to the dead—should not a people seek unto their God? Only one book has the real answers and that is the Word of God.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**

**THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:**

**Isa 19:3** And the spirit of Egypt shall fail in the midst thereof; and I will destroy the counsel thereof: and they shall seek to the idols, and to the charmers, and to them that have familiar spirits, and to the wizards.

**Lev 20:6** And the soul that turneth after such as have familiar spirits, and after wizards, to go a whoring after them, I will even set my face against that soul, and will cut him off from among his people. Read: Deu 18:10-11; 1Sa 28:8; 1Ch 10:13; 2Ch 33:6

20To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.
Check the witch’s word or the mediums and see that there is no dawn of hope in what they say. There is one document that holds out hope to a lost world and that hope come beaming in through the light of the world.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Luk 10:26** He said unto him, What is written in the law? how readest thou?
Read: **Luk 16:29-31; Joh 5:39; Joh 5:46; Joh 5:47; Act 17:11; 2Ti 3:15-17; Isa 30:8-11; Psa 19:7; Psa 119:130; Jer 8:9; Mic 3:6; Pro 4:18**

21And they shall pass through it, hardly bestead and hungry: and it shall come to pass, that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.

Their life in captivity was sad beyond understanding. All the joy had gone from their heart and they were so heartsick that they couldn’t see through the tears. Catastrophe had struck them and their whole world had fallen apart.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Deu 28:33-34** The fruit of thy land, and all thy labours, shall a nation which thou knowest not eat up; and thou shalt be only oppressed and crushed alway: So that thou shalt be mad for the sight of thine eyes which thou shalt see. Read **Deu 28:53-57; Deu 28:53-57; 2Ki 25:3; Jer 14:18; Jer 52:6; Lam 4:4-5; Lam 4:9-10; Rev 9:20-21**

22And they shall look unto the earth; and behold trouble and darkness, dimness of anguish; and they shall be driven to darkness.

As they pass thru hard times, depressed and hungry they will fret and curse God and the king and they will look toward heaven and receive no help and look to the earth and see distress, misery and gloom. They will live a life of despondency and despair from which there is no way out. They were living in a black hole from which there was no escape.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITATIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 5:30** And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea: and if one look unto the land, behold darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

**2Ch 15:5-6** And in those times there was no peace to him that went out, nor to him that came in, but great vexations were upon all the inhabitants of the countries. And nation was destroyed of nation, and city of city: for God did vex them with all adversity. Read Jer 13:16; Jer 23:12
Zebulun and Naphtali was a land that death overshadowed and Isaiah prophecies that it will be a place where light will spring up—a son will be born and given the throne of David and his kingdom was to be henceforth forever. This was going to happen and did happen when Christ came and lived in Galilee of the Gentiles. More prophecies regarding the invasion of Israel by the Syrians and Philistines and the cutting off of the head and tail of Israel, then he denounces their leaders for destroying the nation and bringing on a crises—their wickedness is likened to a raging forest fire that destroys everything before it. Finally the land is darkened and this overshadowed death hole results in their eating their own flesh. Read the exposition for more fine points.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 9

1Nevertheless the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at the first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, and afterward did more grievously afflict her by the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, in Galilee of the nations.

In former times the land of Zebulun and Naphtali had been afflicted but in the future these very lands would be filled with glory. These people had felt the first brunt of the invasion of Assyria. She is called Galilee of the nations because Assyria had taken the Jews into captivity and repopulated the country with other nationalities.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT:

1Ki 15:19-20 There is a league between me and thee, and between my father and thy father: behold, I have sent unto thee a present of silver and gold;
come and break thy league with Baasha king of Israel, that he may depart from me. So Benhadad hearkened unto king Asa, and sent the captains of the hosts which he had against the cities of Israel, and smote Ijon, and Dan, and Abelbethmaachah, and all Cinneroth, with all the land of Naphtali. Read: 2Ki 15:29; 2Ch 16:4; 1Ch 5:26

2 The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

These people had walked in a death shadowed land for generations and now there is a ray of hope, the son of righteousness is going to shine on them. Jesus the light of the world will live in this dark region.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Mat 4:16 The people which sat in darkness saw great light; and to them which sat in the region and shadow of death light is sprung up. Read: Mat 4:16; Isa 60:1-3; Isa 60:19; Mic 7:8-9; Luk 1:78-79; Luk 2:32

3 Thou hast multiplied the nation, and not increased the joy: they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

The nation had increased with migrants and still walked in darkness till the “Son of Righteousness” appeared with healing in his wings. There was abundant joy and exuberating when Christ came. It is compared to the joy of an abundant harvest or booty taken in war. It was a festival of joy and great celebration.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Isa 25:9-10 And it shall be said in that day, Lo, this is our God; we have waited for him, and he will save us: this is the LORD; we have waited for him, we will be glad and rejoice in his salvation. And the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away. Read: Isa 26:15; Isa 49:22; Neh 9:23; Zec 2:11; Zec 10:8
4 For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor, as in the day of Midian.

God had removed the cross bar from their shoulder and taken the goad or whip from the driver and freed them from their captivity like what had happened in the days of Gideon.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Isa 14:25 That I will break the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders. Read Isa 47:6; Jer 30:8; Nah 1:13

5 For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

All the clothing of these invading solders will be soaked in blood and burned in a large fire.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 37:36 Then the angel of the LORD went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred and fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses. Read: Psa 46:9; Eze 39:8-10

6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

This verse predicts the coming of Jesus. He is not only a child but he is a son and his name shall be called wonderful: He is our advocate ∞ Lamb of God ∞ The Resurrection & The Life ∞ Shepherd and Bishop of Our Soul ∞ Judge ∞ Lord of Lords ∞ Man of Sorrows ∞ Head of the Church ∞ Master ∞ Faithful & True Witness ∞ Rock ∞ High Priest ∞ The Door ∞ Living Water ∞ Bread of Life ∞ Rose of Sharon ∞ Alpha & Omega ∞ True Vine ∞ Messiah ∞ Good Shepherd ∞ Light of the World ∞ Image of the Invisible God ∞ The Word ∞
Chief Cornerstone ∞ Savior ∞ Servant ∞ Author and Finisher of Our Faith ∞ The Almighty ∞ Everlasting Father ∞ Shiloh ∞ Lion of the Tribe of Judah ∞ I Am ∞ King of Kings ∞ Prince of Peace ∞ Bridegroom ∞ Only Begotten Son ∞ Dayspring ∞ The Amen ∞ King of the Jews ∞ Prophet ∞ Redeemer ∞ Anchor ∞ Bright and Morning Star ∞ The Way, The Truth & The Life. He is our Messiah!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Luk 1:35** And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.

**Luk 2:11** For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord. Read **Joh 1:1-3**;

And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

7 Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the LORD of hosts will perform this.

The government of this ruler was to be a government of peace that would have no end and he was to sit upon the throne of David and rule henceforth forever. Jesus is declared to be the son of David and the scriptures proclaim that he was to sit upon David’s throne. On the day of Pentecost Peter preached that Jesus was resurrected and was seated on David’s throne. I have quoted the scriptures—you decide!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUSTRATE THE TEXT:

**2Sa 7:16** And thine house and thy kingdom shall be established for ever before thee: thy throne shall be established for ever.

**Psa 2:8** Ask of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance,
and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession. Read Psa 72:8; Psa 89:35; Psa 89:36-37; Jer 33:15-21; Dan 2:35-44; Dan 7:14; Dan 7:27; Luk 1:32-33; 1Co 15:24-28; Acts 2:29-36

8The Lord sent a word into Jacob, and it hath lighted upon Israel.

The prophet returns to speaking about Jacob and Israel—Jacob is the head and Israel is the people who sprang from him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Mic 1:1-9 The word of the LORD that came to Micah the Morasthite in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, which he saw concerning Samaria and Jerusalem. Hear, all ye people; hearken, O earth, and all that therein is: and let the Lord GOD be witness against you, the Lord from his holy temple. For, behold, the LORD cometh forth out of his place, and will come down, and tread upon the high places of the earth. And the mountains shall be molten under him, and the valleys shall be cleft, as wax before the fire, and as the waters that are poured down a steep place. For the transgression of Jacob is all this, and for the sins of the house of Israel. What is the transgression of Jacob? is it not Samaria? and what are the high places of Judah? are they not Jerusalem? Therefore I will make Samaria as an heap of the field, and as plantings of a vineyard: and I will pour down the stones thereof into the valley, and I will discover the foundations thereof. And all the graven images thereof shall be beaten to pieces, and all the hires thereof shall be burned with the fire, and all the idols thereof will I lay desolate: for she gathered it of the hire of an harlot, and they shall return to the hire of an harlot. Therefore I will wail and howl, I will go stripped and naked: I will make a wailing like the dragons, and mourning as the owls. For her wound is incurable; for it is come unto Judah; he is come unto the gate of my people, even to Jerusalem.

9And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitant of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart,

This group of people was rebellious and lacked a proper respect for God and was filled with pride and arrogance.
Lewis P. Hussell

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 10:10-11 As my hand hath found the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria; Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and her idols?

10 The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones: the sycomores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

This group of people was so haughty that they were saying if disaster comes we will rebuild better than before and if the army cuts down our sycamores then we will replant them with cedar trees.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

1Ki 7:9-12 All these were of costly stones, according to the measures of hewed stones, sawed with saws, within and without, even from the foundation unto the coping, and so on the outside toward the great court. And the foundation was of costly stones, even great stones, stones of ten cubits, and stones of eight cubits. And above were costly stones, after the measures of hewed stones, and cedars. And the great court round about was with three rows of hewed stones, and a row of cedar beams, both for the inner court of the house of the LORD, and for the porch of the house.

Mal 1:4 Whereas Edom saith, We are impoverished, but we will return and build the desolate places; thus saith the LORD of hosts, They shall build, but I will throw down; and they shall call them, The border of wickedness, and, The people against whom the LORD hath indignation for ever.

11 Therefore the LORD shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

God is going to stir up the Assyrians and cause Israel’s enemies to join with Rezin.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

2Ki 15:29 In the days of Pekah king of Israel came Tiglathpileser king of
Assyria, and took Ijon, and Abelbethmaachah, and Janoah, and Kedesh, and Hazor, and Gilead, and Galilee, all the land of Naphtali, and carried them captive to Assyria.

12The Syrians before, and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

Syria from the East and the Philistines from the West are going to take on Israel with open mouth and gulp them down but God is still angry and his hand is ready to strike.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

2Ki 16:6 At that time Rezin king of Syria recovered Elath to Syria, and drave the Jews from Elath: and the Syrians came to Elath, and dwelt there unto this day.

2Ch 28:18 The Philistines also had invaded the cities of the low country, and of the south of Judah, and had taken Bethshemesh, and Ajalon, and Gederoth, and Shocho with the villages thereof, and Timnah with the villages thereof, Gimzo also and the villages thereof: and they dwelt there.

Psa 79:7 For they have devoured Jacob, and laid waste his dwelling place.

13For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them, neither do they seek the LORD of hosts.

They didn’t come looking for him and they didn’t come running to him. God had chastened them but they still would not repent.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

2Ch 28:22 And in the time of his distress did he trespass yet more against the LORD: this is that king Ahaz. Read: Isa 10:4; Isa 57:17; Jer 5:3

14Therefore the LORD will cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush, in one day.
God hacked of the head—big headed elders were the head—lying prophets were the tail.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:**

Isa 19:15 Neither shall there be any work for Egypt, which the head or tail, branch or rush, may do. Read: 2Ki 17:16-20; Isa 29:10; 1Ki 13:18; 1Ki 22:22-24

Hos 8:8 Israel is swallowed up: now shall they be among the Gentiles as a vessel wherein is no pleasure.

15 The ancient and honourable, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.

The head is the authorities and the tail is the ones that give lying assurances.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

1Ki 22:22-24 And the LORD said unto him, Wherewith? And he said, I will go forth, and I will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And he said, Thou shalt persuade him, and prevail also: go forth, and do so. Now therefore, behold, the LORD hath put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these thy prophets, and the LORD hath spoken evil concerning thee. But Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah went near, and smote Micaiah on the cheek, and said, Which way went the Spirit of the LORD from me to speak unto thee?

Jer 5:31 The prophets prophesy falsely, and the priests bear rule by their means; and my people love to have it so: and what will ye do in the end thereof?

16 For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed.

Their leaders had led them down the path to ruin they promised them that all was well to their own undoing.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

**Mat 15:14** Let them alone: they be blind leaders of the blind. And if the blind lead the blind, both shall fall into the ditch.

**Mat 23:16-17** Woe unto you, ye blind guides, which say, Whosoever shall swear by the temple, it is nothing; but whosoever shall swear by the gold of the temple, he is a debtor! Ye fools and blind: for whether is greater, the gold, or the temple that sanctifieth the gold?

17Therefore the LORD shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows: for every one is an hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

The nation as a whole had become very corrupt both young and old. It was therefore appropriate that God would have no joy in them. They were hypocritical and dirty mouthed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Isa 13:18** Their bows also shall dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eye shall not spare children.

**Jer 18:21** Therefore deliver up their children to the famine, and pour out their blood by the force of the sword; and let their wives be bereaved of their children, and be widows; and let their men be put to death; let their young men be slain by the sword in battle.

18For wickedness burneth as the fire: it shall devour the briers and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forest, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.

This lawlessness and ungodliness had blazed like a never ending fire in a forest with deep underbrush and now it had come back to burn them.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Mal 4:1** For, behold, the day cometh, that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the LORD of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch. Read: *Isa 66:16; Isa 33:12; Nah 1:10*

19**Through the wrath of the LORD of hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire: no man shall spare his brother.**

Through the vengeance of the Lord the country was ravaged, burned black and scorched by his fury. In this time of war each was fighting to steal the others food.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Isa 24:11-12** There is a crying for wine in the streets; all joy is darkened, the mirth of the land is gone. In the city is left desolation, and the gate is smitten with destruction. Read: *Jer 13:16; Amo 5:18*

20**And he shall snatch on the right hand, and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand, and they shall not be satisfied: they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm:**

They were fighting over the food allotment—no one had enough and conditions worsen and finally they eat their own children.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

**Lev 26:26-29** And when I have broken the staff of your bread, ten women shall bake your bread in one oven, and they shall deliver you your bread again by weight: and ye shall eat, and not be satisfied. And if ye will not for all this hearken unto me, but walk contrary unto me; Then I will walk contrary unto you also in fury; and I, even I, will chastise you seven times for your sins. And ye shall eat the flesh of your sons, and the flesh of your daughters shall ye eat. Read: *Jer 19:9; Lam 4:10*
21 Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh: and they together shall be against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

Manasseh tore at Ephraim and Ephraim thirsts for the blood of Manasseh and both were against Judah. God’s anger was not turned away—his hand still poised to strike them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

1Sa 14:20 And Saul and all the people that were with him assembled themselves, and they came to the battle: and, behold, every man’s sword was against his fellow, and there was a very great discomfiture. Read: 2Ch 28:6-8
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 10

The judges were making laws that made victims by denying rights to the poor, orphans and widows. The prophet sees dooms day coming for them—God is going to use Assyria as his weapon to punish Israel then he is going to destroy Assyria for its sins. The prophet even tells the route and places where the invading army will camp—then with swift swinging axes God is chopping down Assyria. The full drama is told in the exposition.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 10

1Woe unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;

They were enacting unjust statutes and making laws that made victims.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT:

Hab 2:12 Woe to him that buildeth a town with blood, and establisbeth a city by iniquity!

Psa 94:20 Shall the throne of iniquity have fellowship with thee, which frameth mischief by a law? Read: Mat 23:13-16; Dan 3:4-7; Mic 3:1-4

2To turn aside the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!

They made laws that denied people of their right—justice had been hijacked—the poor couldn’t afford a lawyer, widows had their property and dignity
taken away—no justice for the unfortunate—the disadvantaged had no advantage—the defenseless were exploited—orphans were oppressed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

 Isa 29:21 That make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of nought.

Mal 3:5 And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow, and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger from his right, and fear not me, saith the LORD of hosts. Read: Lam 3:35; Amo 5:11-12; Isa 1:23; Isa 5:7; Isa 3:14

3And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?

What will you do when God arrives for an inspection? What will you do when ruin comes? When God calls you into account what will you do? Who will you run to when disaster strikes? Where will you leave your wealth for safe keeping? Where will you leave your children—who will keep them safe? This was not going to be a friendly chit-chat visit. Remember that God has visitation rights.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

 Isa 26:21 For, behold, the LORD cometh out of his place to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity: the earth also shall disclose her blood, and shall no more cover her slain.

Hos 9:7 The days of visitation are come, the days of recompence are come; Israel shall know it: the prophet is a fool, the spiritual man is mad, for the multitude of thine iniquity, and the great hatred. Read: Luk 19:44; 1Pe 2:12

4Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall
under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

They will find themselves under the heaps of slain prisoners on the battlefield and despite all this God is still angry with them. His hand is still threatening to strike again.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

**Lev 26:17** And I will set my face against you, and ye shall be slain before your enemies: they that hate you shall reign over you; and ye shall flee when none pursueth you.

**Lev 26:36-37** And upon them that are left alive of you I will send a faintness into their hearts in the lands of their enemies; and the sound of a shaken leaf shall chase them; and they shall flee, as fleeing from a sword; and they shall fall when none pursueth.

37 And they shall fall one upon another, as it were before a sword, when none pursueth: and ye shall have no power to stand before your enemies. Read: **Jer 37:10**

5O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is mine indignation.

Assyria is the staff in God’s hand and he is using her armies as his military strength and weapon.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Jer 51:20-24** Thou art my battle axe and weapons of war: for with thee will I break in pieces the nations, and with thee will I destroy kingdoms; And with thee will I break in pieces the horse and his rider; and with thee will I break in pieces the chariot and his rider; With thee also will I break in pieces man and woman; and with thee will I break in pieces old and young; and with thee will I break in pieces the young man and the maid; I will also break in pieces with thee the shepherd and his flock; and with thee will I break in pieces the husbandman and his yoke of oxen; and with thee will I break
in pieces captains and rulers. And I will render unto Babylon and to all the inhabitants of Chaldea all their evil that they have done in Zion in your sight, saith the LORD.

6I will send him against an hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge, to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

This profane and irreligious and faithless nation was under the wrath of God and he had given charge to Syria to attack Israel and take their treasures—seize their wealth and loot their homes—plunder and trample them like dirt under their feet.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 41:25 I have raised up one from the north, and he shall come: from the rising of the sun shall he call upon my name: and he shall come upon princes as upon mortar, and as the potter treadeth clay. Read: Isa 45:1-2; Zec 10:5

7Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but it is in his heart to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

Assyria had another agenda—Assyria had in mind to exterminate the people of nations that he captured.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Mic 4:11-12 Now also many nations are gathered against thee, that say, Let her be defiled, and let our eye look upon Zion.

12 But they know not the thoughts of the LORD, neither understand they his counsel: for he shall gather them as the sheaves into the floor.

8For he saith, Are not my princes altogether kings?

The king of Assyria had in mind that he would make all his boys (princes) kings of the land that he had captured.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

**Act 13:27-30** For they that dwell at Jerusalem, and their rulers, because they knew him not, nor yet the voices of the prophets which are read every sabbath day, they have fulfilled _them_ in condemning _him_. And though they found no cause of death _in him_, yet desired they Pilate that he should be slain. And when they had fulfilled all that was written of him, they took _him_ down from the tree, and laid _him_ in a sepulchre. But God raised him from the dead:

> _9Is not Calno as Carchemish? is not Hamath as Arpad? is not Samaria as Damascus?_

Syria is boasting that Calno of Babylonia is like Carchemish on the Euphrates and that Hamath in Upper Syria is like Arpad and that Samaria is like Damascus. Not one of these cities had been able to stop Assyria’s war machine.

> _10As my hand hath found the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;_

All of these kingdoms had fallen into the hands of Assyria and although they had idols and graven images he had finished them off and destroyed their idols.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**2Ki 19:17-19** Of a truth, LORD, the kings of Assyria have destroyed the nations and their lands, And have cast their gods into the fire: for they _were_ no gods, but the work of men’s hands, wood and stone: therefore they have destroyed them. Now therefore, O LORD our God, I beseech thee, save thou us out of his hand, that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that thou _art_ the LORD God, _even_ thou only. Read: **2Ki 18:9-10**

> _11Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and her idols?_

Is there any reason why I shouldn’t give Jerusalem the same treatment?
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 37:10-13 Thus shall ye speak to Hezekiah king of Judah, saying, Let not thy God, in whom thou trustest, deceive thee, saying, Jerusalem shall not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria. Behold, thou hast heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands by destroying them utterly; and shalt thou be delivered? Have the gods of the nations delivered them which my fathers have destroyed, as Gozan, and Haran, and Rezeph, and the children of Eden which were in Telassar? Where is the king of Hamath, and the king of Arphad, and the king of the city of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivah?

12 Wherefore it shall come to pass, that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon mount Zion and on Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.

When God finishes his work on mount Zion and Jerusalem then he is going to punish the arrogant vaunting haughty heart of the king of Assyria and his proud look and scornful eyes.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 14:24-27 The LORD of hosts hath sworn, saying, Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand: That I will break the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders. This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth: and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations. For the LORD of hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul it? and his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back? Read: Isa 31:8; Isa 37:36-38

13 For he saith, By the strength of my hand I have done it, and by my wisdom; for I am prudent: and I have removed the bounds of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man:

The king of Assyria claimed that he had done it all by himself—by his own might and power. His boast was that he knew more than anyone—He
claimed to have removed landmarks and took their hoarded wealth—defeated kings and brave soldiers.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Deu 8:17 And thou say in thine heart, My power and the might of mine hand hath gotten me this wealth. Read: 2Ki 17:6; 2Ki 17:24; 1Ch 5:26; 2Ki 16:8

^14And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people: and as one gathereth eggs that are left, have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

He had garnered the wealth of nations like going to the hen house and gathering eggs from the nest and no one was powerful enough or had enough nerve to flap a wing, open its beak in protest or utter a chirp.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Pro 18:12 Before destruction the heart of man is haughty, and before honour is humility.

Nah 3:1 Woe to the bloody city! it is all full of lies and robbery; the prey departeth not; Read: Hab 2:5-11

^15Shall the axe boast itself against him that heweth therewith? or shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? as if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself, as if it were no wood.

This poor fool had bragged and boasted about the kings he had defeated. He was a highfaluting swagger with a claptrap that needed to be shut up. And God is about to take this vainglorious, self-praising, windy cook-a-hoop down a notch or two. He was a mere axe in the hand of the hewer (God) or to put it another way he was a rod in the hand of the shepherd (God).
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Jer 51:20-23 Thou art my battle axe and weapons of war: for with thee will I break in pieces the nations, and with thee will I destroy kingdoms; And with thee will I break in pieces the horse and his rider; and with thee will I break in pieces the chariot and his rider; With thee also will I break in pieces man and woman; and with thee will I break in pieces old and young; and with thee will I break in pieces the young man and the maid; I will also break in pieces with thee the shepherd and his flock; and with thee will I break in pieces the husbandman and his yoke of oxen; and with thee will I break in pieces captains and rulers. Read: Rom 9:20-21

16Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of hosts, send among his fat ones leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

God will take the hot air out of his balloon—he will send some kind of a debilitating disease among his solders and as for the king he is going to get burned. This guy has set himself up for a hard fall. Napoleon said: “Don’t interfere with your enemy while he is in the process of destroying himself.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 14:24-27 The LORD of hosts hath sworn, saying, Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand: That I will break the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders. This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth: and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations. For the LORD of hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul it? and his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back? Read: Isa 37:6-7; Isa 37:29; Isa 37:36; 2Ch 32:21

17And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame: and it shall burn and devour his thorns and his briers in one day;

These Assyrian thorn bushes are going to get burned and the fire that burns them will be the Holy One and he will use Israel to light the flame. The prophet is expert at using puns and word-play.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 66:15-16 For, behold, the LORD will come with fire, and with his chariots like a whirlwind, to render his anger with fury, and his rebuke with flames of fire. For by fire and by his sword will the LORD plead with all flesh: and the slain of the LORD shall be many. Read: Isa 66:24; Num 11:1-3; Num 16:35

18 And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body: and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainteth.

Some more word-play and puns as he describes Assyria as a forest and fruitful field consumed by fire and then uses the words soul and body to describe a disease ridden body wasting away like a man with a debilitating disease.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Jer 21:14 But I will punish you according to the fruit of your doings, saith the LORD: and I will kindle a fire in the forest thereof, and it shall devour all things round about it. Read: Eze 20:47-49

19 And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

These trees of the forest (Assyrian solders) will be few—a school kid could count them on his fingers when God gets finished with them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Isa 37:36 Then the angel of the LORD went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred and fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses.

20 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the LORD, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.
When the Assyrian solders meet their doom the residue that is left of Israel will no longer look to Assyria for help but will return to the Lord the Holy One of Israel.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Isa 37:31-32 And the remnant that is escaped of the house of Judah shall again take root downward, and bear fruit upward: For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant, and they that escape out of mount Zion: the zeal of the LORD of hosts shall do this. Read: Rom 9:27-29; 2Ki 16:7

21 The remnant shall return, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

The remains of the left over remnant will come back to the mighty God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Isa 17:7-8 At that day shall a man look to his Maker, and his eyes shall have respect to the Holy One of Israel. And he shall not look to the altars, the work of his hands, neither shall respect that which his fingers have made, either the groves, or the images. Read: Isa 19:22; Isa 65:8-9; Hos 6:1

22 For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return: the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

God will finish what he started—although the people was as populous as sand of the sea, only a remnant remained. The ordered destruction will proceed as planned by the Lord and it will overflow like a mighty stream because it was a righteous decree.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Hos 1:10 Yet the number of the children of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea, which cannot be measured nor numbered; and it shall come to pass, that in the place where it was said unto them, Ye are not my people, there it shall
be said unto them, *Ye are* the sons of the living God. Read: *Rom* 9:27; *Rom* 11:5-6; *Isa* 6:11; *Rom* 9:28

23For the Lord GOD of hosts shall make a consumption, even determined, in the midst of all the land.

God is going to empty the earth, and make it waste, and scatter her inhabitants.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT:**

*Isa* 14:26-27 This *is* the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth: and this *is* the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations. For the LORD of hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul *it*? and his hand *is* stretched out, and who shall turn it back? Read: *Isa* 24:1-3

24*Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD of hosts, O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian: he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.*

The prophet tells the people of Zion not to be alarmed or lose heart by their terrorism. The Assyrians will treat you like former times in Egypt.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

*Isa* 37:6 And Isaiah said unto them, Thus shall ye say unto your master, Thus saith the LORD, Be not afraid of the words that thou hast heard, wherewith the servants of the king of Assyria have blasphemed me. Read: *Isa* 12:6; *Isa* 30:19; *Isa* 37:33-35

25For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.

In a little while I will turn my righteous anger against them and finish them off.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:**

*Isa* 14:24-25 The LORD of hosts hath sworn, saying, Surely as I have thought,
so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand: That I will break the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders. Read: Isa 17:13-14; Isa 30:30-31; 2Ki 19:35

26 And the LORD of hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb: and as his rod was upon the sea, so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.

Assyria's slavery will be lifted like the mighty workings of Gideon at the rock of Oreb or as Moses lifted up his rod on the Red Sea.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

2Ki 19:35 And it came to pass that night, that the angel of the LORD went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians an hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses. And it came to pass, as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, that Adrammelech and Sharezer his sons smote him with the sword: and they escaped into the land of Armenia. And Esarhaddon his son reigned in his stead.

Jdg 7:25 And they took two princes of the Midianites, Oreb and Zeeb; and they slew Oreb upon the rock Oreb, and Zeeb they slew at the winepress of Zeeb, and pursued Midian, and brought the heads of Oreb and Zeeb to Gideon on the other side Jordan.

27 And it shall come to pass in that day, that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.

The load that they had been carrying would be taken away and the slave yoke from off their necks.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Nah 1:9-13 What do ye imagine against the LORD? he will make an utter end: affliction shall not rise up the second time. For while they be folden
together as thorns, and while they are drunken as drunkards, they shall be devoured as stubble fully dry. There is one come out of thee, that imagineth evil against the LORD, a wicked counsellor. Thus saith the LORD; Though they be quiet, and likewise many, yet thus shall they be cut down, when he shall pass through. Though I have afflicted thee, I will afflict thee no more. For now will I break his yoke from off thee, and will burst thy bonds in sunder. Read: Isa 14:25-26

28He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages:

The Assyrian army has arrived, according to their intelligence reports they have camped at Aiath, passing Migron and they are storing their baggage at Michmash. Aiath, or Ai, was situated a little east of Bethel about twelve miles north of Jerusalem; Michmash about three miles nearer, where there was a narrow pass between two sharp hills; Geba and Ramah are about three miles more to the south; Gibeah a mile and a half more southward; and Anathoth within three miles of Jerusalem.

29They are gone over the passage: they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramah is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.

They were last seen at the pass or ravine and are now setting up camp. Ramah is terrified and trembles with fright and Saul’s home town is on the run.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Hos 5:8 Blow ye the cornet in Gibeah, and the trumpet in Ramah: cry aloud at Bethaven, after thee, O Benjamin.

Hos 9:9 They have deeply corrupted themselves, as in the days of Gibeah: therefore he will remember their iniquity, he will visit their sins.

30Lift up thy voice, O daughter of Gallim: cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.

The inhabitants seize their belongings and children and head for the mountains or walled cities. They are paralyzed with fear. Anathoth is the home town of Jeremiah.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Jer 32:8 So Hanameel mine uncle’s son came to me in the court of the prison according to the word of the LORD, and said unto me, Buy my field, I pray thee, that is in Anathoth, which is in the country of Benjamin: for the right of inheritance is thine, and the redemption is thine; buy it for thyself. Then I knew that this was the word of the LORD.

31Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.

Everyone is panic stricken—scurrying for safety—in a mad flight for protection. The crowd of people running for their life looked like a Walmart crowd on black Friday.

32As yet shall he remain at Nob that day: he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

While the army is camping at Nob he will send his top officers to Jerusalem to intimidate and frighten them into surrendering.

33Behold, the Lord, the LORD of hosts, shall lop the bough with terror: and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down, and the haughty shall be humbled.

Our God is going to get out his large loppers and lop the limbs and take his axe and chop down this forest of solders and he will humble this king and he will run back to Syria where his own son will assassinate him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUSTRATE THE TEXT:

2Ki 19:21 This is the word that the LORD hath spoken concerning him; The virgin the daughter of Zion hath despised thee, and laughed thee to scorn; the daughter of Jerusalem hath shaken her head at thee. Read: 2Ki 19:22-35

34And he shall cut down the thickets of the forest with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.
God is going to cut down the thickets of underbrush and this Lebanon like forest of solders will be chopped down like a forest that is clear cut. As they high-tail it back to Assyria a child will be able to count the survivors. Halleluiah!

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 37:24** By thy servants hast thou reproached the Lord, and hast said, By the multitude of my chariots am I come up to the height of the mountains, to the sides of Lebanon; and I will cut down the tall cedars thereof, and the choice fir trees thereof: and I will enter into the height of his border, and the forest of his Carmel.

**Jer 22:7** And I will prepare destroyers against thee, every one with his weapons: and they shall cut down thy choice cedars, and cast them into the fire.

**Jer 46:22-23** The voice thereof shall go like a serpent; for they shall march with an army, and come against her with axes, as hewers of wood.

23 They shall cut down her forest, saith the LORD, though it cannot be searched; because they are more than the grasshoppers, and are innumerable.

**Zec 11:1-2** Open thy doors, O Lebanon, that the fire may devour thy cedars.

2 Howl, fir tree; for the cedar is fallen; because the mighty are spoiled: howl, O ye oaks of Bashan; for the forest of the vintage is come down.

**Nah 1:12** Thus saith the LORD; Though they be quiet, and likewise many, yet thus shall they be cut down, when he shall pass through. Though I have afflicted thee, I will afflict thee no more.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 11

From the stump of Jesse a root will produce a branch and God will give him extraordinary powers and he will be clothed in fairness and usher in a time of peace for he is the prince of peace. The prophet paints a picture of wild animals lying down with tame animals to depict the peacefulness of the messiah. He further sees the Messiah reaching out to the four corners of the earth and bringing back the remaining exiles. Isaiah paints a picture for us of the drying up of rivers and building roads so that the exiles can return. You are invited to explore the exposition and scripture references.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 11

1And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:

The line of David will be chopped down and from the stump of Jesse will come forth a sprout that will grow into a mighty tree.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 53:2** For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of a dry ground: he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him, there is no beauty that we should desire him.

**Rev 5:5** And one of the elders saith unto me, Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Juda, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof.

**Rev 22:16** I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and
morning star. Read: Isa 11:10; Rth 4:17; 1Sa 17:58; Mat 1:6; Act 13:22-23; Rom 15:12; Isa 4:2; Mat 1:16; Jer 23:5; Zec 3:8; Zec 6:12

2And the spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the LORD;

This life giving spirit will fill him with wisdom and understanding it will supply him with direction and the fear of the Lord.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**Isa 42:1-4** Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles. He shall not cry, nor lift up, nor cause his voice to be heard in the street. A bruised reed shall he not break, and the smoking flax shall he not quench: he shall bring forth judgment unto truth. He shall not fail nor be discouraged, till he have set judgment in the earth: and the isles shall wait for his law.

**Isa 61:1** The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me; because the LORD hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound; Read: Joh 1:32-33; Joh 3:34; Joh 16:13

3And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the LORD: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears:

This shoot from the stump of Jesse will have a sharp intellect and will not judge after appearance or listen to hear say.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 33:6** And wisdom and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times, and strength of salvation: the fear of the LORD is his treasure.
Luke 2:52 And Jesus increased in wisdom and stature, and in favour with God and man.

But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth: with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

He will step forward for the poor and exploited and defend their cause; he will speak and just the breath from his lips will destroy the ruthless.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Psalms 45:6-7 Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom is a right sceptre. Thou lovest righteousness, and hatest wickedness: therefore God, thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.

Revelation 19:11 And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war. Read: Jer 23:5-6; 2Sam 8:15; Mat 11:5; Isa 61:1; Rev 19:15

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

He will put on work clothes, tighten his belt of justice, roll up his sleeves with fairness and build up righteousness and faithfulness in the land.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isaiah 59:17 For he put on righteousness as a breastplate, and an helmet of salvation upon his head; and he put on the garments of vengeance for clothing, and was clad with zeal as a cloke

Psalms 93:1 The LORD reigneth, he is clothed with majesty; the LORD is clothed with strength, wherewith he hath girded himself: the world also is stablished, that it cannot be moved.

The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down...
with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

Wolves will live with the lambs; leopards will share his bed with the kid goats, calves and lions eating from the same trough, beef cattle and lions laying down in mid-day together and a little child leading them with a lead rope. In those days wolf and lamb, lion and bullock, will dwell together. Daniel has a lion with eagle’s wings and a leopard with a fowl’s wings and four heads in Dan. 7, which represented the kingdom of Persia and Greece. When kingdoms stopped acting like animals and laid down their arms and become peaceful with their neighbors it could be said that the wolf was laying down with the lamb. When Israel returned from captivity wolf and lamb, lion and bullock are dwelling together. In the scriptures a lion with four wings represented Babylon and it receives a heart transplant (heart of a man) and becomes human. Persia is represented under the image of a bear with three ribs in its mouth. (She had eaten up Lydia, Babylon and Egypt), Greece was represented as a leopard with four wings of a fowl. Isa. 14:29 “Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken: for out of the serpent’s root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.” Ahaz is dead but out of this serpent’s root (Ahaz), a snake will come (Hezekiah) and from his roots will come a fiery flying serpent (Manasseh). Even though the rod is broken his son will be a worse scourge than his father and out of him will come a fiery flying serpent. This King of Israel (Manasseh) was represented as a flying fiery serpent, (he was always flying off the handle and had a hot temper) Israel was represented as sheep. Jesus was represented as a Lion and a lamb. Herod was the fox and false teachers were represented as wolves. Babylon was represented as a dragon or a serpent. Ethiopia was represented as flies. Egypt was represented as the crocodile of the Nile. Syria was represented as bees and hornets. Jacob was represented as a worm. Finally, let me point out to you that we name our ball clubs hornets, dolphins, wolves, bears and beavers. In conclusion, it was no strange thing that wolves and lambs were eating together, (a peace pact was made between nations) lions were eating with oxen. Snakes were eating dust and not biting their children. After careful examination of the scriptures you will arrive at this conclusion: Israel has returned from captivity and Persia rules the world and all the nations were under this one world government and so the wolf was dwelling with the lamb and the leopard was lying down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together and dust is the serpent’s meat. In todays language; we might say of two ball clubs that the Jaguars were having dinner with rams. Peace had finally arrived and Israel (Lamb) was lying down with Persia (bear). See Daniel chapter 7.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 65:25 The wolf and the lamb shall feed together, and the lion shall eat straw like the bullock: and dust shall be the serpent’s meat. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, saith the LORD. Read: Eze 34:25-26; Hos 2:18

7And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

Cows and bears grazing in the same pasture; calves and cubs sleeping together: Lions eating straw like oxen.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 27:1-3 In that day the LORD with his sore and great and strong sword shall punish leviathan the piercing serpent, even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that is in the sea. In that day sing ye unto her, A vineyard of red wine. I the LORD do keep it; I will water it every moment: lest any hurt it, I will keep it night and day.

Dan 4:16 Let his heart be changed from man’s, and let a beast’s heart be given unto him; and let seven times pass over him. Read: Dan 5:21; Dan 7:4

8And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice’ den.

Picture a toddler playing in a den of poisonous snakes and putting its hand into the den of a viper. See comments on verse 5

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 59:1-5 Behold, the LORD’S hand is not shortened, that it cannot save; neither his ear heavy, that it cannot hear: But your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid his face from you, that he will not hear. For your hands are defiled with blood, and your fingers with iniquity; your lips have spoken lies, your tongue hath muttered perverseness.
None calleth for justice, nor any pleadeth for truth: they trust in vanity, and speak lies; they conceive mischief, and bring forth iniquity. They hatch cockatrices’ eggs, and weave the spider’s web: he that eateth of their eggs dieth, and that which is crushed breaketh out into a viper. Read: Psa 140:1-3

9They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea.

They will not hurt nor harm for the whole earth will be full of the knowledge of the LORD like the ocean that is filled with water.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 11:13 The envy also of Ephraim shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off: Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

Isa 60:18 Violence shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction within thy borders; but thou shalt call thy walls Salvation, and thy gates Praise. Read: Job 5:23

10And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

On that day the root of Jesse will be like a plane flying overhead with a streaming banner announcing salvation and the Gentiles will flock to him and find salvation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Rom 15:12 And again, Esaias saith, There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.

Rev 22:16 I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star. Read: Gen 49:10; Joh 3:14-15; Joh 12:32; Isa 60:5; Isa 66:12; Mat 2:1-2; Mat 12:21
11 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

God will reach out his hand the second time and they will see the rallying banner and the remnant left over will come from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and From Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Psa 68:22 The Lord said, I will bring again from Bashan, I will bring my people again from the depths of the sea:

Jer 23:7-8 Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the LORD, that they shall no more say, The LORD liveth, which brought up the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt;

But, The LORD liveth, which brought up and which led the seed of the house of Israel out of the north country, and from all countries whither I had driven them; and they shall dwell in their own land. Read: Jer 30:8-11; Jer 33:24-26; Eze 11:16-17; Zec 10:8-11; Isa 27:12-13; Mic 7:12; Isa 19:23-25; Isa 42:4; Isa 66:19; Jer 31:10; Zep 2:11; Act 2:8-11

12 And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

The rallying banner will be flying high and it will signal the Gentile nations and they will assemble all the outcasts of Israel and the dispersed of Judah from one end of the earth to the other and bring them home.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 27:13 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the great trumpet shall be blown, and they shall come which were ready to perish in the land of Assyria,
and the outcasts in the land of Egypt, and shall worship the LORD in the holy mount at Jerusalem.

**Isa 43:6** I will say to the north, Give up; and to the south, Keep not back: bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth; Read: **Isa 49:11-12; Isa 56:8; Deu 32:26; Zep 3:10**

**13** The envy also of Ephraim shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off: Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim

The rivalry between these two nations will be removed; the jealousy between them will cease and they will not fight each other any more.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:**

**Jer 3:18** In those days the house of Judah shall walk with the house of Israel, and they shall come together out of the land of the north to the land that I have given for an inheritance unto your fathers.

**Eze 37:16-24** Moreover, thou son of man, take thee one stick, and write upon it, For Judah, and for the children of Israel his companions: then take another stick, and write upon it, For Joseph, the stick of Ephraim, and for all the house of Israel his companions: And join them one to another into one stick; and they shall become one in thine hand. And when the children of thy people shall speak unto thee, saying, Wilt thou not shew us what thou meanest by these? Say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will take the stick of Joseph, which is in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribes of Israel his fellows, and will put them with him, even with the stick of Judah, and make them one stick, and they shall be one in mine hand. And the sticks whereon thou writest shall be in thine hand before their eyes. And say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will take the children of Israel from among the heathen, whither they be gone, and will gather them on every side, and bring them into their own land: And I will make them one nation in the land upon the mountains of Israel; and one king shall be king to them all: and they shall be no more two nations, neither shall they be divided into two kingdoms any more at all: Neither shall they defile themselves any more with their idols, nor with their detestable things, nor with any of their transgressions: but I will save them out of all their dwellingplaces, wherein they have sinned, and will
cleanse them: so shall they be my people, and I will be their God. And David my servant shall be king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them.

Hos 1:11 Then shall the children of Judah and the children of Israel be gathered together, and appoint themselves one head, and they shall come up out of the land: for great shall be the day of Jezreel.

14But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines toward the west; they shall spoil them of the east together: they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

These blood brothers who are now united in a common cause will swoop down upon the Philistines along the seacoast and then lay a strong arm on Edom and Moab and Ammon in the East of Judea.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Zep 2:5 Woe unto the inhabitants of the sea coast, the nation of the Cherethites! the word of the LORD is against you; O Canaan, the land of the Philistines, I will even destroy thee, that there shall be no inhabitant. Read: Oba 1:19; Zec 9:5-7; Isa 59:19; Isa 66:19-20; Isa 25:10; Isa 60:14; Joe 3:19; Amo 9:12; Oba 1:18

15And the LORD shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind shall he shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dryshod.

Picture the tongue of the Red Sea dried up with a mighty wind as if God shook his hand over the gulf and at the same time shaking his hand over the Euphrates river and reducing it to seven streams and men walking across it without getting their feet wet and you have a picture of God bring the exiles home after the captivity.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 50:2 When I came, was there no man? when I called, was there none to answer? Is my hand shortened at all, that it cannot redeem? or have I no
power to deliver? behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make the rivers a wilderness: their fish stinketh, because there is no water, and dieth for thirst.

**Isa 51:9-10** Awake, awake, put on strength, O arm of the LORD; awake, as in the ancient days, in the generations of old. Art thou not it that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon? Art thou not it which hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over? Read *Zec 10:10-12; Isa 19:5; Psa 74:13-15; Eze 29:10-20*

16And there shall be an highway for the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria; like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

The prophet sees a highway constructed from Assyria to Egypt and that the people who had been in captivity would travel this highway on their return from exile.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:**

**Isa 19:23-24** In that day shall there be a highway out of Egypt to Assyria, and the Assyrian shall come into Egypt, and the Egyptian into Assyria, and the Egyptians shall serve with the Assyrians. In that day shall Israel be the third with Egypt and with Assyria, even a blessing in the midst of the land:

**Isa 27:13** And it shall come to pass in that day, that the great trumpet shall be blown, and they shall come which were ready to perish in the land of Assyria, and the outcasts in the land of Egypt, and shall worship the LORD in the holy mount at Jerusalem. Read: *Isa 35:8-10; Isa 40:3-5; Isa 42:15-16; Isa 48:20*
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 12

God withdrew his anger and moved in to help them come home. Now they are singing his praises—GOD—yes, GOD is their strength and song—yea, he is their salvation. They are pulling up buckets full of salvation from the well of salvation. They are crying tears of joy and shouting the name of their God. They are telling everyone—from sea to shining sea—from valley to mountain top of what God has done for them and how he lives again in the holy city—they are spreading the word about Gods reputation.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 12

1And in that day thou shalt say, O LORD, I will praise thee: though thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

They are pictured as praising God because the storm was past, His anger was abated and he was appeased.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT:

Isa 14:3 And it shall come to pass in the day that the LORD shall give thee rest from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve,

Isa 27:12-13 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the LORD shall beat off from the channel of the river unto the stream of Egypt, and ye shall be gathered one by one, O ye children of Israel. And it shall come to pass in that day, that the great trumpet shall be blown, and they shall come which were ready to perish in the land of Assyria, and the outcasts in the land of Egypt,
and shall worship the LORD in the holy mount at Jerusalem. Read: Isa 11:16; Isa 26:1; Isa 27:1-3; Isa 35:10; Zec 14:9; Zec 14:20; Isa 25:9

2 Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the LORD JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also is become my salvation.

God had delivered them and they are now living in confidence and unafraid. He was the source of their strength and the theme of their song.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 60:20-22 Thy sun shall no more go down; neither shall thy moon withdraw itself: for the LORD shall be thine everlasting light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended. Thy people also shall be all righteous: they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of my planting, the work of my hands, that I may be glorified. A little one shall become a thousand, and a small one a strong nation: I the LORD will hasten it in his time. Read: Isa 49:13; Psa 69:34-36; Psa 72:18-19; Psa 149:6; Rev 15:3-4; Rev 19:1-6; Hos 14:4-9

3 Therefore with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.

With triumphant joy they were drawing water from the fountain of deliverance.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Isa 49:10 They shall not hunger nor thirst; neither shall the heat nor sun smite them: for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them. Read: Isa 55:1-3; Psa 36:9; Jer 2:13; Joh 4:10-14; Joh 7:37-39; Rev 7:17; Rev 22:17

4 And in that day shall ye say, Praise the LORD, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

In the day of their deliverance they were saying thank you Lord we celebrate your name and we will tell the world what a wonderful God you are, your might and majesty will always be in grateful remembrance.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDOURSE THE TEXT:

**Psa 106:47-48** Save us, O LORD our God, and gather us from among the heathen, to give thanks unto thy holy name, and to triumph in thy praise. Blessed be the LORD God of Israel from everlasting to everlasting: and let all the people say, Amen. Praise ye the LORD. Read: **Psa 113:1-3; Psa 105:1; Isa 66:19; Jer 50:2; Psa 22:31; Jer 51:9-10**

Sing unto the LORD; for he hath done excellent things: this is known in all the earth.

All the marvelous things God had done caused them to break out into spontaneous singing; they wanted the whole world to know of his wonderful feats.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Exo 15:1** Then sang Moses and the children of Israel this song unto the LORD, and spake, saying, I will sing unto the LORD, for he hath triumphed gloriously: the horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea.

**Exo 15:21** And Miriam answered them, Sing ye to the LORD, for he hath triumphed gloriously; the horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea. Read: **Psa 68:32-33; Psa 98:1; Psa 105:2; Rev 19:1-3; Hab 2:14; Eze 39:24-29**

Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion: for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

They were crying with joy and shouting till the rafters reverberated because God had brought them back from captivity to their homeland, and now the Holy One is dwelling in them and living among them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 40:9** O Zion, that bringest good tidings, get thee up into the high mountain; O Jerusalem, that bringest good tidings, lift up thy voice with
strength; lift it up, be not afraid; say unto the cities of Judah, Behold your
God! Read: Isa 52:7-10; Luk 19:37-40; Isa 30:19; Zec 8:3-8; Isa 24:23; Isa
41:14; Zec 2:5,10,11
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 13

The horsefly from the Euphrates chased the heifer of the Nile—the hammer from Mesopotamia beat down the army of Pharoah—the lion of Babylon has roared and pounced on all nations—the destroying mountain that destroyed the earth is about to be destroyed—now his doomsday has arrived. God is sending his servant Cyrus from Persia to destroy Babylon and return the exiles—the commentary section is waiting for you—enjoy!

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 13

The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.

A burden is something that you must carry; in this case it was the heavy burden of doom. The prophet was assigned to lay their fate before them.

In the year of 606 B.C. Nebuchadnezzar attacked Jerusalem with his war machine. Babylon dates back to the time of Nimrod, and Genesis eleven gives us the story of the tower of Babel where the languages derived. This place was called Babel because people began to talk in different languages and it sounded like babbling, hence the word Babel. It stood on the Euphrates, about 200 miles above its junction with the Tigris, which flowed through its midst and divided it into two almost equal parts. This city gradually grew in extent and grandeur, but in time it became subject to Assyria. On the fall of Nineveh (B.C. 606) it threw off the Assyrian yoke, and became the capital of the growing Babylonian empire. Under Nebuchadnezzar it became one of the most splendid cities of the ancient world.

On the west bank of the Euphrates, about 50 miles south of Bagdad, there is found a series of artificial mounds of vast extent. These are the ruins of this once famous proud city. These ruins are principally (1) the great mound called
Babel by the Arabs. This was probably the noted Temple of Belus, which was a pyramid about 480 feet high. (2) The Kasr (i.e., “the palace”). This was the great palace of Nebuchadnezzar. It is almost a square, each side of which is about 700 feet long. The little town of Hillah, near the site of Babylon, is built almost wholly of bricks taken from this single mound. (3) A lofty mound, on the summit of which stands a modern tomb called Amran ibn-Ali. This is probably the most ancient portion of the city’s remains. Where the ruins of the famous hanging-gardens, or perhaps of some royal palace. The utter desolation of the city once called “The glory of kingdoms” (Isaiah 13:19) was foretold by the prophets (Isaiah 13:4-22; Jeremiah 25:12; 50:2, 3; Daniel 2:31-38.) This city and its whole empire were taken by the Persians under Cyrus; the Persians were subdued by the Macedonians, and the Macedonians by the Romans; so that Rome succeeded to the power of old Babylon. And it was her method to adopt the worship of the false deities she had conquered; so that by her own act she became the heiress and successor of all the Babylonian idolatry, and of all that was introduced into it by the immediate successors of Babylon, and consequently of all the idolatry of the earth.” Rome, or “mystical Babylon,” is “that great city which reigneth over the kings of the earth” Rev. 17:18

In his days Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up, and Jehoiakim became his servant three years: then he turned and rebelled against him. II Kings 24:1

After three years of servitude to the Babylonians Jehoiakim decided to throw off the yoke, but Nebuchadnezzar would have none of this—so he invaded Judah again and burned the city.

“The word that came to Jeremiah concerning all the people of Judah in the fourth year of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah, that was the first year of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon; The which Jeremiah the prophet spake unto all the people of Judah, and to all the inhabitants of Jerusalem, saying, From the thirteenth year of Josiah the son of Amon king of Judah, even unto this day, that is the three and twentieth year, the word of the LORD hath come unto me, and I have spoken unto you, rising early and speaking; but ye have not hearkened. And the LORD hath sent unto you all his servants the prophets, rising early and sending them; but ye have not hearkened, nor inclined your ear to hear. They said, Turn ye again now every one from his evil way, and from the evil of your doings, and dwell in the land that the LORD hath given unto you and to your fathers for ever and ever: And go not after other gods to serve them, and to worship them, and provoke me not to anger with the works of your hands; and I will do you no hurt. Yet ye have not
hearkened unto me, saith the LORD; that ye might provoke me to anger with
the works of your hands to your own hurt. Therefore thus saith the LORD
of hosts; Because ye have not heard my words, Behold, I will send and take
all the families of the north, saith the LORD, and Nebuchadrezzar the king
of Babylon, my servant, and will bring them against this land, and against
the inhabitants thereof, and against all these nations round about, and will
utterly destroy them, and make them an astonishment, and an hissing, and
perpetual desolations. Moreover I will take from them the voice of mirth, and
the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride,
the sound of the millstones, and the light of the candle. And this whole land
shall be a desolation, and an astonishment; and these nations shall serve the
king of Babylon seventy years”. Jer. 25:1-11

Zedekiah rebelled against Babylon and was captured, all the nobles slain, his
children massacred, he was bound in chains, his eyes gouged out with a dagger
and the sockets were cauterized with a hot iron poker. They manacled him
like a slave, iron rings were forged around the ankles and linked together by
a six inch chain, and then a tight chain was placed around the waist, this was
attached by a third chain in such a way that the prisoner could not run away.
Once they arrived in Babylon they knew that if they tried to escape it would
result in execution. So, for 70 years they lived and died in a foreign land. No
one ever returned home from the exile. (Copied from my book Daniel and
the Revelation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT
CORROBORATE THE TEXT:

Jer 25:12-27 And it shall come to pass, when seventy years are accomplished,
that I will punish the king of Babylon, and that nation, saith the LORD,
for their iniquity, and the land of the Chaldeans, and will make it perpetual
desolations. And I will bring upon that land all my words which I have
pronounced against it, even all that is written in this book, which Jeremiah
hath prophesied against all the nations. For many nations and great kings
shall serve themselves of them also: and I will recompense them according
to their deeds, and according to the works of their own hands. For thus saith
the LORD God of Israel unto me; Take the wine cup of this fury at my
hand, and cause all the nations, to whom I send thee, to drink it. And they
shall drink, and be moved, and be mad, because of the sword that I will send
among them. Then took I the cup at the LORD’S hand, and made all the
nations to drink, unto whom the LORD had sent me: To wit, Jerusalem, and
the cities of Judah, and the kings thereof, and the princes thereof, to make
them a desolation, an astonishment, an hissing, and a curse; as it is this day; Pharaoh king of Egypt, and his servants, and his princes, and all his people; And all the mingled people, and all the kings of the land of Uz, and all the kings of the land of the Philistines, and Ashkelon, and Azzah, and Ekron, and the remnant of Ashdod, Edom, and Moab, and the children of Ammon, And all the kings of Tyre, and all the kings of Zidon, and the kings of the isles which are beyond the sea, Dedan, and Tema, and Buz, and all that are in the utmost corners, And all the kings of Arabia, and all the kings of the mingled people that dwell in the desert, And all the kings of Zimri, and all the kings of Elam, and all the kings of the Medes, And all the kings of the north, far and near, one with another, and all the kingdoms of the world, which are upon the face of the earth: and the king of Sheshach shall drink after them. Therefore thou shalt say unto them, Thus saith the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel; Drink ye, and be drunken, and spue, and fall, and rise no more, because of the sword which I will send among you.

2Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.

They were to raise a flag on a mountain top—they were to yell at the top of their voice—make a motion with their hand to send information—the guards will see this and go into the command center and ready their troops.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 18:3 All ye inhabitants of the world, and dwellers on the earth, see ye, when he lifteth up an ensign on the mountains; and when he bloweth a trumpet, hear ye.

Jer 50:2 Declare ye among the nations, and publish, and set up a standard; publish, and conceal not: say, Babylon is taken, Bel is confounded, Merodach is broken in pieces; her idols are confounded, her images are broken in pieces. Read: Jer 51:25-27; Isa 45:1-3; Jer 51:58

3I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones for mine anger, even them that rejoice in my highness.

God is in charge of the army of Persia and has summoned them to battle; they
are to execute the wrath of the Almighty on the Babylonians. These warriors are eager for the battle.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Jer 51:28 Prepare against her the nations with the kings of the Medes, the captains thereof, and all the rulers thereof, and all the land of his dominion.

Jer 51:29 And the land shall tremble and sorrow: for every purpose of the LORD shall be performed against Babylon, to make the land of Babylon a desolation without an inhabitant. Read: Jer 50:21-46

The noise of a multitude in the mountains, like as of a great people; a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together: the LORD of hosts mustereth the host of the battle.

The mountains are roaring like that of a vast number of soldiers marching—Forty nine nations have formed a collation to do battle against Babylon. It is the chosen ones of the LORD that have been mustered to do battle against the Babylonians.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Jer 50:2-3 Declare ye among the nations, and publish, and set up a standard; publish, and conceal not: say, Babylon is taken, Bel is confounded, Merodach is broken in pieces; her idols are confounded, her images are broken in pieces. For out of the north there cometh up a nation against her, which shall make her land desolate, and none shall dwell therein: they shall remove, they shall depart, both man and beast. Read: Isa 45:1-2; Jer 50:14-15; Joe 2:1-11

They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, even the LORD, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.

They were the Medes and Persians who came from the far horizons and were the instruments of God’s fury to destroy the whole land of Babylonia.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Jer 50:3** For out of the north there cometh up a nation against her, which shall make her land desolate, and none shall dwell therein: they shall remove, they shall depart, both man and beast.

**Jer 50:9** For, lo, I will raise and cause to come up against Babylon an assembly of great nations from the north country: and they shall set themselves in array against her; from thence she shall be taken: their arrows shall be as of a mighty expert man; none shall return in vain. Read: **Jer 51:11; Jer 51:28**

6Howl ye; for the day of the LORD is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.

Yell and scream in terror for God is paying them a visit with devastation unheard of before in history.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 65:14** Behold, my servants shall sing for joy of heart, but ye shall cry for sorrow of heart, and shall howl for vexation of spirit.

**Jer 51:8** Babylon is suddenly fallen and destroyed: howl for her; take balm for her pain, if so be she may be healed.

**Zep 1:14** The great day of the LORD is near, it is near, and hasteth greatly, even the voice of the day of the LORD: the mighty man shall cry there bitterly.

**Amo 5:18** Woe unto you that desire the day of the LORD! to what end is it for you? the day of the LORD is darkness, and not light.

**Isa 34:8** For it is the day of the LORD’S vengeance, and the year of recompences for the controversy of Zion.

7Therefore shall all hands be faint, and every man’s heart shall melt:
When they see the coming warriors they are paralyzed and hysterical and are screaming in terror.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 51:20** Thy sons have fainted, they lie at the head of all the streets, as a wild bull in a net: they are full of the fury of the LORD, the rebuke of thy God.

**Jer 50:43** The king of Babylon hath heard the report of them, and his hands waxed feeble: anguish took hold of him, and pangs as of a woman in travail.

**Eze 7:17** All hands shall be feeble, and all knees shall be weak as water. Read: Eze 21:7; Nah 1:6; Nah 2:10

8**And they shall be afraid: pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be in pain as a woman that travaileth: they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.**

Their hands are falling down and are limp as an old dish rag—their courage has melted away—the bold and brave Babylonians are as scared as a rabbit on the run—fear has griped them like labor pains of childbirth—they are staring at each other—their faces are ashy pale—they are horrified of the outcome.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 21:3-4** Therefore are my loins filled with pain: pangs have taken hold upon me, as the pangs of a woman that travaileth: I was bowed down at the hearing of it; I was dismayed at the seeing of it. My heart panted, fearfulness affrighted me: the night of my pleasure hath he turned into fear unto me. Read: Isa 26:17; Dan 5:5-6

9**Behold, the day of the LORD cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate: and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.**

Prophets had spoke of this day and now it has arrived—he is going to rid the earth of this merciless people, he will root out these sinners and exterminate the wicked.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 47:10-15 For thou hast trusted in thy wickedness: thou hast said, None seeth me. Thy wisdom and thy knowledge, it hath perverted thee; and thou hast said in thine heart, I am, and none else beside me. Therefore shall evil come upon thee; thou shalt not know from whence it riseth: and mischief shall fall upon thee; thou shalt not be able to put it off: and desolation shall come upon thee suddenly, which thou shalt not know. Stand now with thine enchantments, and with the multitude of thy sorceries, wherein thou hast laboured from thy youth; if so be thou shalt be able to profit, if so be thou mayest prevail. Thou art wearied in the multitude of thy counsels. Let now the astrologers, the stargazers, the monthly prognosticators, stand up, and save thee from these things that shall come upon thee. Behold, they shall be as stubble; the fire shall burn them; they shall not deliver themselves from the power of the flame: there shall not be a coal to warm at, nor fire to sit before it. Thus shall they be unto thee with whom thou hast laboured, even thy merchants, from thy youth: they shall wander every one to his quarter; none shall save thee. Read: Jer 50:40-42

10 For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light: the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.

The constellations are a black hole—sun refuses to shine—no moonlight. It is the darkest day in their history. When nations fall the prophets likens it to the darkening of the heavens. The sun represents the king and the queen, the moon and high government officials to the constellations. God uses this illustration each time a country collapses.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 24:23 Then the moon shall be confounded, and the sun ashamed, when the LORD of hosts shall reign in mount Zion, and in Jerusalem, and before his ancients gloriously.

Eze 32:7-8 And when I shall put thee out, I will cover the heaven, and make the stars thereof dark; I will cover the sun with a cloud, and the moon shall
not give her light. All the bright lights of heaven will I make dark over thee, and set darkness upon thy land, saith the Lord GOD.

**Mat 24:29** Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken:

\[\text{And I will punish the world for their evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible.}\]

When God paid them a visit with the Persian army he came to destroy the world for their evil. He is putting an end to their lawless crimes and evil vice. He is going to put and end to their bragging and boasting—God will terminate these strutting tyrants.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:**

**Isa 14:21** Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquity of their fathers; that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities. Read: *Isa 24:4-6; Jer 51:34-38; Rev 12:9-11; Isa 5:15; Isa 14:12-16; Jer 50:29-32; Dan 5:22-23*

12 I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.

When the LORD finishes this invasion their will not be very many men left.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:**

**Isa 4:1** And in that day seven women shall take hold of one man, saying, We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel: only let us be called by thy name, to take away our reproach.

**Isa 24:6** Therefore hath the curse devoured the earth, and they that dwell therein are desolate: therefore the inhabitants of the earth are burned, and few men left.
Therefore I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the LORD of hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.

God is going to shake the heavens and make the earth reel—it is the judgment day for this nation and his fierce anger will not be abated till he has destroyed them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Hag 2:6-7 For thus saith the LORD of hosts; Yet once, it is a little while, and I will shake the heavens, and the earth, and the sea, and the dry land; And I will shake all nations, and the desire of all nations shall come: and I will fill this house with glory, saith the LORD of hosts. Read: Joe 3:16; Mat 24:29; Heb 12:26-27; Rev 6:13-14; Lam 1:12; Nah 1:4-6

And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up: they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.

They are under Gods wrath—picture them running like a white tail deer—or left like sheep with no shepherd—the army of Babylon will run until it is exhausted—so confused they will desert and run to their own land to hide.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 17:13 The nations shall rush like the rushing of many waters: but God shall rebuke them, and they shall flee far off, and shall be chased as the chaff of the mountains before the wind, and like a rolling thing before the whirlwind. Read: 1Ki 22:17,36; Jer 50:16; Jer 51:9

Every one that is found shall be thrust through; and every one that is joined unto them shall fall by the sword.

They will be caught and slaughtered—anyone helping them escape will be cut down.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

**Isa 14:19-22** But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and as the raiment of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcase trodden under feet. Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land, and slain thy people: the seed of evildoers shall never be renowned. Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquity of their fathers; that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities. For I will rise up against them, saith the LORD of hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the LORD. Read: [Isa 47:9-14; Jer 50:27, 35-42; Jer 51:3](#)

16 Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled, and their wives ravished.

They will kill the infants in the presence of their parents—no pity for anyone—their houses looted—their wives raped.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

**Psa 137:8-9** O daughter of Babylon, who art to be destroyed; happy shall he be, that rewardeth thee as thou hast served us. Happy shall he be, that taketh and dasheth thy little ones against the stones.

**Hos 10:14** Therefore shall a tumult arise among thy people, and all thy fortresses shall be spoiled, as Shalman spoiled Betharbel in the day of battle: the mother was dashed in pieces upon her children.

**Nah 3:10** Yet was she carried away, she went into captivity: her young children also were dashed in pieces at the top of all the streets: and they cast lots for her honourable men, and all her great men were bound in chains.

**Lam 5:11** They ravished the women in Zion, and the maids in the cities of Judah.

17 Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver; and as for gold, they shall not delight in it.
The Medes can’t be bought off—no amount of gold or silver can stop this ruthless bunch from their rampage. This is the day they have been waiting for and now it is sweet revenge and they are enjoying every minute of it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Isa 21:2** A grievous vision is declared unto me; the treacherous dealer dealeth treacherously, and the spoiler spoileth. Go up, O Elam: besiege, O Media; all the sighing thereof have I made to cease.

**Isa 41:25** I have raised up one from the north, and he shall come: from the rising of the sun shall he call upon my name: and he shall come upon princes as upon mortar, and as the potter treadeth clay.

**Jer 50:9** For, lo, I will raise and cause to come up against Babylon an assembly of great nations from the north country: and they shall set themselves in array against her; from thence she shall be taken: their arrows shall be as of a mighty expert man; none shall return in vain. Read: **Jer 51:11, 27-29; Dan 5:28-31**

18*Their bows also shall dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eyes shall not spare children.*

Young men will especially be their target—no pity on pregnant women—what they have in mind is a massacre—a brutality unheard of.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**2Ki 8:12** And Hazael said, Why weepeth my lord? And he answered, Because I know the evil that thou wilt do unto the children of Israel: their strong holds wilt thou set on fire, and their young men wilt thou slay with the sword, and wilt dash their children, and rip up their women with child.

**Hos 13:16** Samaria shall become desolate; for she hath rebelled against her God: they shall fall by the sword: their infants shall be dashed in pieces, and their women with child shall be ripped up.

**Nah 2:1** He that dasheth in pieces is come up before thy face: keep the
munition, watch the way, make thy loins strong, fortify thy power mightily. Read: Nah 3:10; 2Ch 36:17

19And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees’ excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah.

The world was waiting for God to finish them off and now it is happening—the crown jewel of all kingdoms is meeting its doom—it is a divine overthrow.

Babylon, whose destruction and utter ruin are here predicted, was situated in the midst of a large plain, having a very deep and fruitful soil, on the Euphrates River. According to Herodotus, it had an enclosed wall 300 feet high, and fifty wide, on the top of which were small watch towers of one story high, leaving a space between them, through which a chariot might pass and turn. On each side were twenty-five gates of solid brass; from each of which proceeded a street, 150 feet broad, making in all fifty streets; which, crossing each other at right angles, intersected the city into 676 squares, along which stood the houses, all built three or four stories high, and highly decorated towards the street; the interior of these squares was gardens, and pleasure grounds, etc. Its principal ornaments were the temple of Belus, having a tower of eight stories, upon a base of a quarter of a mile square; a most magnificent palace; and the famous hanging gardens, or artificial mountains raised upon arches, and planted with large and beautiful trees. Cyrus took it by diverting the waters of the Euphrates, which ran through the midst, and entering by the channel; and the river being never restored to its proper course, overflowed the whole country, and made it a morass. Darius afterwards depopulated the place, lowered the walls, and demolished the gates; Xerxes destroyed the temples; the building of Seleucia nearly exhausted it of its inhabitants; a king of the Parthians carried a number of them into slavery, and destroyed the most beautiful parts; so that modern travelers describe it as a mass of shapeless ruins, the habitation of wild beasts.

Isa 14:4-6 That thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say, How hath the oppressor ceased! the golden city ceased! The LORD hath broken the staff of the wicked, and the sceptre of the rulers. He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.

Jer 51:41 How is Sheshach taken! and how is the praise of the whole earth surprised! how is Babylon become an astonishment among the nations!
Jer 49:18 As in the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah and the neighbour cities thereof, saith the LORD, no man shall abide there, neither shall a son of man dwell in it.

20 It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there.

No one will ever live there—it will remain forever uninhabited—it will never rise again—Arabs and Nomads will not camp there at night—shepherds won’t take their flocks there because of the danger from wild animals.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Isa 47:1-15 Come down, and sit in the dust, O virgin daughter of Babylon, sit on the ground: there is no throne, O daughter of the Chaldeans: for thou shalt no more be called tender and delicate. Take the millstones, and grind meal: uncover thy locks, make bare the leg, uncover the thigh, pass over the rivers. Thy nakedness shall be uncovered, yea, thy shame shall be seen: I will take vengeance, and I will not meet thee as a man. As for our redeemer, the LORD of hosts is his name, the Holy One of Israel. Sit thou silent, and get thee into darkness, O daughter of the Chaldeans: for thou shalt no more be called, The lady of kingdoms. I was wroth with my people, I have polluted mine inheritance, and given them into thine hand: thou didst shew them no mercy; upon the ancient hast thou very heavily laid thy yoke. And thou saidst, I shall be a lady for ever: so that thou didst not lay these things to thy heart, neither didst remember the latter end of it. Therefore hear now this, thou that art given to pleasures, that dwellest carelessly, that sayest in thine heart, I am, and none else beside me; I shall not sit as a widow, neither shall I know the loss of children: But these two things shall come to thee in a moment in one day, the loss of children, and widowhood: they shall come upon thee in their perfection for the multitude of thy sorceries, and for the great abundance of thine enchantments. For thou hast trusted in thy wickedness: thou hast said, None seeth me. Thy wisdom and thy knowledge, it hath perverted thee; and thou hast said in thine heart, I am, and none else beside me. Therefore shall evil come upon thee; thou shalt not know from whence it riseth: and mischief shall fall upon thee; thou shalt not be able to put it off: and desolation shall come upon thee suddenly, which thou shalt not know. Stand now with thy enchantments, and with the multitude of thy sorceries, wherein thou hast laboured from thy youth; if so be thou shalt be able to profit, if so be thou
mayest prevail. Thou art wearied in the multitude of thy counsels. Let now the astrologers, the stargazers, the monthly prognosticators, stand up, and save thee from these things that shall come upon thee. Behold, they shall be as stubble; the fire shall burn them; they shall not deliver themselves from the power of the flame: there shall not be a coal to warm at, nor fire to sit before it. Thus shall they be unto thee with whom thou hast laboured, even thy merchants, from thy youth: they shall wander every one to his quarter; none shall save thee.

21But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.

It will be a ghost town—turned over to the animals—a wildlife refuge—wild cats and desert demons—at night you will hear haunted howls—Jackals and serpents are the new tenants—wild goats and desert creatures will do their weird dance there. No one will serve them a “vacate the premise” notice.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITATIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Isa 34:11-15 But the cormorant and the bittern shall possess it; the owl also and the raven shall dwell in it: and he shall stretch out upon it the line of confusion, and the stones of emptiness. They shall call the nobles thereof to the kingdom, but none shall be there, and all her princes shall be nothing. And thorns shall come up in her palaces, nettles and brambles in the fortresses thereof: and it shall be an habitation of dragons, and a court for owls. The wild beasts of the desert shall also meet with the wild beasts of the island, and the satyr shall cry to his fellow; the screech owl also shall rest there, and find for herself a place of rest. There shall the great owl make her nest, and lay, and hatch, and gather under her shadow: there shall the vultures also be gathered, every one with her mate.

22And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces: and her time is near to come, and her days shall not be prolonged.

Even the splendid palaces and rich estates will be occupied by dangerous animals and poisonous snakes. Their stately mansions will be lived in by
jackals and hyenas and screech-owls—time was running out—her doom was very near—close at hand when the prophet wrote this chapter.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

**Isa 35:7** And the parched ground shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water: in the habitation of dragons, where each lay, shall be grass with reeds and rushes.

**Deu 32:35** To me belongeth vengeance, and recompence; their foot shall slide in due time: for the day of their calamity is at hand, and the things that shall come upon them make haste.

**Jer 51:33** For thus saith the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel; The daughter of Babylon is like a threshingfloor, it is time to thresh her: yet a little while, and the time of her harvest shall come.

**Eze 7:7-10** The morning is come unto thee, O thou that dwellest in the land: the time is come, the day of trouble is near, and not the sounding again of the mountains. Now will I shortly pour out my fury upon thee, and accomplish mine anger upon thee: and I will judge thee according to thy ways, and will recompense thee for all thine abominations. And mine eye shall not spare, neither will I have pity: I will recompense thee according to thy ways and thine abominations that are in the midst of thee; and ye shall know that I am the LORD that smiteth.

Behold the day, behold, it is come: the morning is gone forth; the rod hath blossomed, pride hath budded.
ISOIAH CHAPTER 14

INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 14

Israel will be coming home, however they must serve their 70 year sentence. The good news is that their captors will end up being their servants. They have a new song on their lips they are singing a song full of jeer and derision—a song describing the king as a tyrant filled with fury an arrogant oppressor who is hushed from his mad rage. The taunt continues with phrases about being smote, trampled and never ending blows—a ruler who angrily gave the people a good thrashing and in his rage furiously tyrannized them unceasingly with no one stepping in to help. The song names him as Lucifer and then sings about his death and burial without a state funeral. The song tells us that Lucifer is none other than the king of Babylon. The song continues with the King of Babylon arriving in hell with a reception from others just like him. The commentary section will supply all the details.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 14

1For the LORD will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land: and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.

This special class of God’s chosen ones who are sometimes called Jacob, is going to be dealt with gently. He is going to bring them back to their homeland and foreigners will be joined with them and they will throw their lot in with Jacob.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT:

Isa 40:1-2 Comfort ye, comfort ye my people, saith your God. Speak ye comfortably to Jerusalem, and cry unto her, that her warfare is accomplished,
that her iniquity is pardoned: for she hath received of the LORD’S hand double for all her sins.

**Isa 44:21-22** Remember these, O Jacob and Israel; for thou art my servant: I have formed thee; thou art my servant: O Israel, thou shalt not be forgotten of me. I have blotted out, as a thick cloud, thy transgressions, and, as a cloud, thy sins: return unto me; for I have redeemed thee.

**Isa 54:7-8** For a small moment have I forsaken thee; but with great mercies will I gather thee. In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment; but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the LORD thy Redeemer. Read: **Lev 26:40-42; Neh 1:8-9**

2 And the people shall take them, and bring them to their place: and the house of Israel shall possess them in the land of the LORD for servants and handmaids: and they shall take them captives, whose captives they were; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

Jacob will be escorted home and repossess their homeland and their former slave owners will now be their slaves and they will rule over them. They will capture them who had formally held them in captivity.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**Isa 60:9-12** Surely the isles shall wait for me, and the ships of Tarshish first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them, unto the name of the LORD thy God, and to the Holy One of Israel, because he hath glorified thee. And the sons of strangers shall build up thy walls, and their kings shall minister unto thee: for in my wrath I smote thee, but in my favour have I had mercy on thee. Therefore thy gates shall be open continually; they shall not be shut day nor night; that men may bring unto thee the forces of the Gentiles, and that their kings may be brought. For the nation and kingdom that will not serve thee shall perish; yea, those nations shall be utterly wasted. Read: **Isa 61:5; Ezr 2:65; Isa 60:14**

3 And it shall come to pass in the day that the LORD shall give thee rest from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve,
They had been in grim servitude and suffered in agony and misery while in slavery and chains but the prophet tells them that in spite of their turmoil that there are better days ahead.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Isa 32:18 And my people shall dwell in a peaceable habitation, and in sure dwellings, and in quiet resting places; Read: Deu 28:65-68; Ezr 9:8-9

“That thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say, How hath the oppressor ceased! the golden city ceased!

They have a new song on their lips—it is a taunt-song—they are singing a song full of jeer and derision—a song describing the king as a tyrant filled with fury—a bully that has received his just due—an arrogant oppressor who is hushed from his mad rage.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Jer 27:6-7 And now have I given all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, my servant; and the beasts of the field have I given him also to serve him. And all nations shall serve him, and his son, and his son’s son, until the very time of his land come: and then many nations and great kings shall serve themselves of him.

Jer 50:22-23 A sound of battle is in the land, and of great destruction. How is the hammer of the whole earth cut asunder and broken! how is Babylon become a desolation among the nations! Read Jer 51:20-24

“The LORD hath broken the staff of the wicked, and the sceptre of the rulers.

The song continues with phrases describing his lawless reign as a despot godless power that has become a “has been”.
Isa 14:29 Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken: for out of the serpent’s root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.

Jer 48:15-17 Moab is spoiled, and gone up out of her cities, and his chosen young men are gone down to the slaughter, saith the King, whose name is the LORD of hosts. The calamity of Moab is near to come, and his affliction hasteth fast. All ye that are about him, bemoan him; and all ye that know his name, say, How is the strong staff broken, and the beautiful rod!

“He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.

The taunt continues with the phrases about being smote, trampled and never ending blows—a ruler who angrily gave the people a good thrashing and in his rage furiously tyrannized them unceasingly with no one stepping in to help.

Isa 46:10-11 Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure: Calling a ravenous bird from the east, the man that executeth my counsel from a far country: yea, I have spoken it, I will also bring it to pass; I have purposed it, I will also do it.

7The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet: they break forth into singing.

Now it’s a new song on every lip and in every heart—the whole world bursts into singing—peace and quiet and tranquility has finally arrived.

Isa 49:13 Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; and break forth into
singing, O mountains: for the LORD hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.

**Psa 126:1-3 A Song of degrees.** When the LORD turned again the captivity of Zion, we were like them that dream. Then was our mouth filled with laughter, and our tongue with singing: then said they among the heathen, The LORD hath done great things for them. The LORD hath done great things for us; whereof we are glad.

**Jer 51:48** Then the heaven and the earth, and all that is therein, shall sing for Babylon: for the spoilers shall come unto her from the north, saith the LORD.

>a Yea, the fir trees rejoice at thee, and the cedars of Lebanon, saying, Since thou art laid down, no feller is come up against us.

The cedars of Lebanon and the fir trees have burst out in song—the theme of their song was “since you are cut down, we are not cut down.”

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 55:12** For ye shall go out with joy, and be led forth with peace: the mountains and the hills shall break forth before you into singing, and all the trees of the field shall clap their hands.

**Eze 31:16** I made the nations to shake at the sound of his fall, when I cast him down to hell with them that descend into the pit: and all the trees of Eden, the choice and best of Lebanon, all that drink water, shall be comforted in the nether parts of the earth.

>9 Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming: it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.

Hell was excited for their arrival—it was all astir—it was waiting for their arrival—kings and potentates and world leaders were notified of their arrival—these leaders who had long been dead roused to meet the kings of Babylon.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT
ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

**Pro 15:24** The way of life *is* above to the wise, that he may depart from hell
beneath.

**Eze 32:21-32** The strong among the mighty shall speak to him out of the midst
of hell with them that help him: they are gone down, they lie uncircumcised,
slain by the sword. Asshur *is* there and all her company: his graves *are*
about him: all of them slain, fallen by the sword: Whose graves are set in the sides
of the pit, and her company is round about her grave: all of them slain, fallen
by the sword, which caused terror in the land of the living. There *is* Elam and
all her multitude round about her grave, all of them slain, fallen by the sword,
which are gone down uncircumcised into the nether parts of the earth, which
caused their terror in the land of the living; yet have they borne their shame
with them that go down to the pit. They have set her a bed in the midst of
the slain with all her multitude: her graves *are* round about him: all of them
uncircumcised, slain by the sword: though their terror was caused in the land
of the living, yet have they borne their shame with them that go down to the
pit: he is put in the midst of *them that are* slain. There *is* Meshech, Tubal, and
all her multitude: her graves *are* round about him: all of them uncircumcised,
slain by the sword, though they caused their terror in the land of the living.
And they shall not lie with the mighty *that are* fallen of the uncircumcised,
which are gone down to hell with their weapons of war: and they have laid
their swords under their heads, but their iniquities shall be upon their bones,
though *they were* the terror of the mighty in the land of the living. Yea, thou
shalt be broken in the midst of the uncircumcised, and shalt lie with *them that
are* slain with the sword. There *is* Edom, her kings, and all her princes, which
with their might are laid by *them that were* slain by the sword: they shall lie
with the uncircumcised, and with them that go down to the pit.

30 There *be* the princes of the north, all of them, and all the Zidonians,
which are gone down with the slain; with their terror they are ashamed of
their might; and they lie uncircumcised with *them that be* slain by the sword,
and bear their shame with them that go down to the pit. Pharaoh shall see
them, and shall be comforted over all his multitude, *even* Pharaoh and all his
army slain by the sword, saith the Lord GOD. For I have caused my terror in
the land of the living: and he shall be laid in the midst of the uncircumcised
with *them that are* slain with the sword, *even* Pharaoh and all his multitude,
saith the Lord GOD.
10 All they shall speak and say unto thee, Art thou also become weak as we? art thou become like unto us?

They are going to hail their arrival and each one has a prepared speech about how they are now like one of us—they are greeted with “you are as weak as we are”.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Ecc 2:16** For there is no remembrance of the wise more than of the fool for ever; seeing that which now is in the days to come shall all be forgotten. And how dieth the wise man? as the fool.

**Luk 16:20-23** And there was a certain beggar named Lazarus, which was laid at his gate, full of sores, And desiring to be fed with the crumbs which fell from the rich man’s table: moreover the dogs came and licked his sores. And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham’s bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried; And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom.

11 Thy pomp is brought down to the grave, and the noise of thy viols: the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.

Their speech continues in Hell about how they have lost their magnificence and pomp—how their power has been brought down and the music in their palace has at last ceased. They are reminded of their mortality—they now have maggots for sheets and worms for a bed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

**Eze 26:13** And I will cause the noise of thy songs to cease; and the sound of thy harps shall be no more heard.

**Eze 32:19-20** Whom dost thou pass in beauty? go down, and be thou laid with the uncircumcised. They shall fall in the midst of theme that are slain by the sword: she is delivered to the sword: draw her and all her multitudes. Read: Dan 5:1-4, 25-30; Isa 66:24; Job 17:13-14; Job 24:20-24; Mar 9:43-48
How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!

Lucifer, who had enslaved the nations, was now cut down to the ground. He, who had been a rising shining star, was now limp and lying in his grave. You, who were blasphemous and satanic, lie in a pool of blood in your palace in Babylon.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 34:4 And all the host of heaven shall be dissolved, and the heavens shall be rolled together as a scroll: and all their host shall fall down, as the leaf falleth off from the vine, and as a falling fig from the fig tree.

Eze 28:13-17 Thou hast been in Eden the garden of God; every precious stone was thy covering, the sardius, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, and gold: the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes was prepared in thee in the day that thou wast created. Thou art the anointed cherub that covereth; and I have set thee so: thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire. Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till iniquity was found in thee. By the multitude of thy merchandise they have filled the midst of thee with violence, and thou hast sinned: therefore I will cast thee as profane out of the mountain of God: and I will destroy thee, O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire. Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I will cast thee to the ground, I will lay thee before kings, that they may behold thee. Read: Rev 12:7-12; Jer 51:20-24

For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north:

In his mind he thought that he would end up in heaven—He the shining star of the morning would be exalted to a throne above all of God’s worthy ones. He prides himself as the greatest and would preside over heavens mount of assembly.
A Commentary on Isaiah

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

**Isa 47:7-10** And thou saidst, I shall be a lady for ever: so that thou didst not lay these things to thy heart, neither didst remember the latter end of it. Therefore hear now this, thou art given to pleasures, that dwellest carelessly, that sayest in thine heart, I am, and none else beside me; I shall not sit as a widow, neither shall I know the loss of children: But these two things shall come to thee in a moment in one day, the loss of children, and widowhood: they shall come upon thee in their perfection for the multitude of thy sorceries, and for the great abundance of thine enchantments. For thou hast trusted in thy wickedness: thou hast said, None seeth me. Thy wisdom and thy knowledge, it hath perverted thee; and thou hast said in thine heart, I am, and none else beside me. Read: Eze 28:12-15; Eze 29:3; Dan 4:30-31; Eze 28:9

**14** I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High.

He sees himself rising above the clouds and being like God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

**Isa 37:23-25** Whom hast thou reproached and blasphemed? and against whom hast thou exalted thy voice, and lifted up thine eyes on high? even against the Holy One of Israel. By thy servants hast thou reproached the Lord, and hast said, By the multitude of my chariots am I come up to the height of the mountains, to the sides of Lebanon; and I will cut down the tall cedars thereof, and the choice fir trees thereof: and I will enter into the height of his border, and the forest of his Carmel. I have digged, and drunk water; and with the sole of my feet have I dried up all the rivers of the besieged places.

**Eze 28:9** Wilt thou yet say before him that slayeth thee, I am God? but thou shalt be a man, and no God, in the hand of him that slayeth thee.

**2Th 2:4** Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God.

**15** Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.
Instead of ascending to heaven and towering above all of heavens worthys he lands straight in hell with his body rotting in an open field.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

**Eze 28:8-9** They shall bring thee down to the pit, and thou shalt die the deaths of them that are slain in the midst of the seas. Wilt thou yet say before him that slayeth thee, I am God? but thou shalt be a man, and no God, in the hand of him that slayeth thee.

**Mat 11:23** And thou, Capernaum, which art exalted unto heaven, shalt be brought down to hell: for if the mighty works, which have been done in thee, had been done in Sodom, it would have remained until this day. Read: **Act 12:22-23; Rev 19:20; Eze 32:23**

16They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and consider thee, saying, Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms;

This abominable wretch doesn’t get a “state funeral” and all onlookers who see him lying like a pauper under other slain carcasses will say “is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms.” Can this be the man who once ruled the world and caused kingdoms to quiver?

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:**

**Psa 58:10-11** The righteous shall rejoice when he seeth the vengeance: he shall wash his feet in the blood of the wicked. So that a man shall say, Verily there is a reward for the righteous: verily he is a God that judgeth in the earth.

**Psa 52:7** Lo, this is the man that made not God his strength; but trusted in the abundance of his riches, and strengthened himself in his wickedness.

**Jer 50:23** How is the hammer of the whole earth cut asunder and broken! how is Babylon become a desolation among the nations!

17That made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof; that opened not the house of his prisoners?
Is this the body of the man who overthrew cities, turned the world into a desert and never allowed those who had been put into slavery of shut up in prison to go home?

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:**

**Joe 2:3** A fire devoureth before them; and behind them a flame burneth: the land is as the garden of Eden before them, and behind them a desolate wilderness; yea, and nothing shall escape them.

**Isa 45:13** I have raised him up in righteousness, and I will direct all his ways: he shall build my city, and he shall let go my captives, not for price nor reward, saith the LORD of hosts.

**18 All the kings of the nations, even all of them, lie in glory, every one in his own house.**

Other kings had a stately funeral—they lie in state—dignitaries from other nations came to pay them honor—but this serpent was not granted such a funeral—others had an honorable burial, but this tyrant receives no such honors.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Ecc 6:3** If a man beget an hundred children, and live many years, so that the days of his years be many, and his soul be not filled with good, and also that he have no burial; I say, that an untimely birth is better than he.

**Ecc 12:5** Also when they shall be afraid of that which is high, and fears shall be in the way, and the almond tree shall flourish, and the grasshopper shall be a burden, and desire shall fail: because man goeth to his long home, and the mourners go about the streets:

**19 But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and as the raiment of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcase trodden under feet.**

They threw his body out of the grave like something monstrous and left him
unburied like a “road kill.” He received the same treatment as bloody stained clothes of someone murdered.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:**

**1Ki 21:19** And thou shalt speak unto him, saying, Thus saith the LORD, Hast thou killed, and also taken possession? And thou shalt speak unto him, saying, Thus saith the LORD, In the place where dogs licked the blood of Naboth shall dogs lick thy blood, even thine

**2Ki 9:26** Surely I have seen yesterday the blood of Naboth, and the blood of his sons, saith the LORD; and I will requite thee in this plat, saith the LORD. Now therefore take and cast him into the plat of ground, according to the word of the LORD.

**Jer 8:1-2** At that time, saith the LORD, they shall bring out the bones of the kings of Judah, and the bones of his princes, and the bones of the priests, and the bones of the prophets, and the bones of the inhabitants of Jerusalem, out of their graves: And they shall spread them before the sun, and the moon, and all the host of heaven, whom they have loved, and whom they have served, and after whom they have walked, and whom they have sought, and whom they have worshipped: they shall not be gathered, nor be buried; they shall be for dung upon the face of the earth.

**Jer 16:6** Both the great and the small shall die in this land: they shall not be buried, neither shall men lament for them, nor cut themselves, nor make themselves bald for them:

**Jer 22:19** He shall be buried with the burial of an ass, drawn and cast forth beyond the gates of Jerusalem.

**20Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land, and slain thy people: the seed of evildoers shall never be renowned.**

No funeral—no tombstone—no ceremony—no mosalem—his mangled carcase lies in an open grave. He had ruined his country and slaughtered his people—he was bad to the bone and his descendants would never rule the earth. They were the offspring of the wicked—a brood of evildoers and no
one wanted to see them again is high public office so their names were to be forgotten.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITATIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

**Job 18:16** His roots shall be dried up beneath, and above shall his branch be cut off.

**Psa 21:10** Their fruit shalt thou destroy from the earth, and their seed from among the children of men.

**Psa 37:28** For the LORD loveth judgment, and forsaketh not his saints; they are preserved for ever: but the seed of the wicked shall be cut off.

21 Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquity of their fathers; that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.

The father’s guilt had brought about the slaughtering of his children. They must never rise again to conquer the world. His children and his relatives were slaughtered.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

**Psa 109:13** Let his posterity be cut off; and in the generation following let their name be blotted out.

**Exo 20:5** Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

**Mat 23:35** That upon you may come all the righteous blood shed upon the earth, from the blood of righteous Abel unto the blood of Zacharias son of Barachias, whom ye slew between the temple and the altar.

22 For I will rise up against them, saith the LORD of hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the LORD.
It was genocide for the remnant of his family—sons—grandsons and nephews—they were destroyed root and branch—a decree of the Lord!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Job 18:19 He shall neither have son nor nephew among his people, nor any remaining in his dwellings

Isa 47:9-10 But these two things shall come to thee in a moment in one day, the loss of children, and widowhood: they shall come upon thee in their perfection for the multitude of thy sorceries, and for the great abundance of thine enchantments. For thou hast trusted in thy wickedness: thou hast said, None seeth me. Thy wisdom and thy knowledge, it hath perverted thee; and thou hast said in thine heart, I am, and none else beside me. Read: Jer 50:29-30; 1Ki 14:10

23I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water: and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the LORD of hosts.

God was going to clean house—He would sweep it with the broom of destruction—decree of the Lord!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 34:11 But the cormorant and the bittern shall possess it; the owl also and the raven shall dwell in it: and he shall stretch out upon it the line of confusion, and the stones of emptiness.

Jer 51:42-43 The sea is come up upon Babylon: she is covered with the multitude of the waves thereof. Her cities are a desolation, a dry land, and a wilderness, a land wherein no man dwelleth, neither doth any son of man pass thereby.

Jer 51:25 Behold, I am against thee, O destroying mountain, saith the LORD, which destroyest all the earth: and I will stretch out mine hand upon thee, and roll thee down from the rocks, and will make thee a burnt mountain.
24The LORD of hosts hath sworn, saying, Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand:

It had already been decided and God had on oath sworn that it would come to pass so their doom was to be executed. God planned it and it happened.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Heb 6:16-18 For men verily swear by the greater: and an oath for confirmation is to them an end of all strife. Wherein God, willing more abundantly to shew unto the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed it by an oath: That by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us:

25That I will break the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.

God is going to walk all over him—the Assyrian yoke will be lifted—Israel will no longer be slaves.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Isa 9:4 For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor, as in the day of Midian. Read: Isa 17:12-14; Eze 39:4

26This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth: and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations.

God had a plan for the whole earth and it included all of the nations read my book of Amos and see what would happen to the other nations.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Zep 3:6-8 I have cut off the nations: their towers are desolate; I made their
streets waste, that none passeth by: their cities are destroyed, so that there is no man, that there is none inhabitant. I said, Surely thou wilt fear me, thou wilt receive instruction; so their dwelling should not be cut off, howsoever I punished them: but they rose early, and corrupted all their doings. Therefore wait ye upon me, saith the LORD, until the day that I rise up to the prey: for my determination is to gather the nations, that I may assemble the kingdoms, to pour upon them mine indignation, even all my fierce anger: for all the earth shall be devoured with the fire of my jealousy.

27 For the LORD of hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul it? and his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?

When God makes a plan who can unmake it? His plan cannot be disannulled or made void.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 43:13 Yea, before the day was I am he; and there is none that can deliver out of my hand: I will work, and who shall let it?

Isa 46:11 Calling a ravenous bird from the east, the man that executeth my counsel from a far country: yea, I have spoken it, I will also bring it to pass; I have purposed it, I will also do it.

Job 40:8 Wilt thou also disannul my judgment? wilt thou condemn me, that thou mayest be righteous?

28 In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.

Isaiah reduces the focal length of the telescope of prophecy to an event that had happened earlier in his career.

2Ki 16:20 And Ahaz slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David: and Hezekiah his son reigned in his stead.

29 Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken: for out of the serpent’s root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.
He warns them not to celebrate too soon over the death of their oppressor. Ahaz is dead but out of this serpent’s root (Ahaz) a—snake will come (Hezekiah) and from his roots will come Manasseh. Even though the rod is broken his grandson will be a worse scourge than his grandfather and out of him will come a fiery flying serpent. He is the worst king that this world ever knew.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:**

**Pro 24:17** Rejoice not when thine enemy falleth, and let not thine heart be glad when he stumbleth:

**Eze 26:2** Son of man, because that Tyrus hath said against Jerusalem, Aha, she is broken *that was* the gates of the people: she is turned unto me: I shall be replenished, *now* she is laid waste:

**Eze 35:15** As thou didst rejoice at the inheritance of the house of Israel, because it was desolate, so will I do unto thee: thou shalt be desolate, O mount Seir, and all Idumea, *even* all of it: and they shall know that I *am* the LORD.

**2Ch 26:6** And he went forth and warred against the Philistines, and brake down the wall of Gath, and the wall of Jabneh, and the wall of Ashdod, and built cities about Ashdod, and among the Philistines.

**2Ki 18:8** He smote the Philistines, *even* unto Gaza, and the borders thereof, from the tower of the watchmen to the fenced city.

**30 And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety: and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.**

The prophet says that the firstborn of the poor shall have food and that the beggars shall lie down in safety but that God is going to kill her posterity by hunger and sword. They will be wiped out including the roots of her family.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

**Jer 47:1-7** The word of the LORD that came to Jeremiah the prophet against
the Philistines, before that Pharaoh smote Gaza. Thus saith the LORD; Behold, waters rise up out of the north, and shall be an overflowing flood, and shall overflow the land, and all that is therein; the city, and them that dwell therein: then the men shall cry, and all the inhabitants of the land shall howl. At the noise of the stamping of the hoofs of his strong horses, at the rushing of his chariots, and at the rumbling of his wheels, the fathers shall not look back to their children for feebleness of hands; Because of the day that cometh to spoil all the Philistines, and to cut off from Tyre and Zidon every helper that remaineth: for the LORD will spoil the Philistines, the remnant of the country of Caphtor. Baldness is come upon Gaza; Ashkelon is cut off with the remnant of their valley: how long wilt thou cut thyself? O thou sword of the LORD, how long wilt thou be quiet? put up thyself into thy scabbard, rest, and be still. How can it be quiet, seeing the LORD hath given it a charge against Ashkelon, and against the sea shore? there hath he appointed it.

Amo 1:6-8 Thus saith the LORD; For three transgressions of Gaza, and for four, I will not turn away the punishment thereof; because they carried away captive the whole captivity, to deliver them up to Edom: But I will send a fire on the wall of Gaza, which shall devour the palaces thereof: And I will cut off the inhabitant from Ashdod, and him that holdeth the sceptre from Ashkelon, and I will turn mine hand against Ekron: and the remnant of the Philistines shall perish, saith the Lord GOD.

31 Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved: for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.

Howl, and wail—shriek and cry for help—a great enemy is coming from the north and this army is leaving a trail of smoke.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Jer 25:15-20 For thus saith the LORD God of Israel unto me; Take the wine cup of this fury at my hand, and cause all the nations, to whom I send thee, to drink it. And they shall drink, and be moved, and be mad, because of the sword Then took I the cup at the LORD’S hand, and made all the nations to drink, unto whom the LORD had sent me: To wit, Jerusalem, and the cities of Judah, and the kings thereof, and the princes thereof, to make them a desolation, an astonishment, an hissing, and a curse; as it is this day; Pharaoh king of Egypt, and his servants, and his princes, and all his people; And all
the mingled people, and all the kings of the land of Uz, and all the kings of
the land of the Philistines, and Ashkelon, and Azzah, and Ekron, and the
remnant of Ashdod,

32 What shall one then answer the messengers of the nation? That the
LORD hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

Tell the ambassadors of other nations that the LORD hath founded Zion and
that her people hath found refuge in her.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Psa 87:5-6 And of Zion it shall be said, This and that man was born in her:
and the highest himself shall establish her. The LORD shall count, when he
writeth up the people, that this man was born there. Selah.

Psa 132:13-14 For the LORD hath chosen Zion; he hath desired it for his
habitation. This is my rest for ever: here will I dwell; for I have desired it.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 15

The Moabites were a product of Lot’s incest with his daughters. They dwelt eastward along the banks of the river Arnon, which runs westward into the Dead Sea. Their principal cities were Ar, Kir, Bozrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, &c. When the Israelites on their way to Canaan, camped on their border they along with the Ammonites had a scheme to hire Balaam to curse that people. The scheme back-fired and both were excluded from the congregation of Israel for all generations. During the Judges the Moabites grievously oppressed the Israelites, but were driven out of Canaan by Ehud, and Eglon their king was slain. Both Saul and David warred with the Moabites. David conquered the Ammonites and Moabites and put them in subjection. This lasted for about 150 years until Ahab died and they rebelled and regained their liberty. When the Syrians and the Assyrians conquered the ten tribes of Israel the Moabites seized several cities which lay next to them and ravaged them in a most inhuman way and murdered its inhabitants. They assisted the Chaldeans in ravaging the kingdom of Israel. Not long after the fall of Jerusalem the Moabites along with the Ammonites assisted in the murder of Gedaliah and provoking Nebuchadnezzar who invaded their country and carried off their wealth, burning their cities, and murdering the inhabitants, leaving their land an absolute desert. In the next chapter we will learn more about the small remnant that remains and how during the Maccabean era that Janneus, the grand nephew of Judas Maccabeus reduced the Moabites into a state of slavery to the Jewish nation. Fifty of their cities lay in ruins and no one dwells there unto this day. For more information on the Moabites see my article in the book of Amos chapter two.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 15

1The burden of Moab. Because in the night Ar of Moab is laid waste, and brought to silence; because in the night Kir of Moab is laid waste, and brought to silence;
Lewis P. Hussell

The prophet has a woeful prediction of the doom of Moab. The storm troops came at night and Ar and Kir was sacked and her battlements fell and she met her doom.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CORROBORATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 25:10** For in this mountain shall the hand of the LORD rest, and Moab shall be trodden down under him, even as straw is trodden down for the dunghill. Read: *Jer 48:1-47; Eze 25:8-11; Eze 25:8-11; Amo 2:1-3*

**2He is gone up to Bajith, and to Dibon, the high places, to weep: Moab shall howl over Nebo, and over Medeba: on all their heads shall be baldness, and every beard cut off.**

The Bajithites and the Dibonites head for their shrines to weep and wail they cut off their beards and shaved their heads in sorrow and shame.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**Isa 16:12** And it shall come to pass, when it is seen that Moab is weary on the high place, that he shall come to his sanctuary to pray; but he shall not prevail.

**Jer 48:18** Thou daughter that dost inhabit Dibon, come down from thy glory, and sit in thirst; for the spoiler of Moab shall come upon thee, and he shall destroy thy strong holds.

**Jer 48:22-25** And upon Dibon, and upon Nebo, and upon Bethdiblathaim, And upon Kiriathaim, and upon Bethgamul, and upon Bethmeon, And upon Kerioth, and upon Bozrah, and upon all the cities of the land of Moab, far or near. The horn of Moab is cut off, and his arm is broken, saith the LORD.

**3In their streets they shall gird themselves with sackcloth: on the tops of their houses, and in their streets, every one shall howl, weeping abundantly.**

The streets of their towns were filled with people wearing burlap clothing.
and on the patios of their roof tops they were burdened with lamenting and soaked with tears.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Jer 48:38-39 There shall be lamentation generally upon all the housetops of Moab, and in the streets thereof: for I have broken Moab like a vessel wherein is no pleasure, saith the LORD. They shall howl, saying, How is it broken down! how hath Moab turned the back with shame! so shall Moab be a derision and a dismaying to all them about him

4 And Heshbon shall cry, and Elealeh: their voice shall be heard even unto Jahaz: therefore the armed soldiers of Moab shall cry out; his life shall be grievous unto him.

Two more towns are mentioned and their loud wailing and crying could be heard in the next town of Jahaz. Their bravest soldiers courage is ebbing away.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Isa 16:8-9 For the fields of Heshbon languish, and the vine of Sibmah: the lords of the heathen have broken down the principal plants thereof, they are come even unto Jazer, they wandered through the wilderness: her branches are stretched out, they are gone over the sea. Therefore I will bewail with the weeping of Jazer the vine of Sibmah: I will water thee with my tears, O Heshbon, and Elealeh: for the shouting for thy summer fruits and for thy harvest is fallen.

Jer 48:34 From the cry of Heshbon even unto Elealeh, and even unto Jahaz, have they uttered their voice, from Zoar even unto Horonaim, as an heifer of three years old: for the waters also of Nimrim shall be desolate.

5 My heart shall cry out for Moab; his fugitives shall flee unto Zoar, an heifer of three years old: for by the mounting up of Luhith with weeping shall they go it up; for in the way of Horonaim they shall raise up a cry of destruction.
Even the prophet is grieving for Moab. As they wind their way up the slope of the mountain trail every step was marked with tears—they were wailing—we are ruined—the cries of disaster could be heard all the way to Horonaim. They are all heading to their chapel in the hills to implore their god for help. There is sobs, shaking, and grief as Moab trembles in despair.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Jer 48:31-36** Therefore will I howl for Moab, and I will cry out for all Moab; *mine heart* shall mourn for the men of Kirheres. O vine of Sibmah, I will weep for thee with the weeping of Jazer: thy plants are gone over the sea, they reach *even* to the sea of Jazer: the spoiler is fallen upon thy summer fruits and upon thy vintage. And joy and gladness is taken from the plentiful field, and from the land of Moab; and I have caused wine to fail from the winepresses: none shall tread with shouting; *their* shouting *shall be* no shouting. From the cry of Heshbon *even* unto Elealeh, *and even* unto Jahaz, have they uttered their voice, from Zoar *even* unto Horonaim, *as* an heifer of three years old: for the waters also of Nimrim shall be desolate. Moreover I will cause to cease in Moab, saith the LORD, him that offereth in the high places, and him that burneth incense to his gods. Therefore mine heart shall sound for Moab like pipes, and mine heart shall sound like pipes for the men of Kirheres: because the riches *that* he hath gotten are perished.

*For the waters of Nimrim shall be desolate: for the hay is withered away, the grass faileth, there is no green thing.*

The springs that supply the city of Nimrim are dried up. The hay crop has not been cut and hauled into the barns—the grass of the pastures have turned brown from lack of water—nothing is growing—gardens and orchards are failing.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Hab 3:17** Although the fig tree shall not blossom, neither shall fruit be in the vines; the labour of the olive shall fail, and the fields shall yield no meat; the flock shall be cut off from the fold, and there shall be no herd in the stalls: Read: **Joe 1:10-12**
Therefore the abundance they have gotten, and that which they have laid up, shall they carry away to the brook of the willows.

These desperate refugees are taking what little they can—all their hard earned savings—they are heading for willow creek—hoping to cross the border to safety.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT ILLUSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 10:14** And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people: and as one gathereth eggs that are left, have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

**For the cry is gone round about the borders of Moab; the howling thereof unto Eglaim, and the howling thereof unto Beerelim.**

The gut-wrenching sobs have spread like a sand storm to all borders of Moab. Their howling and cries could be heard all the way to Beerelim. The cry for help was throughout the length and breadth of Moab.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:**

**Jer 48:31-34** Therefore will I howl for Moab, and I will cry out for all Moab; mine heart shall mourn for the men of Kirheres. O vine of Sibmah, I will weep for thee with the weeping of Jazer: thy plants are gone over the sea, they reach even to the sea of Jazer: the spoiler is fallen upon thy summer fruits and upon thy vintage. And joy and gladness is taken from the plentiful field, and from the land of Moab; and I have caused wine to fail from the winepresses: none shall tread with shouting; their shouting shall be no shouting. From the cry of Heshbon even unto Elealeh, and even unto Jahaz, have they uttered their voice, from Zoar even unto Horonaim, as an heifer of three years old: for the waters also of Nimrim shall be desolate.

**For the waters of Dimon shall be full of blood: for I will bring more upon Dimon, lions upon him that escapeth of Moab, and upon the remnant of the land.**

It was a slaughter at the border crossing and the stream of Dimon was running
with blood from the slain. The people of Moab that escape will be finished off with the lions as they head to the mountains for refuge. God was not finished yet with Moab for her remnant would be hunted down by the lions.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Jer 48:43-45** Fear, and the pit, and the snare, shall be upon thee, O inhabitant of Moab, saith the LORD. He that fleeth from the fear shall fall into the pit; and he that getteth up out of the pit shall be taken in the snare: for I will bring upon it, even upon Moab, the year of their visitation, saith the LORD.

**Joe 1:10-12** They that fled stood under the shadow of Heshbon because of the force: but a fire shall come forth out of Heshbon, and a flame from the midst of Sihon, and shall devour the corner of Moab, and the crown of the head of the tumultuous ones.

**Lev 26:22** I will also send wild beasts among you, which shall rob you of your children, and destroy your cattle, and make you few in number; and your high ways shall be desolate.
Refugees are seen at the border crossing of willow creek seeking counsel—trying to stay hid from their enemies—begging other nations to allow them sanctuary among them—the pride of Moab is brought down as she begs for help. The destruction of her cities and farms caused the hearts strings of the prophet to reverberate with sorrow upon sorrow. Her wines that she exported have ceased—all her vineyards have been destroyed and her homes burned. She goes up to her house of worship and seeks help from Moloch her idol god but nothing happens except disaster upon disaster.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 16

1Send ye the lamb to the ruler of the land from Sela to the wilderness, unto the mount of the daughter of Zion.

Moab which has been paying tribute to the Israelites is exhorted by the prophet to send lambs to the kings of Judah as a sign of subjection.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

2Sa 8:2 And he smote Moab, and measured them with a line, casting them down to the ground; even with two lines measured he to put to death, and with one full line to keep alive. And so the Moabites became David’s servants, and brought gifts.

2Ki 3:4 And Mesha king of Moab was a sheepmaster, and rendered unto the king of Israel an hundred thousand lambs, and an hundred thousand rams, with the wool.
2Ki 14:7 He slew of Edom in the valley of salt ten thousand, and took Selah by war, and called the name of it Joktheel unto this day.

*For it shall be, that, as a wandering bird cast out of the nest, so the daughters of Moab shall be at the fords of Arnon.*

The women of Moab who are now refugees are like a bunch of fluttering birds flushed from their nest and are at the border crossing of the river Arnon.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:**

**Jdg 11:18** Then they went along through the wilderness, and compassed the land of Edom, and the land of Moab, and came by the east side of the land of Moab, and pitched on the other side of Arnon, but came not within the border of Moab: for Arnon was the border of Moab.

**Num 21:13-15** From thence they removed, and pitched on the other side of Arnon, which is in the wilderness that cometh out of the coasts of the Amorites: for Arnon is the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorites. Wherefore it is said in the book of the wars of the LORD, What he did in the Red sea, and in the brooks of Arnon, And at the stream of the brooks that goeth down to the dwelling of Ar, and lieth upon the border of Moab.

3*Take counsel, execute judgment; make thy shadow as the night in the midst of the noonday; hide the outcasts; bewray not him that wandereth.*

They are advised to take counsel and execute judgment that they might be hid from their oppressor like night at noontime. They are seeking help to hide the outcasts and hoping that they will not be betrayed. These fugitives are seeking counsel and shelter from the neighboring nations.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:**

**Oba 1:12-14** But thou shouldest not have looked on the day of thy brother in the day that he became a stranger; neither shouldest thou have rejoiced over the children of Judah in the day of their destruction; neither shouldest thou have spoken proudly in the day of distress. Thou shouldest not have entered into the gate of my people in the day of their calamity; yea, thou shouldest
not have looked on their affliction in the day of their calamity, nor have laid hands on their substance in the day of their calamity; Neither shouldest thou have stood in the crossway, to cut off those of his that did escape; neither shouldest thou have delivered up those of his that did remain in the day of distress. Read: Jer 22:3; Zec 7:9; Isa 32:2

4Let mine outcasts dwell with thee, Moab; be thou a covert to them from the face of the spoiler: for the extortioner is at an end, the spoiler ceaseth, the oppressors are consumed out of the land.

They are seeking help from those who have looted their homes and driven them from their homeland.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Jer 48:18 Thou daughter that dost inhabit Dibon, come down from thy glory, and sit in thirst; for the spoiler of Moab shall come upon thee, and he shall destroy thy strong holds.

Isa 25:10 For in this mountain shall the hand of the LORD rest, and Moab shall be trodden down under him, even as straw is trodden down for the dunghill. Read: Deu 23:15-16

5And in mercy shall the throne be established: and he shall sit upon it in truth in the tabernacle of David, judging, and seeking judgment, and hasting righteousness.

If you will let the outcasts dwell among you—if you will hide them from their enemies that are hunting them down—then God will be merciful to you for your mercy to them and establish the house of David and give you a righteous king.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Psa 61:6-7 Thou wilt prolong the king’s life: and his years as many generations. He shall abide before God for ever: O prepare mercy and truth, which may preserve him.


Lewis P. Hussell

**Pro 20:28** Mercy and truth preserve the king; and his throne is upholden by mercy.

**2Sa 7:16** And thine house and thy kingdom shall be established for ever before thee: thy throne shall be established for ever.

> We have heard of the pride of Moab; he is very proud: even of his haughtiness, and his pride, and his wrath: but his lies shall not be so.

Moab had been long time a boastful, proud, scornful and overbearing group of people—now her futile boastings are seen as lies and as such are as empty as a deserted birds nest.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:**

**Jer 48:25-30** The horn of Moab is cut off, and his arm is broken, saith the LORD. Make ye him drunken: for he magnified himself against the LORD: Moab also shall wallow in his vomit, and he also shall be in derision. For was not Israel a derision unto thee? was he found among thieves? for since thou spakest of him, thou skippedst for joy. O ye that dwell in Moab, leave the cities, and dwell in the rock, and be like the dove that maketh her nest in the sides of the hole’s mouth. We have heard the pride of Moab, (he is exceeding proud) his loftiness, and his arrogancy, and his pride, and the haughtiness of his heart. I know his wrath, saith the LORD; but it shall not be so; his lies shall not so effect it.

**Jer 48:42** And Moab shall be destroyed from being a people, because he hath magnified himself against the LORD.

**Oba 1:3-4** The pride of thine heart hath deceived thee, thou that dwellest in the clefts of the rock, whose habitation is high; that saith in his heart, Who shall bring me down to the ground? Though thou exalt thyself as the eagle, and though thou set thy nest among the stars, thence will I bring thee down, saith the LORD.

> Therefore shall Moab howl for Moab, every one shall howl: for the foundations of Kirhareseth shall ye mourn; surely they are stricken.

From town to town and village to village the people have gathered together to
howl and wail. Tides of ruin was everywhere—walls broken down—building burned—farmlands ruined—the situation looked hopeless.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Jer 48:20** Moab is confounded; for it is broken down: howl and cry; tell ye it in Arnon, that Moab is spoiled,

**2Ki 3:25** And they beat down the cities, and on every good piece of land cast every man his stone, and filled it; and they stopped all the wells of water, and felled all the good trees: only in Kirharaseth left they the stones thereof; howbeit the slingers went about it, and smote it.

*For the fields of Heshbon languish, and the vine of Sibmah: the lords of the heathen have broken down the principal plants thereof, they are come even unto Jazer, they wandered through the wilderness: her branches are stretched out, they are gone over the sea.*

The fields of Heshbon are deserted—farmland lying bare—the finest grape vineyards in all the world was in this area and now they had been cut down by invading war lords. Her branches had stretched out over the sea by means of exporting seedlings to other countries and selling her wines.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Jer 27:6-7** And now have I given all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, my servant; and the beasts of the field have I given him also to serve him. And all nations shall serve him, and his son, and his son’s son, until the very time of his land come: and then many nations and great kings shall serve themselves of him.

**Isa 24:3** The land shall be utterly emptied, and utterly spoiled: for the LORD hath spoken this word. Read: Isa 24:4-12

*Therefore I will bewail with the weeping of Jazer the vine of Sibmah: I will water thee with my tears, O Heshbon, and Elealeh: for the shouting for thy summer fruits and for thy harvest is fallen.*
The prophet is drenched with tears because the grape vines which had been established over many years were all cut down and the joy associated with a bountiful harvest was turned into wailing.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Isa 15:5** My heart shall cry out for Moab; his fugitives shall flee unto Zoar, an heifer of three years old: for by the mounting up of Luhith with weeping shall they go it up; for in the way of Horonaim they shall raise up a cry of destruction.

**Jer 48:32-34** O vine of Sibmah, I will weep for thee with the weeping of Jazer: thy plants are gone over the sea, they reach even to the sea of Jazer: the spoiler is fallen upon thy summer fruits and upon thy vintage. And joy and gladness is taken from the plentiful field, and from the land of Moab; and I have caused wine to fail from the winepresses: none shall tread with shouting; their shouting shall be no shouting. From the cry of Heshbon even unto Elealeh, and even unto Jahaz, have they uttered their voice, from Zoar even unto Horonaim, as an heifer of three years old: for the waters also of Nimrim shall be desolate.

10 And gladness is taken away, and joy out of the plentiful field; and in the vineyards there shall be no singing, neither shall there be shouting: the treaders shall tread out no wine in their presses; I have made their vintage shouting to cease.

The bountiful vineyards that had the voices of singing and gladness were now silent. All merriment because of the time of vintage was gone—No grapes in the wine fat to trod out.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:**

**Jer 48:33** And joy and gladness is taken from the plentiful field, and from the land of Moab; and I have caused wine to fail from the winepresses: none shall tread with shouting; their shouting shall be no shouting.

**Amo 5:17** And in all vineyards shall be wailing: for I will pass through thee, saith the LORD.
Hab 3:17 Although the fig tree shall not blossom, neither shall fruit be in the vines; the labour of the olive shall fail, and the fields shall yield no meat; the flock shall be cut off from the fold, and there shall be no herd in the stalls:

Zep 1:13 Therefore their goods shall become a booty, and their houses a desolation: they shall also build houses, but not inhabit them; and they shall plant vineyards, but not drink the wine thereof.

11 Wherefore my bowels shall sound like an harp for Moab, and mine inward parts for Kirharesb.

His heart and soul was throbbing for Moab—The pity that filled his heart was causing a quivering like the strings of a harp—The prophet is weeping, weeping, weeping.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Jer 4:19 My bowels, my bowels! I am pained at my very heart; my heart maketh a noise in me; I cannot hold my peace, because thou hast heard, O my soul, the sound of the trumpet, the alarm of war.

Jer 48:36 Therefore mine heart shall sound for Moab like pipes, and mine heart shall sound like pipes for the men of Kirheres: because the riches that he hath gotten are perished.

12 And it shall come to pass, when it is seen that Moab is weary on the high place, that he shall come to his sanctuary to pray; but he shall not prevail.

Moab will come to her holy place of her heathen gods and bow before her idols and lay out her pleas for help but none will come to help her.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

 Isa 26:16 LORD, in trouble have they visited thee, they poured out a prayer when thy chastening was upon them.
Pro 1:28 Then shall they call upon me, but I will not answer; they shall seek me early, but they shall not find me:

Jer 48:35 Moreover I will cause to cease in Moab, saith the LORD, him that offereth in the high places, and him that burneth incense to his gods.

13 This is the word that the LORD hath spoken concerning Moab since that time.

Since the time that Moab began from the days of Lot and his daughters incest and their resistance to God—their Idolatry—their pride and arrogance—God’s prophets had spoken concerning Moab.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Isa 44:8 Fear ye not, neither be afraid: have not I told thee from that time, and have declared it? ye are even my witnesses. Is there a God beside me? yea, there is no God; I know not any.

Amo 3:7 Surely the Lord GOD will do nothing, but he revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets.

14 But now the LORD hath spoken, saying, Within three years, as the years of an hireling, and the glory of Moab shall be contemned, with all that great multitude; and the remnant shall be very small and feeble.

The prophet tells us that within three years—counting the time like a hired servant serving out his contract—the glory of Moab with all its teeming population will become contemptible and shorn of its glory like a disease ridden body losing its vitality. Moab’s glory will be gone—no longer a thriving and prosperous nation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 48:46-47 Woe be unto thee, O Moab! the people of Chemosh perisheth: for thy sons are taken captives, and thy daughters captives. Yet will I bring again the captivity of Moab in the latter days, saith the LORD. Thus far is the judgment of Moab. Read: 2Ki 14:7; Isa 23:9; Nah 2:9-10
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 17

Syria was sometimes called Aram. Their country lay on the north-east of Canaan and Mount Lebanon. They were conquered by David about 2964 B.C. but about 60 years later under the leadership of Rezon who formed a kingdom for himself at Damascus, which extended itself over all Syria and proved itself to be a scourge in the side of Israel, particularly in the days of Baasha, Ahab, etc. God did not suffer the injuries which they did to his people to pass unpunished. Twice, with a handful of men, Ahab routed their huge armies, and brought them to the brink of ruin, 1 Kings 20. A noise in the trees terrified them from their cruel siege of Samaria 2 Kings 7 and Joash and Jeroboam, reduced them to the very brink of despair. But more terrible judgments overtook them. Hired by Ahaz, the Assyrians burned their cities, murdered the inhabitants, and took survivors to the slave world. During the decline of Assyria the Syrians returned and repeopled their country. But not long after Nebuchadnezzar marched his troops into Syria and burned Damascus and murdered the inhabitants or reduced them to slavery. Century after century they have been at war from Alexander to the Romans, Egyptians, Parthians, Persians, Saracens, the crusaders and the Druses, it has been one scene after another of plundering Arabs murdering it inhabitants. (Gathered from various sources)

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 17

1The burden of Damascus. Behold, Damascus is taken away from being a city, and it shall be a ruinous heap.

This inspired prediction regarding the demise of Damascus as a city was fulfilled when it was invaded by the Tiglathpileser king of Assyria. He captured the capital city of Syria and slew Rezin their king.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

2Ki 16:9 And the king of Assyria hearkened unto him: for the king of Assyria went up against Damascus, and took it, and carried the people of it captive to Kir, and slew Rezin. Read: Jer 49:23-27; Amo 1:3-5

2 The cities of Aroer are forsaken: they shall be for flocks, which shall lie down, and none shall make them afraid.

The surrounding cities and townships were deserted and turned into a sheep run where the animals roamed undisturbed by people.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

2Ki 15:29 In the days of Pekah king of Israel came Tiglathpileser king of Assyria, and took Ijon, and Abelbethmaachah, and Janoah, and Kedesh, and Hazor, and Gilead, and Galilee, all the land of Naphtali, and carried them captive to Assyria.

3 The fortress also shall cease from Ephraim, and the kingdom from Damascus, and the remnant of Syria: they shall be as the glory of the children of Israel, saith the LORD of hosts.

Ephraim will lose its defenses—Damascus will lose its sovereignty—their fate is one. The prophet predicts that both will look like Israel when she lost her glory.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 7:8 For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus is Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken, that it be not a people.

Isa 7:16 For before the child shall know to refuse the evil, and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

2Ki 17:6 In the ninth year of Hoshea the king of Assyria took Samaria, and
carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor by the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.

**Hos 13:16** Samaria shall become desolate; for she hath rebelled against her God: they shall fall by the sword: their infants shall be dashed in pieces, and their women with child shall be ripped up.

**Amo 3:14-15** That in the day that I shall visit the transgressions of Israel upon him I will also visit the altars of Bethel: and the horns of the altar shall be cut off, and fall to the ground. And I will smite the winter house with the summer house; and the houses of ivory shall perish, and the great houses shall have an end, saith the LORD.

*And in that day it shall come to pass, that the glory of Jacob shall be made thin, and the fatness of his flesh shall wax lean.*

Jacob was the founder of Israel. This verse likens them to a person who had gained weight and now lost weight and looked like a rack-of-bones. The prophet predicts that they will look like walking death.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 10:16** Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of hosts, send among his fat ones leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire. Read: *Isa 24:16; Deu 32:15-17; Jer 9:22; Jer 51:33*

*And it shall be as when the harvestman gathereth the corn, and reapeth the ears with his arm; and it shall be as he that gathereth ears in the valley of Rephaim.*

I helped my father gather the corn in my arms and put it in the shock, so the prophet likens Israel and Syria being gathered by the Assyrians and carried away into captivity. He likens it to gathering corn in the rich fertile land of the valley or Rephaim.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 24:13** When thus it shall be in the midst of the land among the people,
there shall be as the shaking of an olive tree, and as the gleaning grapes when the vintage is done. Read: Eze 36:8-11; Mic 7:1-2

6Yet gleaning grapes shall be left in it, as the shaking of an olive tree, two or three berries in the top of the uppermost bough, four or five in the outmost fruitful branches thereof, saith the LORD God of Israel.

When the crops are gathered in there is a small amount left that is called gleanings which were left for the poor and homeless to pick. The prophet likens the few poor stragglers left behind to the “two or three berries in the top of the uppermost bough.” That is how it would be when Damascus and Israel were stripped bare of its people leaving only a few behind.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 24:13 When thus it shall be in the midst of the land among the people, there shall be as the shaking of an olive tree, and as the gleaning grapes when the vintage is done.

Mic 7:1 Woe is me! for I am as when they have gathered the summer fruits, as the grapegleanings of the vintage: there is no cluster to eat: my soul desired the firstripe fruit.

7At that day shall a man look to his Maker, and his eyes shall have respect to the Holy One of Israel.

When people are in trouble they will look to their Maker for help. When they were carried off into captivity and became slaves it had a sobering effect upon their thinking and they began to have respect for the Holy One of Israel.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 22:11 Ye made also a ditch between the two walls for the water of the old pool: but ye have not looked unto the maker thereof, neither had respect unto him that fashioned it long ago.

Jdg 10:15-16 And the children of Israel said unto the LORD, We have sinned: do thou unto us whatsoever seemeth good unto thee; deliver us only, we pray
thee, this day. And they put away the strange gods from among them, and served the LORD: and his soul was grieved for the misery of Israel.

8And he shall not look to the altars, the work of his hands, neither shall respect that which his fingers have made, either the groves, or the images.

They got their fill of the sacred poles and solar pillars. They will no longer seek the help from the idols—no longer worship the works that their hands have made.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 1:29 For they shall be ashamed of the oaks which ye have desired, and ye shall be confounded for the gardens that ye have chosen.

Isa 30:22 Ye shall defile also the covering of thy graven images of silver, and the ornament of thy molten images of gold: thou shalt cast them away as a menstruous cloth; thou shalt say unto it, Get thee hence. Read: 2Ch 34:6,7; Hos 14:8; Zec 13:2

9In that day shall his strong cities be as a forsaken bough, and an uppermost branch, which they left because of the children of Israel: and there shall be desolation.

On that day all their strong cities will be deserted like a used birds nest. They will look like a forsaken uppermost tree branch—all shall be desolate.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Hos 13:15-16 Though he be fruitful among his brethren, an east wind shall come, the wind of the LORD shall come up from the wilderness, and his spring shall become dry, and his fountain shall be dried up: he shall spoil the treasure of all pleasant vessels. Samaria shall become desolate; for she hath rebelled against her God: they shall fall by the sword: their infants shall be dashed in pieces, and their women with child shall be ripped up. robbery in their palaces. Read: Amo 3:11-15; Amo 7:9; Mic 6:16; Mic 7:13
Because thou hast forgotten the God of thy salvation, and hast not been mindful of the rock of thy strength, therefore shalt thou plant pleasant plants, and shalt set it with strange slips:

They had turned their back on God—He was the rock of their salvation but they had planted pleasant plants and then mingled the grounds with strange slips of a foreign god.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 51:13 And forgettest the LORD thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth; and hast feared continually every day because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? and where is the fury of the oppressor?

Deu 6:12 Then beware lest thou forget the LORD, which brought thee forth out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage.

Psa 106:13 They soon forgat his works; they waited not for his counsel:

Hos 8:14 For Israel hath forgotten his Maker, and buildeth temples; and Judah hath multiplied fenced cities: but I will send a fire upon his cities, and it shall devour the palaces thereof.

In the day shalt thou make thy plant to grow, and in the morning shalt thou make thy seed to flourish: but the harvest shall be a heap in the day of grief and of desperate sorrow.

Their religious garden had some strange slips of foreign gods planted in it but the only harvest they will gather is a harvest of desperate sorrow and incurable pain.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 18:5-6 For afore the harvest, when the bud is perfect, and the sour grape is ripening in the flower, he shall both cut off the sprigs with pruning hooks, and take away and cut down the branches. They shall be left together unto
the fowls of the mountains, and to the beasts of the earth: and the fowls shall summer upon them, and all the beasts of the earth shall winter upon them.

**Job 4:8** Even as I have seen, they that plow iniquity, and sow wickedness, reap the same.

**Hos 8:7** For they have sown the wind, and they shall reap the whirlwind: it hath no stalk: the bud shall yield no meal: if so be it yield, the strangers shall swallow it up. Read: **Joe 1:5-12**

> **12 Woe to the multitude of many people, which make a noise like the noise of the seas; and to the rushing of nations, that make a rushing like the rushing of mighty waters!**

The roar is caused by a riot of people roaring like the mighty ocean waves or the sound of rushing waters after a torrential downpour of rain.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

**Isa 8:7-8** Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, *even* the king of Assyria, and all his glory: and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks: And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach *even* to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

**Psa 65:6-7** Which by his strength setteth fast the mountains; *being* girded with power: Which stilleth the noise of the seas, the noise of their waves, and the tumult of the people.

**Jer 6:23** They shall lay hold on bow and spear; they are cruel, and have no mercy; their voice roareth like the sea; and they ride upon horses, set in array as men for war against thee, O daughter of Zion.

> **13 The nations shall rush like the rushing of many waters: but God shall rebuke them, and they shall flee far off, and shall be chased as the chaff of the mountains before the wind, and like a rolling thing before the whirlwind.**
The nations will come roaring like rushing waters as it hits the shoreline but God will chase them off like chaff that is blown by the wind at threshing time or like a rolling tumbleweed in a tornado.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:**

**Isa 14:25** That I will break the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.

**Isa 27:1** In that day the LORD with his sore and great and strong sword shall punish leviathan the piercing serpent, even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that is in the sea. Read: **Isa 33:9-12; Isa 30:30-31**

14 And behold at eveningtide trouble; and before the morning he is not. This is the portion of them that spoil us, and the lot of them that rob us.

At eveningtide they waited in terror and confusion but when the dawn appeared God had driven off her enemies like dandelion seeds in a Kansas tornado.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:**

**2Ki 19:35-37** And it came to pass that night, that the angel of the LORD went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians an hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses. So Sennacherib king of Assyria departed, and went and returned, and dwelt at Nineveh. And it came to pass, as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, that Adrammelech and Sharezer his sons smote him with the sword: and they escaped into the land of Armenia. And Esarhaddon his son reigned in his stead. Read: **Psa 37:36; Job 20:29; Pro 22:23; Jer 2:3**
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 18

This land has been called the “land of flies and mosquitoes. This land was crisscrossed with rivers and inhabited by the descendants of Cush. They planned an attack on Jerusalem but God stepped in and pruned them and left them like fodder for the wintering of animals. This people from the crisscrossed rivers will be bringing a tribute to Jehovah in his temple at Jerusalem.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 18

1Woe to the land shadowing with wings, which is beyond the rivers of Ethiopia:

The prophet directs his attention to the land that is filled with insects which is beyond the rivers of Ethiopia. It is a message of doom to the land filled with flies and mosquitoes.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 20:3-6 And the LORD said, Like as my servant Isaiah hath walked naked and barefoot three years for a sign and wonder upon Egypt and upon Ethiopia; So shall the king of Assyria lead away the Egyptians prisoners, and the Ethiopians captives, young and old, naked and barefoot, even with their buttocks uncovered, to the shame of Egypt. And they shall be afraid and ashamed of Ethiopia their expectation, and of Egypt their glory. And the inhabitant of this isle shall say in that day, Behold, such is our expectation, whither we flee for help to be delivered from the king of Assyria: and how shall we escape? Read: Isa 31:1-4; 2Ki 19:9; Eze 30:4-9; Zep 2:12; Zep 3:10
2That sendeth ambassadors by the sea, even in vessels of bulrushes upon the waters, saying, Go, ye swift messengers, to a nation scattered and peeled, to a people terrible from their beginning hitherto; a nation meted out and trodden down, whose land the rivers have spoiled!

Their ships or skiffs were built out of bulrushes (papyrus) and they sailed up and down the Nile and sent their messengers or ambassadors to other nations by means of their papyrus boats. “They are described as terrible from their beginning.” This nation was inhabited by a people that was tall and dreaded far and near by other nations.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Eze 30:9-12 In that day shall messengers go forth from me in ships to make the careless Ethiopians afraid, and great pain shall come upon them, as in the day of Egypt: for, lo, it cometh. Thus saith the Lord GOD; I will also make the multitude of Egypt to cease by the hand of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon. He and his people with him, the terrible of the nations, shall be brought to destroy the land: and they shall draw their swords against Egypt, and fill the land with the slain. And I will make the rivers dry, and sell the land into the hand of the wicked: and I will make the land waste, and all that is therein, by the hand of strangers: I the LORD have spoken it. Read: 2Ch 12:2-4; 2Ch 14:9-10; 2Ch 16:8

3All ye inhabitants of the world, and dwellers on the earth, see ye, when he lifteth up an ensign on the mountains; and when he bloweth a trumpet, hear ye.

All people who live in this world—when you see the battle flag lifted upon the mountain top and the rams horn being blown, hear ye.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Isa 5:26 And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth: and, behold, they shall come with speed swiftly:

Isa 7:18 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the LORD shall hiss for
the fly that is in the uttermost part of the rivers of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

4 For so the LORD said unto me, I will take my rest, and I will consider in my dwelling place like a clear heat upon herbs, and like a cloud of dew in the heat of harvest.

The LORD told Isaiah that he would sit serene and quietly as a person resting from the heat on a hot summer day or to change the figure of speech like a cloud or dew in the heat of harvest. While their army was advancing God would watch quietly from His temple in Jerusalem.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Psa 132:13-14 For the LORD hath chosen Zion; he hath desired it for his habitation. This is my rest for ever: here will I dwell; for I have desired it.

Isa 26:21 For, behold, the LORD cometh out of his place to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity: the earth also shall disclose her blood, and shall no more cover her slain.

5 For afore the harvest, when the bud is perfect, and the sour grape is ripening in the flower, he shall both cut off the sprigs with pruning hooks, and take away and cut down the branches.

Before the attack begins—while their plans are ripening—God will cut off the tendrils with his pruning hooks and use his loppers to cut the branches.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 17:11 In the day shalt thou make thy plant to grow, and in the morning shalt thou make thy seed to flourish: but the harvest shall be a heap in the day of grief and of desperate sorrow.

6 They shall be left together unto the fowls of the mountains, and to the beasts of the earth: and the fowls shall summer upon them, and all the beasts of the earth shall winter upon them.
Their army will be left for vultures and wild animals to winter on.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 14:19** But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, *and as* the raiment of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcase trodden under feet.

**Isa 34:1-3** Come near, ye nations, to hear; and hearken, ye people: let the earth hear, and all that is therein; the world, and all things that come forth of it. For the indignation of the LORD *is* upon all nations, and his fury upon all their armies: he hath utterly destroyed them, he hath delivered them to the slaughter. Their slain also shall be cast out, and their stink shall come up out of their carcases, and the mountains shall be melted with their blood.

7In that time shall the present be brought unto the LORD of hosts of a people scattered and peeled, and from a people terrible from their beginning hitherto; a nation meted out and trodden under foot, whose land the rivers have spoiled, to the place of the name of the LORD of hosts, the mount Zion.

This nation that was mighty and terrible from its beginning will bring gifts to the Lord as a tribute.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:**

**Isa 45:14** Thus saith the LORD, The labour of Egypt, and merchandise of Ethiopia and of the Sabeans, men of stature, shall come over unto thee, and they shall be thine: they shall come after thee; in chains they shall come over, and they shall fall down unto thee, they shall make supplication unto thee, saying, Surely God *is* in thee; and there *is* none else, there *is* no God.

**2Ch 32:23** And many brought gifts unto the LORD to Jerusalem, and presents to Hezekiah king of Judah: so that he was magnified in the sight of all nations from thenceforth. Read: Psa 68:29-31; Zep 3:10; Act 8:27-28
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 19

God catches a cloud and has a first class seat as he heads for Egypt, the idols quake with fear and Egypt is paralyzed with panic. God set everyone in Egypt against each other and it was pandemonium. She consulted her idols and wizards for counsel but found none. God gives them a cruel ruler and turns all her wise men into dupes and dunces. The rivers are dried up and unemployment is out the roof. Egypt regains the grace of God and erects a monument at the border in his honor. A highway is built between Assyria and Egypt and God proclaims Egypt as his people, Assyria as the work of his hands, and Israel as his inheritance. The commentary section is a must read for the inquiring mind.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 19

1The burden of Egypt. Behold, the LORD rideth upon a swift cloud, and shall come into Egypt: and the idols of Egypt shall be moved at his presence, and the heart of Egypt shall melt in the midst of it.

This is an inspired prediction about Egypt. God is riding in on a cloud and the idols of Egypt will quake and tremble and the hearts of the Egyptians will sink and their courage will melt. Egypt is paralyzed with panic.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Ps 18:10 And he rode upon a cherub, and did fly: yea, he did fly upon the wings of the wind.

Jer 43:8-13 Then came the word of the LORD unto Jeremiah in Tahpanhes, saying, Take great stones in thine hand, and hide them in the clay in the brickkiln, which is at the entry of Pharaoh’s house in Tahpanhes, in the sight
of the men of Judah; And say unto them, Thus saith the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel; Behold, I will send and take Nebuchadrezzar the king of Babylon, my servant, and will set his throne upon these stones that I have hid; and he shall spread his royal pavilion over them. And when he cometh, he shall smite the land of Egypt, and deliver such as are for death to death; and such as are for captivity to captivity; and such as are for the sword to the sword. And I will kindle a fire in the houses of the gods of Egypt; and he shall burn them, and carry them away captives: and he shall array himself with the land of Egypt, as a shepherd putteth on his garment; and he shall go forth from thence in peace. He shall break also the images of Bethshemesh, that is in the land of Egypt; and the houses of the gods of the Egyptians shall he burn with fire. Read: Jer 46:1-20; Eze 29:1-21; Joe 3:19; Joe 3:19

2 And I will set the Egyptians against the Egyptians: and they shall fight every one against his brother, and every one against his neighbour; city against city, and kingdom against kingdom.

God is going to rouse each other against each other. It will be pure chaos and civil war. Anarchy and street fighting and late night killings are common occurrences.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Eze 38:21 And I will call for a sword against him throughout all my mountains, saith the Lord GOD: every man’s sword shall be against his brother.

3 And the spirit of Egypt shall fail in the midst thereof; and I will destroy the counsel thereof: and they shall seek to the idols, and to the charmers, and to them that have familiar spirits, and to the wizards.

Egypt will be so demoralized that her counsel will be confused. She will lose her wits and be confounded. They will seek the idols and mutterers—the departed spirits—fortune tellers—necromancers and sorcerers—ghosts and wizards—she is desperate for answers but finds none. “This is a prophecy of what took place in Egypt about twenty-two years after the destruction of Sennacherib’s army; when, upon the death of Tirhakah (BC 688), not being able to settle about the succession, they continued for two years in a state of anarchy, confusion, and civil wars; which was followed by the tyranny of twelve princes, who, dividing the country among them, governed it for fifteen
years; and at last, by the sole dominion of Psammiticus, which he held for fifty-four years.” (Treasury of Scripture Knowledge)

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

**Psa 76:12** He shall cut off the spirit of princes: *he is* terrible to the kings of the earth.

**Jer 46:15** Why are thy valiant men swept away? they stood not, because the LORD did drive them.

**Eze 21:7** And it shall be, when they say unto thee, Wherefore sighest thou? that thou shalt answer, For the tidings; because it cometh: and every heart shall melt, and all hands shall be feeble, and every spirit shall faint, and all knees shall be weak as water: behold, it cometh, and shall be brought to pass, saith the Lord GOD. Read: **Isa 14:27; 2Sa 17:14; Job 5:12-13**

> "And the Egyptians will I give over into the hand of a cruel lord; and a fierce king shall rule over them, saith the Lord, the LORD of hosts.

God says that he is going to turn them over to a merciless master. He is going to give them a cruel tyrant—a vicious king will rule over them.

“Nebuchadnezzar, who first conquered and ravaged Egypt, (BC 573), and the following year; and then, not only his successors, but Cambyses (who invaded Egypt, (BC 526), the son of Cyrus, and the whole succession of Persian kings till the time of Alexander, who were in general hard masters, and grievously oppressed the country.” (Treasury of Scriptural Knowledge)

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 20:4** So shall the king of Assyria lead away the Egyptians prisoners, and the Ethiopians captives, young and old, naked and barefoot, even with *their* buttocks uncovered, to the shame of Egypt.

**Jer 46:26** And I will deliver them into the hand of those that seek their lives, and into the hand of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon, and into the hand of
his servants: and afterward it shall be inhabited, as in the days of old, saith the LORD.

**Eze 29:19-20** Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will give the land of Egypt unto Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon; and he shall take her multitude, and take her spoil, and take her prey; and it shall be the wages for his army. I have given him the land of Egypt for his labour wherewith he served against it, because they wrought for me, saith the Lord GOD.

5And the waters shall fail from the sea, and the river shall be wasted and dried up.

Rivers will dry up—the river bed will look like a dry road bed—everything will dry up and be parched—baked in the sun—canals are stagnant and stink.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Eze 30:12** And I will make the rivers dry, and sell the land into the hand of the wicked: and I will make the land waste, and all that is therein, by the hand of strangers: I the LORD have spoken it.

**Zec 10:11** And he shall pass through the sea with affliction, and shall smite the waves in the sea, and all the deeps of the river shall dry up: and the pride of Assyria shall be brought down, and the sceptre of Egypt shall depart away. Read: Jer 51:36; Zec 14:18

6And they shall turn the rivers far away; and the brooks of defence shall be emptied and dried up: the reeds and flags shall wither.

Everything that grew along the rivers and brooks is withering and dying. The fishing industry is ruined.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**2Ki 19:24 -25** I have digged and drunk strange waters, and with the sole of my feet have I dried up all the rivers of besieged places. Hast thou not heard long ago how I have done it, and of ancient times that I have formed it? now
have I brought it to pass, that thou shouldest be to lay waste fenced cities into
ruinous heaps.

7The paper reeds by the brooks, by the mouth of the brooks, and every
thing sown by the brooks, shall wither, be driven away, and be no more.

All the sown fields and bulrushes will die—all the crop land that depended
on the Nile for irrigation will wither away. The textile industry has come to a
standstill—weavers aren’t weaving.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT
ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 32:20 Blessed are ye that sow beside all waters, that send forth thither the
feet of the ox and the ass.

Jer 14:4 Because the ground is chapt, for there was no rain in the earth, the
plowmen were ashamed, they covered their heads.

Joe 1:17-18 The seed is rotten under their clods, the garners are laid desolate,
the barns are broken down; for the corn is withered. How do the beasts groan!
the herds of cattle are perplexed, because they have no pasture; yea, the flocks
of sheep are made desolate.

8The fishers also shall mourn, and all they that cast angle into the brooks
shall lament, and they that spread nets upon the waters shall languish.

The fisherman who depended on the fishing industry to support his family is
lamenting—they are out of work and no welfare roles. Gloom and doom—
dispirited, depressed—everyone who had a job is now jobless.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT
PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Exo 7:21 And the fish that was in the river died; and the river stank, and
the Egyptians could not drink of the water of the river; and there was blood
throughout all the land of Egypt.
Num 11:5 We remember the fish, which we did eat in Egypt freely; the cucumbers, and the melons, and the leeks, and the onions, and the garlick:

9Moreover they that work in fine flax, and they that weave networks, shall be confounded.

Those who combed the flax and wove the white linen cloth are hanging their heads and growing pale.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

1Ki 10:28-29 And Solomon had horses brought out of Egypt, and linen yarn: the king’s merchants received the linen yarn at a price. And a chariot came up and went out of Egypt for six hundred shekels of silver, and an horse for an hundred and fifty: and so for all the kings of the Hittites, and for the kings of Syria, did they bring them out by their means.

Pro 7:16 I have decked my bed with coverings of tapestry, with carved works, with fine linen of Egypt.

Eze 27:7 Fine linen with broidered work from Egypt was that which thou spreadest forth to be thy sail; blue and purple from the isles of Elishah was that which covered thee.

10And they shall be broken in the purposes thereof, all that make sluices and ponds for fish.

The dam builders are grieved—the contractors and laborers who built canals are on the unemployment roles—everyone is downcast and sick of heart. Some of the sluices had a sliding gate that acted like our locks and dams to aid in navigation and irrigation—the water was dried up and they were out of work.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Exo 7:19 And the LORD spake unto Moses, Say unto Aaron, Take thy rod, and stretch out thine hand upon the waters of Egypt, upon their streams, upon their rivers, and upon their ponds, and upon all their pools of water,
that they may become blood; and that there may be blood throughout all the land of Egypt, both in vessels of wood, and in vessels of stone.

11 Surely the princes of Zoan are fools, the counsel of the wise counsellors of Pharaoh is become brutish: how say ye unto Pharaoh, I am the son of the wise, the son of ancient kings?

The wisest counselors of Pharaoh were stupid—they were utterly witless and made the silliest plans—some claimed to be wise on the basis that their ancestors were among the wise counselors of Egypt. Not a wise man or woman left in Egypt.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 29:14 Therefore, behold, I will proceed to do a marvellous work among this people, even a marvellous work and a wonder: for the wisdom of their wise men shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent men shall be hid.

Isa 44:25 That frustrateth the tokens of the liars, and maketh diviners mad; that turneth wise men backward, and maketh their knowledge foolish; Read: Job 12:17; Psa 33:10; 1Co 1:19-20; 1Co 1:19-20; 1Ki 4:30; Act 7:22

12 Where are they? where are thy wise men? and let them tell thee now, and let them know what the LORD of hosts hath purposed upon Egypt.

The prophet taunts them by asking where their wise men are—if they are wise then why don’t they know what God is going to do to Egypt and do something about it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

1Co 1:20 Where is the wise? where is the scribe? where is the disputer of this world? hath not God made foolish the wisdom of this world? Read: Isa 47:10-13; Isa 47:10-13; Rom 11:33-34

13 The princes of Zoan are become fools, the princes of Noph are deceived; they have also seduced Egypt, even they that are the stay of the tribes thereof.
These befooled dupes—and many of them are chieftains of tribes have ruined Egypt with their dopey counsel. They had even deceived themselves. They acted like dunces. Their brains were like scrambled eggs. They were as dopey as a dimwitted donkey.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Rom 1:22 Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools,

Jer 46:19 O thou daughter dwelling in Egypt, furnish thyself to go into captivity: for Noph shall be waste and desolate without an inhabitant.

Eze 30:13-17 Thus saith the Lord GOD; I will also destroy the idols, and I will cause their images to cease out of Noph; and there shall be no more a prince of the land of Egypt: and I will put a fear in the land of Egypt. And I will make Pathros desolate, and will set fire in Zoan, and will execute judgments in No. And I will pour my fury upon Sin, the strength of Egypt; and I will cut off the multitude of No. And I will set fire in Egypt: Sin shall have great pain, and No shall be rent asunder, and Noph shall have distresses daily. The young men of Aven and of Pibeseth shall fall by the sword: and these cities shall go into captivity.

14 The LORD hath mingled a perverse spirit in the midst thereof: and they have caused Egypt to err in every work thereof, as a drunken man staggereth in his vomit.

God had infused them with a type of giddiness that caused them to lose sound judgment—it warped their wits—they addled around like a drunkard who loses his footing in his own vomit. The educated pillars of society led Egypt into detours and dead ends. God gave them the mind of a moron.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 29:10 For the LORD hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep, and hath closed your eyes: the prophets and your rulers, the seers hath he covered.

Isa 29:14 Therefore, behold, I will proceed to do a marvellous work among
this people, *even* a marvellous work and a wonder: for the wisdom of their wise *men* shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent *men* shall be hid.

**1Ki 22:20-23** And the LORD said, Who shall persuade Ahab, that he may go up and fall at Ramothgilead? And one said on this manner, and another said on that manner. And there came forth a spirit, and stood before the LORD, and said, I will persuade him. And the LORD said unto him, Wherewith? And he said, I will go forth, and I will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And he said, Thou shalt persuade *him*, and prevail also: go forth, and do so. Now therefore, behold, the LORD hath put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these thy prophets, and the LORD hath spoken evil concerning thee.

15*Neither shall there be any work for Egypt, which the head or tail, branch or rush, may do.*

No work to be had—high or low—top to bottom—head or tail—palm branch or rush. Unemployment lines are staggering and nothing to eat. Egypt is hopeless and past helping.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:**

**Hab 3:17** Although the fig tree shall not blossom, neither *shall fruit be* in the vines; the labour of the olive shall fail, and the fields shall yield no meat; the flock shall be cut off from the fold, and *there shall be* no herd in the stalls:

**Hag 1:11** And I called for a drought upon the land, and upon the mountains, and upon the corn, and upon the new wine, and upon the oil, and upon *that* which the ground bringeth forth, and upon men, and upon cattle, and upon all the labour of the hands.

16*In that day shall Egypt be like unto women: and it shall be afraid and fear because of the shaking of the hand of the LORD of hosts, which he shaketh over it.*

Egypt is like a hysterical woman that is filled with fear and terrified.
Lewis P. Hussell

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Jer 30:5-7** For thus saith the LORD; We have heard a voice of trembling, of fear, and not of peace. Ask ye now, and see whether a man doth travail with child? wherefore do I see every man with his hands on his loins, as a woman in travail, and all faces are turned into paleness? Alas! for that day is great, so that none is like it: it is even the time of Jacob’s trouble; but he shall be saved out of it.

**Jer 50:37** A sword is upon their horses, and upon their chariots, and upon all the mingled people that are in the midst of her; and they shall become as women: a sword is upon her treasures; and they shall be robbed.

**17**And the land of Judah shall be a terror unto Egypt, every one that maketh mention thereof shall be afraid in himself, because of the counsel of the LORD of hosts, which he hath determined against it.

Just say Judah and the Egyptians will be terrified! They can remember their fate when Israel left Egypt in the days of Moses.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Jer 43:8-13** Then came the word of the LORD unto Jeremiah in Tahpanhes, saying, Take great stones in thine hand, and hide them in the clay in the brickkiln, which is at the entry of Pharaoh’s house in Tahpanhes, in the sight of the men of Judah; And say unto them, Thus saith the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel; Behold, I will send and take Nebuchadrezzar the king of Babylon, my servant, and will set his throne upon these stones that I have hid; and he shall spread his royal pavilion over them. And when he cometh, he shall smite the land of Egypt, and deliver such as are for death to death; and such as are for captivity to captivity; and such as are for the sword to the sword. And I will kindle a fire in the houses of the gods of Egypt; and he shall burn them, and carry them away captives: and he shall array himself with the land of Egypt, as a shepherd putteth on his garment; and he shall go forth from thence in peace. He shall break also the images of Bethshemesh, that is in the land of Egypt; and the houses of the gods of the Egyptians shall he burn with fire. Read: **Jer 25:27-31; Jer 44:28-30**
18 In that day shall five cities in the land of Egypt speak the language of Canaan, and swear to the LORD of hosts; one shall be called, The city of destruction.

Five cities will learn the language of the Jews without the aid of the Rosetta stone. They will be swearing by the name of Jehovah and not their idols. One of their cities will be called Heliopolis—the city of destruction or the city of the sun. The city of Alexandria will be the place where the translation of the Bible was made from Hebrew to Greek. The whole passage, from this verse to the end, contains a general intimation of the propagation of the knowledge of the true God in Egypt and Syria, under the successors of Alexander, and the early reception of the gospel in the same countries.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Isa 45:23-25 I have sworn by myself, the word is gone out of my mouth in righteousness, and shall not return, That unto me every knee shall bow, every tongue shall swear. Surely, shall one say, in the LORD have I righteousness and strength: even to him shall men come; and all that are incensed against him shall be ashamed. In the LORD shall all the seed of Israel be justified, and shall glory.

Jer 12:16-17 And it shall come to pass, if they will diligently learn the ways of my people, to swear by my name, The LORD liveth; as they taught my people to swear by Baal; then shall they be built in the midst of my people. But if they will not obey, I will utterly pluck up and destroy that nation, saith the LORD.

19 In that day shall there be an altar to the LORD in the midst of the land of Egypt, and a pillar at the border thereof to the LORD.

A Jewish temple was built there and an altar to the Lord where sacrifices would be offered. There was a monument at the border crossing inscribed to the Lord.

THE FRIENDSHIP THAT WAS BETWEEN ONIAS AND PTOLEMY PHILOMETOR; AND HOW ONIAS BUILT A TEMPLE IN EGYPT LIKE TO THAT AT JERUSALEM.
1. BUT then the son of Onias the high priest, who was of the same name with his father, and who fled to king Ptolemy, who was called Philometor, lived now at Alexandria, as we have said already. When this Onias saw that Judea was oppressed by the Macedonians and their kings, out of a desire to purchase to himself a memorial and eternal fame he resolved to send to king Ptolemy and queen Cleopatra, to ask leave of them that he might build a temple in Egypt like to that at Jerusalem, and might ordain Levites and priests out of their own stock. The chief reason why he was desirous so to do, was, that he relied upon the prophet Isaiah, who lived above six hundred years before, and foretold that there certainly was to be a temple built to Almighty God in Egypt by a man that was a Jew. Onias was elevated with this prediction, and wrote the following epistle to Ptolemy and Cleopatra: “Having done many and great things for you in the affairs of the war, by the assistance of God, and that in Cælesyria and Phoenicia, I came at length with the Jews to Leontopolis, and to other places of your nation, where I found that the greatest part of your people had temples in an improper manner, and that on this account they bare ill-will one against another, which happens to the Egyptians by reason of the multitude of their temples, and the difference of opinions about Divine worship. Now I found a very fit place in a castle that hath its name from the country Diana; this place is full of materials of several sorts, and replenished with sacred animals; I desire therefore that you will grant me leave to purge this holy place, which belongs to no master, and is fallen down, and to build there a temple to Almighty God, after the pattern of that in Jerusalem, and of the same dimensions, that may be for the benefit of thyself, and thy wife and children, that those Jews which dwell in Egypt may have a place whither they may come and meet together in mutual harmony one with another, and he subservient to thy advantages; for the prophet Isaiah foretold that “there should be an altar in Egypt to the Lord God; and many other such things did he prophesy relating to that place.” (Josephus, Antiquities of the Jews 13.3.1)

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

**Isa 66:23** And it shall come to pass, that from one new moon to another, and from one sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith the LORD.

**Zec 6:15** And they that are far off shall come and build in the temple of the LORD, and ye shall know that the LORD of hosts hath sent me unto you.
And this shall come to pass, if ye will diligently obey the voice of the LORD your God.

20And it shall be for a sign and for a witness unto the LORD of hosts in the land of Egypt: for they shall cry unto the LORD because of the oppressors, and he shall send them a saviour, and a great one, and he shall deliver them.

This sacred pillar at the border was a testimony that Egypt was honoring the Lord. Their outcry will bring a deliverer who will put a stop to all the oppression that they had encountered.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 55:13 Instead of the thorn shall come up the fir tree, and instead of the brier shall come up the myrtle tree: and it shall be to the LORD for a name, for an everlasting sign that shall not be cut off.

Psa 50:15 And call upon me in the day of trouble: I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me.

21And the LORD shall be known to Egypt, and the Egyptians shall know the LORD in that day, and shall do sacrifice and oblation; yea, they shall vow a vow unto the LORD, and perform it.

This was serious business—The Egyptians will honor the Lord and know the Lord and sacrifice to him. They will make vows and keep them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Isa 55:5 Behold, thou shalt call a nation that thou knowest not, and nations that knew not thee shall run unto thee because of the LORD thy God, and for the Holy One of Israel; for he hath glorified thee.

Hab 2:14 For the earth shall be filled with the knowledge of the glory of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea.

22And the LORD shall smite Egypt: he shall smite and heal it: and they
shall return even to the LORD, and he shall be intreated of them, and shall heal them.

God hit Egypt with a blow and now he is going to heal them. They are going to come back to God and he is going to heal them. They will again have a robust economy.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

**Deu 32:39** See now that I, even I, am he, and there is no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither is there any that can deliver out of my hand.

**Job 5:18** For he maketh sore, and bindeth up: he woundeth, and his hands make whole.

**Heb 12:11** Now no chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous: nevertheless afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby.

**Act 28:26-27** Saying, Go unto this people, and say, Hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and not perceive: For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; lest they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

**23** In that day shall there be a highway out of Egypt to Assyria, and the Assyrian shall come into Egypt, and the Egyptian into Assyria, and the Egyptians shall serve with the Assyrians.

Egyptians and Assyrians will trade with each other and a trade route will run between both countries. Christianity will spread like a forest fire across all of Asia. The then known world will be known as the Holy Roman Empire.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 11:16** And there shall be an highway for the remnant of his people, which
shall be left, from Assyria; like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

**Isa 35:8-10** And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein. No lion shall be there, nor any ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk there: And the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away. Read: **Isa 40:3-5; Eph 2:18-22**

24 In that day shall Israel be the third with Egypt and with Assyria, even a blessing in the midst of the land:

This will prove to be a blessing to all three countries—each becoming a trading partner sharing the blessings of the trade route—an economic boom for all three countries. A picture of the progress of Christianity in the civilization of the world.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 49:6** And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

**Isa 49:22** Thus saith the Lord GOD, Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders. Read: **Isa 66:12; Isa 66:19-21**

25 Whom the LORD of hosts shall bless, saying, Blessed be Egypt my people, and Assyria the work of my hands, and Israel mine inheritance.

This triple alliance will be a blessing to all the world—these three will now be allies—Blessed be Egypt my people—Blessed be Assyria the work of my hands—Blessed be Israel mine inheritance.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 61:9** And their seed shall be known among the Gentiles, and their offspring among the people: all that see them shall acknowledge them, that they *are* the seed *which* the LORD hath blessed. Read: **Isa 65:23; Eph 1:3; Rom 9:24-25; 1Pe 2:10**
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 20

General Tartan, commander in chief in Syria, stormed the city of Ashdod and captured it. In the same year (712 B.C.) Isaiah was told to remove his sackcloth and shoes and to walk naked and barefoot for three years. This was a symbol that God was going to strip the clothing and shoes from the people of Egypt and Ethiopia and send them with their bare buttocks to Exile. In the meantime Israel and the costal people will be dismayed for their hope was in their allies Egypt. The commentary section will shed more light on the subject.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 20

1In the year that Tartan came unto Ashdod, (when Sargon the king of Assyria sent him,) and fought against Ashdod, and took it.

Around the year of 712 (BC) Tartan, one of the generals of Sargon, king of Assyria, was sent to storm and capture Ashdod. This city was about 18 miles northeast of Gaza and was one of 5 principal cities of the Philistines. In 1963 a monument was discovered in Ashdod commemorating Sargon’s victory over Ashdod.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Amo 1:8 And I will cut off the inhabitant from Ashdod, and him that holdeth the sceptre from Ashkelon, and I will turn mine hand against Ekron: and the remnant of the Philistines shall perish, saith the Lord GOD. Read: 2Ki 18:17; 1Sa 6:17; Jer 25:20-27; Jer 25:29-33

2At the same time spake the LORD by Isaiah the son of Amoz, saying,
Go and loose the sackcloth from off thy loins, and put off thy shoe from thy foot. And he did so, walking naked and barefoot.

Isaiah was told by the Lord to remove his sackcloth and shoes and walk around half clad with a loin cloth covering his private parts and his buttock uncovered.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Mic 1:8** Therefore I will wail and howl, I will go stripped and naked: I will make a wailing like the dragons, and mourning as the owls.

**Joh 21:7** Therefore that disciple whom Jesus loved saith unto Peter, It is the Lord. Now when Simon Peter heard that it was the Lord, he girt *his* fisher’s coat unto him, (for he was naked,) and did cast himself into the sea. Read: Jer 13:1-11; Jer 19:1-15; Eze 4:5; 2Ki 1:8; Zec 13:4; Exo 3:5; Jos 5:15; Eze 24:17-23; 1 Sam 19:24; 2Sa 6:20; 2Sa 6:20; Job 1:20-22; Act 19:16; Num 14:33-34; Eze 4:5; Rev 11:2-3; Isa 18:1-7

3And the LORD said, Like as my servant Isaiah hath walked naked and barefoot three years for a sign and wonder upon Egypt and upon Ethiopia;

Disrobed and barefoot Isaiah will walk in public for the next three years as a wonder and sign and warning to Egypt. He was a walking, living billboard and a public announcement of the coming doom on Egypt and Ethiopia.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 19:4** And the Egyptians will I give over into the hand of a cruel lord; and a fierce king shall rule over them, saith the Lord, the LORD of hosts.

**Eze 30:18** At Tehaphnehes also the day shall be darkened, when I shall break there the yokes of Egypt: and the pomp of her strength shall cease in her: as for her, a cloud shall cover her, and her daughters shall go into captivity.

4So shall the king of Assyria lead away the Egyptians prisoners, and the
**Ethiopians captives, young and old, naked and barefoot, even with their buttocks uncovered, to the shame of Egypt.**

Sargon the king of Assyria with his mighty army defeats the king of Egypt and marches a long line of prisoners in chains, naked and barefooted all the way to Assyria where they were sold as slaves to other nations. The prophet Isaiah with his bare buttock had told them for three years that they would be on parade shuffling off to exile amid mockery and jeers. The prophecy proved to be true.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 3:17** Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the LORD will discover their secret parts.

**Jer 13:22** And if thou say in thine heart, Wherefore come these things upon me? For the greatness of thine iniquity are thy skirts discovered, and thy heels made bare.

**Mic 1:11** Pass ye away, thou inhabitant of Saphir, having thy shame naked: the inhabitant of Zaanan came not forth in the mourning of Bethezel; he shall receive of you his standing.

**Rev 3:18** I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.

*And they shall be afraid and ashamed of Ethiopia their expectation, and of Egypt their glory.*

The leaders of Israel were confounded and turned pale because they trusted in the power of Egypt to save them from Babylonia.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

**Isa 30:6** Lo, thou trustest in the staff of this broken reed, on Egypt; whereon
if a man lean, it will go into his hand, and pierce it: so is Pharaoh king of Egypt to all that trust in him.

**Eze 29:6-7** And all the inhabitants of Egypt shall know that I am the LORD, because they have been a staff of reed to the house of Israel. When they took hold of thee by thy hand, thou didst break, and rend all their shoulder: and when they leaned upon thee, thou brakest, and madest all their loins to be at a stand.

"And the inhabitant of this isle shall say in that day, Behold, such is our expectation, whither we flee for help to be delivered from the king of Assyria: and how shall we escape?

The inhabitants along the coast—the Philistines and the people of Tyre and Sidon—will say "look at our hope, now what are we going to do—if this can happen to Egypt what are we going to do. How are we going to escape exile, captivity and slavery?"

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:**

**Jer 47:4-7** Because of the day that cometh to spoil all the Philistines, and to cut off from Tirus and Zidon every helper that remaineth: for the LORD will spoil the Philistines, the remnant of the country of Caphtor. Baldness is come upon Gaza; Ashkelon is cut off with the remnant of their valley: how long wilt thou cut thyself? O thou sword of the LORD, how long will it be ere thou be quiet? put up thyself into thy scabbard, rest, and be still. How can it be quiet, seeing the LORD hath given it a charge against Ashkelon, and against the sea shore? there hath he appointed it. Read: **Isa 30:1-7; Isa 31:1-3; Heb 2:3**
ISAIAH CHAPTER 21

INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 21

Isaiah has a vision regarding the future of Babylon—it will be attacked by the Persians and destroyed—never to be inhabited again. God’s people had been on their threshing floor and beaten like grain but this was all to end. He sees the last night when Daniel is called to interpret the hand writing on the wall—no one at the feast survives—Daniel was made the third ruler in the kingdom, however when morning arrives the kingdom was in the hands of the Persians. The commentary section will fill you in on all the details.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 21

1The Gen 25:13 burden of the desert of the sea. As whirlwinds in the south pass through; so it cometh from the desert, from a terrible land.

This inspired prediction is about the wastelands by the sea. Babylon had great dams which were used to raise and control the waters at the Euphrates River which overflowed it like a sea, sometimes it is referred to as a desert and sometimes as a sea. The first ten verses of this chapter contain a prediction of the taking of Babylon by the Medes and Persians; which is here called “the desert of the sea,” because the country around it, and especially towards the sea, was a great morass, often overflowed by the Tigris and Euphrates, and only rendered habitable by being drained by a number of canals.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 51:42 The sea is come up upon Babylon: she is covered with the multitude of the waves thereof. Read: Isa 13:20-22; Isa 14:23

2A grievous vision is declared unto me; the treacherous dealer dealeth
treacherously, and the spoiler spoileth. Go up, O Elam: besiege, O Media; all the sighing thereof have I made to cease.

This harsh and dreadful vision came to Isaiah, roaring like a whirlwind—it was the judgment of God—God is telling Isaiah that he will send the army of Elam and Media—the combined forces were known as Persia—God says that the sighing thereof will cease—He is going to put an end to Israel’s moaning and groaning by sending Persia to destroy Babylon and the nations groaning will end.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 51:44 And I will punish Bel in Babylon, and I will bring forth out of his mouth that which he hath swallowed up: and the nations shall not flow together any more unto him: yea, the wall of Babylon shall fall. Read: Isa 24:16; Jer 51:48-49; Dan 5:28; Dan 8:20

Therefore are my loins filled with pain: pangs have taken hold upon me, as the pangs of a woman that travaileth: I was bowed down at the hearing of it; I was dismayed at the seeing of it.

The prophet is seized with pain when he sees the awful plunder of the golden city—his stomach is constricted and burns with pains—the vision leaves him writhing in anguish and gripped in pain like a woman having a baby. He is dismayed—too distressed to hear and too afraid to look—it leaves him stunned and dazed at the awful slaughter and destruction of the principal city of the universe.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Dan 5:5-6 In the same hour came forth fingers of a man’s hand, and wrote over against the candlestick upon the plaister of the wall of the king’s palace: and the king saw the part of the hand that wrote. Then the king’s countenance was changed, and his thoughts troubled him, so that the joints of his loins were loosed, and his knees smote one against another. Read: Isa 16:9; Hab 3:16; Jer 49:22; Jer 50:43
My heart panted, fearfulness affrighted me: the night of my pleasure hath he turned into fear unto me.

His mind reels—the horror fills him with fear—he is like a man gripped in convulsions. He sees the last night of Babylon—God reveals the feast of Belshazzar—the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, the table is loaded with food and wine, the party is in full swing—the golden vessels taken from God’s temple are used to toast the idols of Babylon. He watches the handwriting on the wall by a disembodied hand—Daniel is awakened and summons to the banquet hall—his relaxed evening is turned into a nightmare—he sees the king slain—every politician and ruler killed and the kingdom of Babylon come to an end. Read my full account in Daniel and the Revelation on page 80-82 or www.4thewordofgod.com

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Jer 51:57 And I will make drunk her princes, and her wise men, her captains, and her rulers, and her mighty men: and they shall sleep a perpetual sleep, and not wake, saith the King, whose name is the LORD of hosts.

Dan 5:1 Belshazzar the king made a great feast to a thousand of his lords, and drank wine before the thousand.

Dan 5:5 In the same hour came forth fingers of a man’s hand, and wrote over against the candlestick upon the plaister of the wall of the king’s palace: and the king saw the part of the hand that wrote.

Dan 5:30 In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain.

Prepare the table, watch in the watchtower, eat, drink: arise, ye princes, and anoint the shield.

The banquet is in full swing—food, drink—but suddenly they learn of the city being stormed by the Meads and Persians—they jump up from the table and rush to the armory—but all to no avail.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Jer 51:39 In their heat I will make their feasts, and I will make them drunken, that they may rejoice, and sleep a perpetual sleep, and not wake, saith the LORD. Read: Dan 5:1-5; Isa 13:17-18; Isa 45:1-3; Jer 51:11, 27-33

6For thus hath the LORD said unto me, Go, set a watchman, let him declare what he seeth.

The Lord directs his attention to the watchman (Babylon’s security guards) to supply him with information regarding the siege.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Jer 51:30-31 The mighty men of Babylon have forborne to fight, they have remained in their holds: their might hath failed; they became as women: they have burned her dwellingplaces; her bars are broken. One post shall run to meet another, and one messenger to meet another, to shew the king of Babylon that his city is taken at one end, Read: 2Ki 9:17-20; Jer 51:12-13

7And he saw a chariot with a couple of horsemen, a chariot of asses, and a chariot of camels; and he hearkened diligently with much heed:

The watchman, with his ear to the ground and his eye to the horizon, reports that he sees horses and wagons in long lines in battle formation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 37:24 By thy servants hast thou reproached the Lord, and hast said, By the multitude of my chariots am I come up to the height of the mountains, to the sides of Lebanon; and I will cut down the tall cedars thereof, and the choice fir trees thereof: and I will enter into the height of his border, and the forest of his Carmel.

8And he cried, A lion: My lord, I stand continually upon the watchtower in the daytime, and I am set in my ward whole nights:
The watchman reports—crying like a lion pouncing on its prey that he has been at his post of duty day and night and watched whole nights but something unusual is happening on the horizon.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

**Isa 56:10** His watchmen are blind: they are all ignorant, they are all dumb dogs, they cannot bark; sleeping, lying down, loving to slumber. Read: *Jer 4:7; Jer 49:19; Psa 127*

"And, behold, here cometh a chariot of men, with a couple of horsemen. And he answered and said, Babylon is fallen, is fallen; and all the graven images of her gods he hath broken unto the ground.

What the watchman sees is a train of men mounted on horses and riding in chariots—the latest war news headlines: BABYLON IS FALLEN! FALLEN! Her idols have fallen—shattered and broken to pieces—loaded on oxcarts and carted to the recycle place to be melted and their gold and other alloys reused.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Jer 50:2-3** Declare ye among the nations, and publish, and set up a standard; publish, and conceal not: say, Babylon is taken, Bel is confounded, Merodach is broken in pieces; her idols are confounded, her images are broken in pieces. For out of the north there cometh up a nation against her, which shall make her land desolate, and none shall dwell therein: they shall remove, they shall depart, both man and beast. Read: *Jer 50:9; Jer 50:42; Jer 51:8; Jer 51:64*

"O my threshing, and the corn of my floor: that which I have heard of the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel, have I declared unto you.

God’s people had been threshed and beaten like threshing of grain on the threshing floor—but, here is the good news—BABYLON IS FALLEN!
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Jer 51:33 For thus saith the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel; The daughter of Babylon is like a threshingfloor, it is time to thresh her: yet a little while, and the time of her harvest shall come. Read: 2Ki 13:7; Hab 3:12

11The burden of Dumah. He calleth to me out of Seir, Watchman, what of the night? Watchman, what of the night?

The prophet Isaiah touches on the doom of Dumah (Edom). What of the night? This probably means that the night of Edom’s fall is sure to come—as sure as daybreak comes in the morning.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Amo 1:11-12 Thus saith the LORD; For three transgressions of Edom, and for four, I will not turn away the punishment thereof; because he did pursue his brother with the sword, and did cast off all pity, and his anger did tear perpetually, and he kept his wrath for ever: But I will send a fire upon Teman, which shall devour the palaces of Bozrah. Read: Isa 34:1-8; Isa 63:1-6; Jer 49:8-13; Oba 1:1-9

12The watchman said, The morning cometh, and also the night: if ye will enquire, enquire ye: return, come.

What’s left of the night? It appears in this short verse that he his saying that Edom’s judgment day is dawning.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Jer 50:27 Slay all her bullocks; let them go down to the slaughter: woe unto them! for their day is come, the time of their visitation. Read: Eze 7:5-7

13The burden upon Arabia. In the forest in Arabia shall ye lodge, O ye travelling companies of Dedanim.
This caravan of Dedanites are camping out in the badlands of Arabia—The citizens of Tema hauled water and provided bread for the fleeing refuges.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:**

**Jer 49:28-32** Concerning Kedar, and concerning the kingdoms of Hazor, which Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon shall smite, thus saith the LORD; Arise ye, go up to Kedar, and spoil the men of the east. Their tents and their flocks shall they take away: they shall take to themselves their curtains, and all their vessels, and their camels; and they shall cry unto them, Fear is on every side. Flee, get you far off, dwell deep, O ye inhabitants of Hazor, saith the LORD; for Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon hath taken counsel against you, and hath conceived a purpose against you. Arise, get you up unto the wealthy nation, that dwelleth without care, saith the LORD, which have neither gates nor bars, which dwell alone. And their camels shall be a booty, and the multitude of their cattle a spoil: and I will scatter into all winds them that are in the utmost corners; and I will bring their calamity from all sides thereof, saith the LORD. Read: **Jer 25:23-24; Eze 27:20-21**

14 The inhabitants of the land of Tema brought water to him that was thirsty, they prevented with their bread him that fled.

The horrors of war had left streams of refuges that were living on the edge of the desert of Arabia and if it had not been for Tema bringing water they would have perished.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:**

**Gen 25:15** Hadar, and Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah:

15 For they fled from the swords, from the drawn sword, and from the bent bow, and from the grievousness of war.

They were fleeing from an army that had bows and arrows and swords—as the prophet puts it—the grievousness of war.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

**Job 6:19-20** The troops of Tema looked, the companies of Sheba waited for them. They were confounded because they had hoped; they came thither, and were ashamed.

16 For thus hath the LORD said unto me, Within a year, according to the years of an hireling, and all the glory of Kedar shall fail:

Be patient for within a year (two ways to figure a year, one is a calendar year and the other is a fiscal year) this year could begin in any month and end in the same month the following year—what the prophets tells us is that in one year this tribe of Arabians who had lived by brutality would come to an abrupt end.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Isa 60:7** All the flocks of Kedar shall be gathered together unto thee, the rams of Nebaioth shall minister unto thee: they shall come up with acceptance on mine altar, and I will glorify the house of my glory. Read: **Gen 25:13**

17 And the residue of the number of archers, the mighty men of the children of Kedar, shall be diminished: for the LORD God of Israel hath spoken it.

God says it’s all over for the mighty men of Kedar—the heroes and mighty warriors will be few in number—the God of Israel has spoken it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Zec 1:6** But my words and my statutes, which I commanded my servants the prophets, did they not take hold of your fathers? and they returned and said, Like as the LORD of hosts thought to do unto us, according to our ways, and according to our doings, so hath he dealt with us.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 22

On the housetops and hanging over the railing to get a better view of the crises. The leaders had fled and were apprehended by the enemy and bound with chains and led off to their doom. As for the city of Jerusalem it was a day of trouble, panic and confusion—walls crashing down—the cry of death was deafening. Battering rams had broken through the walls—every attempt was being made to shore up the walls. It was too little too late. The city treasurer was preparing his sepulcher (mausolueum) but the prophet predicts that he will get bounced like a ball to a foreign nation and die in disgrace. Eliakim will be robed with his sash and empowered with civil and sacred authority. He will be like a firm peg hammered into the wall and God will hang upon him the weight of ruling the nation. Insight and inspiration awaits you in the exposition.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 22

1The burden of the valley of vision. What aileth thee now, that thou art wholly gone up to the housetops?

Isaiah foretells the invasion of Jerusalem by the Assyrians and the Babylonians. Their houses had flat roofs and was used for drying corn, hanging up linen, preparing figs and raisins. The roofs are used as places of recreation in evenings, and often sleeping places on hot nights. From the text it would indicate that the people were swarming to the housetops for a better look at the situation that was developing in the city.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Psa 147:19-20 He sheweth his word unto Jacob, his statutes and his judgments
unto Israel. He hath not dealt so with any nation: and as for his judgments, they have not known them. Praise ye the LORD.

2Thou that art full of stirs, a tumultuous city, joyous city: thy slain men are not slain with the sword, nor dead in battle.

From the housetops where this city had been celebrating one could see bodies of the dead lying everywhere but not killed with the sword nor slain in battle. Everywhere the carcasses of young and old were lying from a plague.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 14:18 If I go forth into the field, then behold the slain with the sword! and if I enter into the city, then behold them that are sick with famine! yea, both the prophet and the priest go about into a land that they know not.

3All thy rulers are fled together, they are bound by the archers: all that are found in thee are bound together, which have fled from far.

Their leaders had took to their heals and fled but they are soon captured without resistance and now they are bound together with chains and will soon face doom from their captors.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

2Ki 25:4-7 And the city was broken up, and all the men of war fled by night by the way of the gate between two walls, which is by the king’s garden: (now the Chaldees were against the city round about:) and the king went the way toward the plain. And the army of the Chaldees pursued after the king, and overtook him in the plains of Jericho: and all his army were scattered from him. So they took the king, and brought him up to the king of Babylon to Riblah; and they gave judgment upon him. And they slew the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes, and put out the eyes of Zedekiah, and bound him with fetters of brass, and carried him to Babylon. Read Jer 39:4, 5

4Therefore said I, Look away from me; I will weep bitterly, labour not to comfort me, because of the spoiling of the daughter of my people.
The prophet wants to be left alone in the midst of his sorrow. His people have been wiped out and no doubt many of them were his friends, neighbors and relatives. No words could comfort him.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Jer 4:19** My bowels, my bowels! I am pained at my very heart; my heart maketh a noise in me; I cannot hold my peace, because thou hast heard, O my soul, the sound of the trumpet, the alarm of war.

5For it is a day of trouble, and of treading down, and of perplexity by the Lord GOD of hosts in the valley of vision, breaking down the walls, and of crying to the mountains.

It was a day of trouble, panic and confusion. The city walls were crashing down and people were fleeing to the mountains for refuge. One could hear the cry of death as they ran from an opposing army.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Amo 5:18-19** Woe unto you that desire the day of the LORD! to what end is it for you? the day of the LORD is darkness, and not light. As if a man did flee from a lion, and a bear met him; or went into the house, and leaned his hand on the wall, and a serpent bit him.

6And Elam bare the quiver with chariots of men and horsemen, and Kir uncovered the shield.

The prophet sees archers from Elam and Syrians driving the chariots and men from Kir carrying the shield and swords.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Jer 49:35-39** Thus saith the LORD of hosts; Behold, I will break the bow of Elam, the chief of their might. And upon Elam will I bring the four winds from the four quarters of heaven, and will scatter them toward all those winds; and there shall be no nation whither the outcasts of Elam shall not come.
I will cause Elam to be dismayed before their enemies, and before them that seek their life: and I will bring evil upon them, even my fierce anger, saith the LORD; and I will send the sword after them, till I have consumed them: And I will set my throne in Elam, and will destroy from thence the king and the princes, saith the LORD. But it shall come to pass in the latter days, that I will bring again the captivity of Elam, saith the LORD.

7And it shall come to pass, that thy choicest valleys shall be full of chariots, and the horsemen shall set themselves in array at the gate.

As one looks from his housetop he can see the army gathering in formation for an assault on the city.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jer 39:1-3 In the ninth year of Zedekiah king of Judah, in the tenth month, came Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon and all his army against Jerusalem, and they besieged it. And in the eleventh year of Zedekiah, in the fourth month, the ninth day of the month, the city was broken up. And all the princes of the king of Babylon came in, and sat in the middle gate, even Nergalsharezer, Samgarnebo, Sarsechim, Rabsaris, Nergalsharezer, Rabmag, with all the residue of the princes of the king of Babylon.

8And he discovered the covering of Judah, and thou didst look in that day to the armour of the house of the forest.

God had removed his protective care—the valley of vision was filled with chariots and horsemen. All their defenses was laid waste and they are running to the armory for weapons.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

1Ki 7:2 He built also the house of the forest of Lebanon; the length thereof was an hundred cubits, and the breadth thereof fifty cubits, and the height thereof thirty cubits, upon four rows of cedar pillars, with cedar beams upon the pillars.

1Ki 10:17 And he made three hundred shields of beaten gold; three pound
of gold went to one shield: and the king put them in the house of the forest of Lebanon.

9Ye have seen also the breaches of the city of David, that they are many: and ye gathered together the waters of the lower pool.

Their battering rams had broken through the walls and now they are defending the water supply of the city.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

2Ki 20:20 And the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and all his might, and how he made a pool, and a conduit, and brought water into the city, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? Read 2Ch 32:1-6; 2Ch 32:30

10And ye have numbered the houses of Jerusalem, and the houses have ye broken down to fortify the wall.

A number of houses are demolished and the stones and timbers are used to plug the holes in the walls caused by battering rams and shore up the gates.

11Ye made also a ditch between the two walls for the water of the old pool: but ye have not looked unto the maker thereof, neither had respect unto him that fashioned it long ago.

This reservoir was located between the two walls and was the water tower for the city in times of siege. They didn’t look to the maker of atoms and angels nor did they have regard for the city’s founding fathers.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Neh 3:16 After him repaired Nehemiah the son of Azbuk, the ruler of the half part of Bethzur, unto the place over against the sepulchres of David, and to the pool that was made, and unto the house of the mighty.

12And in that day did the Lord GOD of hosts call to weeping, and to mourning, and to baldness, and to girding with sackcloth:
Lewis P. Hussell

God had called for remorse for their sins and had called for them to lament and weep and shave their heads and wear a garment made of old gunny sacks as a sign of their repentance.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Joe 1:13 Gird yourselves, and lament, ye priests: howl, ye ministers of the altar: come, lie all night in sackcloth, ye ministers of my God: for the meat offering and the drink offering is withholden from the house of your God.

13 And behold joy and gladness, slaying oxen, and killing sheep, eating flesh, and drinking wine: let us eat and drink; for to morrow we shall die.

Instead of repentance they were merry-making—buthering oxen, killing sheep and drinking wine and celebrating.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 5:12 And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine, are in their feasts: but they regard not the work of the LORD, neither consider the operation of his hands. Read: Amo 6:3-7

14 And it was revealed in mine ears by the LORD of hosts, Surely this iniquity shall not be purged from you till ye die, saith the Lord GOD of hosts.

God spoke into the ears of the prophet and said that their sins would not be forgiven, now or ever.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

1Sa 3:14 And therefore I have sworn unto the house of Eli, that the iniquity of Eli’s house shall not be purged with sacrifice nor offering for ever.

Eze 24:13 In thy filthiness is lewdness: because I have purged thee, and thou wast not purged, thou shalt not be purged from thy filthiness any more, till I have caused my fury to rest upon thee.
15. Thus saith the Lord GOD of hosts, Go, get thee unto this treasurer, even unto Shebna, which is over the house, and say,

The prophet is instructed to go over to the governors house and speak to the treasurer Shebna.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Act 8:27 And he arose and went: and, behold, a man of Ethiopia, an eunuch of great authority under Candace queen of the Ethiopians, who had the charge of all her treasure, and had come to Jerusalem for to worship,

16. What hast thou here? and whom hast thou here, that thou hast hewed thee out a sepulchre here, as he that heweth him out a sepulchre on high, and that graveth an habitation for himself in a rock?

Some of the sepulchers that are hewn in the sides of mountains are adorned with carved work in relief, some of the sepulchers were probably used by the whole family for burial with chambers sealed for each burial.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 52:5 Now therefore, what have I here, saith the LORD, that my people is taken away for nought? they that rule over them make them to howl, saith the LORD; and my name continually every day is blasphemed.

17. Behold, the LORD will carry thee away with a mighty captivity, and will surely cover thee.

Shebna will be carried away to a foreign land and will not be buried in his new sepulcher.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Jer 14:3 And their nobles have sent their little ones to the waters: they came to the pits, and found no water; they returned with their vessels empty; they were ashamed and confounded, and covered their heads.
He will surely violently turn and toss thee like a ball into a large country: there shalt thou die, and there the chariots of thy glory shall be the shame of thy lord’s house.

God is going to seize hold on him and bounce him like a ball to the other end of world—you will die with disgrace and there will be no chariots of glory at your funeral.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:**

**Isa 17:13** The nations shall rush like the rushing of many waters: but God shall rebuke them, and they shall flee far off, and shall be chased as the chaff of the mountains before the wind, and like a rolling thing before the whirlwind.

**Amo 7:17** Therefore thus saith the LORD; Thy wife shall be an harlot in the city, and thy sons and thy daughters shall fall by the sword, and thy land shall be divided by line; and thou shalt die in a polluted land: and Israel shall surely go into captivity forth of his land.

**19 And I will drive thee from thy station, and from thy state shall he pull thee down.**

He is going to be discharged—fired—removed or driven from his office.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Psa 75:6-7** For promotion cometh neither from the east, nor from the west, nor from the south. But God is the judge: he putteth down one, and setteth up another.

**Luk 1:52** He hath put down the mighty from their seats, and exalted them of low degree.

**20 And it shall come to pass in that day, that I will call my servant Eliakim the son of Hilkiah:**

God is going to call a true servant to replace this corrupt politician.
A Commentary on Isaiah

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

2Ki 19:2 And he sent Eliakim, which was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and the elders of the priests, covered with sackcloth, to Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz.

21And I will clothe him with thy robe, and strengthen him with thy girdle, and I will commit thy government into his hand: and he shall be a father to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and to the house of Judah.

Eliakim will be invested with the robe and sash of authority—he will wear the title of treasurer and will prove to be like a father to the citizens under his authority.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Gen 41:42-43 And Pharaoh took off his ring from his hand, and put it upon Joseph’s hand, and arrayed him in vestures of fine linen, and put a gold chain about his neck; And he made him to ride in the second chariot which he had; and they cried before him, Bow the knee: and he made him ruler over all the land of Egypt.

22And the key of the house of David will I lay upon his shoulder; so he shall open, and none shall shut; and he shall shut, and none shall open.

God is going to lay all the responsibility on his shoulders and he will have the power and authority to get the job done—he will open and shut and none can stop his success. He will have power and authority both civil and sacred.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Rev 1:18 I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death. Read: Mat 16:18-19; Rev 3:7

23And I will fasten him as a nail in a sure place; and he shall be for a glorious throne to his father’s house.
All the royal honor of his fathers house will hang on this peg. God will drive the peg into a firm and fixed wall and hang all of the authority on it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Ecc 12:11 The words of the wise are as goads, and as nails fastened by the masters of assemblies, which are given from one shepherd.

1Sa 2:8 He raiseth up the poor out of the dust, and lifteth up the beggar from the dunghill, to set them among princes, and to make them inherit the throne of glory: for the pillars of the earth are the LORD’S, and he hath set the world upon them.

24And they shall hang upon him all the glory of his father’s house, the offspring and the issue, all vessels of small quantity, from the vessels of cups, even to all the vessels of flagons.

Every branch and shoot of his father’s house will hang upon him—the weight of his family, relatives and dependents—or to change the metaphor—all the vessels, cups and pitchers.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Gen 41:44-45 And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, I am Pharaoh, and without thee shall no man lift up his hand or foot in all the land of Egypt. And Pharaoh called Joseph’s name Zaphnathpaaneah; and he gave him to wife Asenath the daughter of Potipherah priest of On. And Joseph went out over all the land of Egypt. Read: Dan 6:1-3; 2Ti 2:20-21

25In that day, saith the LORD of hosts, shall the nail that is fastened in the sure place be removed, and be cut down, and fall; and the burden that was upon it shall be cut off: for the LORD hath spoken it.

God will use his crowbar to remove the peg that was driven into the wall and everything it supports will fall with it.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORESE THE TEXT:

Est 9:24-25 Because Haman the son of Hammedatha, the Agagite, the enemy of all the Jews, had devised against the Jews to destroy them, and had cast Pur, that is, the lot, to consume them, and to destroy them; But when Esther came before the king, he commanded by letters that his wicked device, which he devised against the Jews, should return upon his own head, and that he and his sons should be hanged on the gallows. Read: Isa 46:11
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 23

Tyre was one of the two greatest cities in the world. As great in that day as N.Y. or London of our day. Tyre was situated midway between the east and the west, and at the junction of three continents, they carried on the trade of the world. The Mediterranean became the mere highway of their commerce. They passed the Strait of Gibraltar on one hand, and reached India on the other. They settled Cyprus, Sicily, and Sardinia. In Spain they founded Gades (now Cadiz); and in Africa, Utica and Carthage, the latter destined to be in time the dreaded rival of Rome. They planted depots on the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea. They obtained tin from The British Isles, amber from the Baltic, silver from Tarshish (southern Spain) and gold from southeastern Arabia. They carried on vast mining operations, and were marvelous workers in ivory, pottery, and the metals, so that their bronzes and painted vases became the models of early Grecian art. Sidon was noted for its glass working, in which the blowpipe, lathe, and graver were used. The costly purple dye of Tyre, obtained in minute drops from shellfish, was famous, the rarest and most beautiful shade being worn only by kings.

For years the armed forces of other nations had attacked this proud city but always unsuccessful. Very soon after this prophecy there was a 13-year siege by Nebuchadnezzar. (See Josephus) Nebuchadnezzar took the city, demolished the mainland. The people fled to the island located ½ mile off shore. Cf. 27:4; 28:2. The mainland became known as Old Tyre and the island as New Tyre.

Nebuchadnezzar made himself master of Tyre, after a siege of thirteen years continuance, and utterly destroyed the place, that is, the city which was on the continent; the ruins of which were afterwards called Palae Tyrus, or Old Tyre. But, before it came to this extremity, the inhabitants had removed most of their effects into an island about half a mile distant from the shore, and there built them a new city. And therefore, when Neabuchadnezzar entered that, which he had so long besieged, he found little there wherewith to reward
Lewis P. Hussell

his soldiers in the spoil of the place, which they had so long labored to take; and therefore wreaking his anger upon the buildings, and the few inhabitants who were left in them, he razed the whole town to the ground, and slew all he found therein. After this it never more recovered it former glory; but the city on the island became the Tyre that was afterward so famous by that name; the other on the continent never arising any higher than to become a village by the name of Old Tyre, as was before said. (Prideaux’s Connection 1676 Page 127)

Today, a small new town called Sur in a different location out in the Peninsula and inhabited by a few fisherman. It is erroneously designated as Tyre by some maps, but is not Tyre. It is not on the sight of Ancient Tyre. Ancient Tyre has never been rebuilt. It was predicted that Tyre would be forgotten for 70 years. Jer. 25:11,12. “This whole country will become a desolate wasteland, and these nations will serve the king of Babylon seventy years. But when the seventy years are fulfilled, I will punish the king of Babylon and his nation, the land of the Babylonians, for their guilt,” declares the LORD, “and will make it desolate forever.”

She served the Babylonians for 70 years afterwards she rebuilt Tyre on the Island. Isa. 23:15-17 “At that time Tyre will be forgotten for seventy years, the span of a king’s life. But at the end of these seventy years, it will happen to Tyre as in the song of the prostitute: “Take up a harp, walk through the city, O prostitute forgotten; play the harp well, sing many a song, so that you will be remembered.” At the end of seventy years, the LORD will deal with Tyre. She will return to her hire as a prostitute and will ply her trade with all the kingdoms on the face of the earth.”

In the year 606 B.C. King Nebuchadnezzar had invaded the nation of Judah. The Jews were conquered and taken captive to Babylon between 606 and 580 BC. The people of Tyre were looking with greedy eyes upon Judah, and they were making plans on going down and taking part of the spoil now that their rival king had invaded and conquered it.

250 years later, Alexander the Great accomplished the reduction of Tyre. He built a causeway 200 feet wide and ½ mile long to the island. Thus turning the island into a peninsula scaled the wall and conquered the people. After a siege of 7 months the city was captured, 8,000 citizens were slaughtered, 2,000 crucified and 30,000 sold into slavery. Alexander performed a feet of military ingenuity by building a 2,000 ft, mole in the sea. To safeguard operations, mobile protective shields, so called ‘tortoises’ had to be employed. Despite
this the construction was greatly hindered by and incessant hail of missiles. Meantime engineers on shore were building mobile protective towers many stories high. They were the highest siege towers ever used in the history of war. A drawbridge on front enabled a surprise attack to be made on the enemy’s wall. Each of them was one hundred and sixty feet high. When these monsters were prepared they were rolled toward the walls of Tyre. The impregnable Tyre met with fate at Alexander’s hand.

Josephus places the settlement of Tyre 240 years before the building of Solomon’s Temple. Pliny, who wrote when its boundaries could still be traced, computes the circuit of Palæ-Tyrus and the island together at nineteen Roman miles. Tyre offered a qualified surrender to Alexander the Great, which did not satisfy the haughty Macedonian, and he instantly laid siege to the city. Having no adequate fleet with which to reach the island-town, he resolved to carry a causeway across the channel, which separated the island from Old Tyre, on the mainland, and he demolished the buildings of the latter to provide materials for the work. It was an undertaking of immense magnitude and difficulty, and the ingenious Tyreians found many modes of interfering with it. They succeeded in destroying the mole when half of it had been built; but Alexander, with obstinate perseverance, began his work anew, on a larger scale than before. He also collected a strong fleet of war-galleys, from Cyprus and from the Phoenicians who had submitted to him, with which the opposition of the enemy was checked and his own operations advanced. (History for Ready Reference 1895 Vol 5 p. 3159-3160)

The prophets not only foretold the overthrow of old Tyre, but also of this new city, built, as it were, “in the midst of the sea.” Ezek 27:32 “As they wail and mourn over you, they will take up a lament concerning you: ‘Who was ever silenced like Tyre, surrounded by the sea?’” Isaiah makes it clear that Tyre was located on an island when he says: “Howl ye inhabitants of the isle.” Isa 23:6 “Cross over to Tarshish; wail, you people of the island.”

Zechariah says that Tyre heaped up gold and silver like dirt on the streets and that she was a sea power and would be consumed by fire. Zech 9:3,4 “Tyre has built herself a stronghold; she has heaped up silver like dust, and gold like the dirt of the streets. But the Lord will take away her possessions and destroy her power on the sea, and she will be consumed by fire.”

This new city was truly a strong hold, for not only was her walls 150 feet in height but she was located on an island a half mile from shore making it impossible for other nations to attack her. Ezekiel also plainly predicts, that
the second destruction of Tyre should be by fire. Ezek 28:18. By your many sins and dishonest trade you have desecrated your sanctuaries. So I made a fire come out from you, and it consumed you, and I reduced you to ashes on the ground in the sight of all who were watching.

“Accordingly, Alexander the Great besieged and took the city, and set it on fire. Alexander’s Evidences of Christianity, 1836 p 155 (Professor at Princeton Seminary)

Cotovicus, a Dutch traveler, who visited Syria in 1598, writes, “that this city so often restored after being overthrown, now at length appears to be utterly ruined; so that it has ceased to be any longer a city, and only some inconsiderable vestiges of her former ruins are now visible. If you except a few arches and baths, and some ruined walls, and collapsed towers, and mere rubbish, there is now nothing of Tyre to be discerned.” Quoted in Alexander’s Evidences of Christianity, 1836 p. 156

“This city, standing in the sea, on a peninsula, at a distance, promises something very magnificent; but when you come nearer, you find no similitude of that glory for which it was so renowned in ancient times, and which the prophet Ezekiel describes in chapters 26,27,28 of his prophecy. On the north side, it has an old ungarrisoned Turkish castle, besides which you see nothing but a mere Babel of broken walls, pillars, vaults, etc. there being not so much as one entire house left; its present inhabitants only a few poor wretches, harboring themselves in the vaults, and subsisting chiefly on fishing, who seem to be preserved in this place, by divine Providence, as a visible argument how God has fulfilled his word concerning Tyre, that it should be ‘as the top of a rock, a place for fishers to dry their nets on.’” Quoted in Alexander’s Evidences of Christianity, 1836 p. 157

Now for my commentary on the destruction of Tyre according to the Scriptures.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 23

1The burden of Tyre. Howl, ye ships of Tarshish; for it is laid waste, so that there is no house, no entering in: from the land of Chittim it is revealed to them.
According to the Sovereign Lord they are going to tear down her walls and take a sledgehammer to her towers and leave nothing but a bare rock where fishermen will dry their nets. The Babylonians besieged Tyre for 13 years and finally broke through her stronghold and began their destruction. But Tyre had fled, along with all her riches to an island a half-mile off shore. The Babylonians had no way of reaching them. As a reward for carrying out the siege the Sovereign Lord tell Nebuchadnezzar that he will give him Egypt as a reward. “Therefore this is what the Sovereign LORD says: I am going to give Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and he will carry off its wealth. He will loot and plunder the land as pay for his army. I have given him Egypt as a reward for his efforts because he and his army did it for me, declares the Sovereign LORD.” Ezekiel 29:19,20

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Zec 9:4 Behold, the Lord will cast her out, and he will smite her power in the sea; and she shall be devoured with fire. Read: Joe 3:4-8; Amo 1:9-10

2Be still, ye inhabitants of the isle; thou whom the merchants of Zidon, that pass over the sea, have replenished.

Notice how the word of God mentions mainland and island. All her subdivisions, villages, and sister towns will be destroyed by the sword and when it happens they will know that it was of God. This was all accomplished by the army of Nebuchadnezzar.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Isa 41:1 Keep silence before me, O islands; and let the people renew their strength: let them come near; then let them speak: let us come near together to judgment.

3And by great waters the seed of Sihor, the harvest of the river, is her revenue; and she is a mart of nations.

You bought slaves and bronze dishes from the merchants of Greece, Tubal, and Meshech. Anyone in need of a slave could purchase one in the slave market at Tyre. Bronze is the only metal that will last where salt water is
present. Therefore, all the lights, oarlocks, bolts, navigational equipment, nails and miscellaneous hardware on the ships or located in the harbors were made of bronze. Armenian feudal Lords supplied you with horses, horsemen and mules. A barter type of trade was carried on so that caravans would come loaded with goods and leave loaded with goods from other countries that came through the port of Tyre. The men of Dedan (Rhodes) traded with you. The coastlines and islands were a source of your commerce. Places in which you done business gave you ivory tusks and ebony. Syria was another of her merchants. They traded turquoise, purple dyes, fine linen, and jewelry. Judah and Israel traded wheat, wax, olive oil, and honey. Farmers from Israel shipped their produce up to Tyre. Danites and Greeks traded you wrought iron, sugarcane, cinnamon and spices. Danites were from the tribe of Dan. Uzal is now Yemen it was located on the Tygris river and was famous for sword blades. Dedan traded their expensive saddle blankets with you. By now you are beginning to see that Tyre was a world import and export city. Dedan is Ethiopia.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Eze 27:3-4 And say unto Tyrus, O thou that art situate at the entry of the sea, which art a merchant of the people for many isles, Thus saith the Lord GOD; O Tyrus, thou hast said, I am of perfect beauty. Thy borders are in the midst of the seas, thy builders have perfected thy beauty. Read: Eze 28:2, 16

4Be thou ashamed, O Zidon: for the sea hath spoken, even the strength of the sea, saying, I travail not, nor bring forth children, neither do I nourish up young men, nor bring up virgins.

This sea-going trade capital was headed for disaster. Alexander will come from the East. 250 years after this prophecy, Alexander the Great accomplished the reduction of Tyre. He built a causeway 200 feet wide and ½ mile long to the island. Thus turning the island into a peninsula scaled the wall and conquered the people. After a siege of 7 months the city was captured, 8,000 citizens were slaughtered, 2,000 crucified and 30,000 sold into slavery. Alexander performed a feet of military ingenuity by building a 2,000 ft, mole in the sea. To safeguard operations, mobile protective shields, so called ‘tortoises’ had to be employed. Despite this the construction was greatly hindered by and incessant hail of missiles. Meantime engineers on shore were building mobile protective towers many stories high. They were the highest siege towers ever used in the history of war. A drawbridge on front enabled a surprise attack to
be made on the enemy’s wall. Each of them was one hundred and sixty feet high. When these monsters were prepared they were rolled toward the walls of Tyre. The impregnable Tyre met with fate at Alexander’s hand. According to prophecy Tyre was to be “broken in the heart of the sea.” When Alexander arrived Tyre was not on land but in the heart of the sea. Was there ever a prophecy fulfilled with such accuracy and detail.

This sea-going trade capital was headed for disaster. Alexander will come from the East. 250 years after this prophecy, Alexander the Great accomplished the reduction of Tyre. He built a causeway 200 feet wide and ½ mile long to the island. Thus turning the island into a peninsula scaled the wall and conquered the people. After a siege of 7 months the city was captured, 8,000 citizens were slaughtered, 2,000 crucified and 30,000 sold into slavery. Alexander performed a feet of military ingenuity by building a 2,000 ft mole in the sea. To safeguard operations, mobile protective shields, so called ‘tortoises’ had to be employed. Despite this the construction was greatly hindered by and incessant hail of missiles. Meantime engineers on shore were building mobile protective towers many stories high. They were the highest siege towers ever used in the history of war. A drawbridge on front enabled a surprise attack to be made on the enemy’s wall. Each of them was one hundred and sixty feet high. When these monsters were prepared they were rolled toward the walls of Tyre. The impregnable Tyre met with fate at Alexander’s hand. According to prophecy Tyre was to be “broken in the heart of the sea.” When Alexander arrived Tyre was not on land but in the heart of the sea. Was there ever a prophecy fulfilled with such accuracy and detail.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Eze 26:3-6** Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I am against thee, O Tyrus, and will cause many nations to come up against thee, as the sea causeth his waves to come up. And they shall destroy the walls of Tyrus, and break down her towers: I will also scrape her dust from her, and make her like the top of a rock. It shall be a place for the spreading of nets in the midst of the sea: for I have spoken it, saith the Lord GOD: and it shall become a spoil to the nations. And her daughters which are in the field shall be slain by the sword; and they shall know that I am the LORD. Read: ** Jer 47:3-4**

5 As at the report concerning Egypt, so shall they be sorely pained at the report of Tyre.
Imports, exports, sailors, wealth, cargo, crew, captains and caulkers were headed for the bottom of the sea. When Alexander the Great finished the reduction of Tyre nothing was left standing. His army burned, plundered and pillaged the city and sunk their boats. They even destroyed the port.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Eze 26:15** - *Thus saith the Lord GOD to Tyrus; Shall not the isles shake at the sound of thy fall, when the wounded cry, when the slaughter is made in the midst of thee? Then all the princes of the sea shall come down from their thrones, and lay away their robes, and put off their broidered garments: they shall clothe themselves with trembling; they shall sit upon the ground, and shall tremble at every moment, and be astonished at thee.*

**Eze 31:16** *I made the nations to shake at the sound of his fall, when I cast him down to hell with them that descend into the pit: and all the trees of Eden, the choice and best of Lebanon, all that drink water, shall be comforted in the nether parts of the earth*

**7** *Is this your joyous city, whose antiquity is of ancient days? her own feet shall carry her afar off to sojourn.*

Your homes inhabited by the rich and famous will be burnt to the ground, and what remains of your goods will be carted off to Babylon. During the 13-
year siege the Tyreanians sent women and children and the larger part of their wealth to other nations. The Babylonians were disappointed to find little or no loot inside the city. However, God rewarded them by giving them Egypt.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

Ecc 10:7 I have seen servants upon horses, and princes walking as servants upon the earth.

*Who hath taken this counsel against Tyre, the crowning city, whose merchants are princes, whose traffickers are the honourable of the earth?*

Eze 28:2-6 Son of man, say unto the prince of Tyrus, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because thine heart *is* lifted up, and thou hast said, I *am* a God, I sit in the seat of God, in the midst of the seas; yet thou *art* a man, and not God, though thou set thine heart as the heart of God: Behold, thou *art* wiser than Daniel; there is no secret that they can hide from thee: 4 With thy wisdom and with thine understanding thou hast gotten thee riches, and hast gotten gold and silver into thy treasures: Read: Eze 28:12-18

*The LORD of hosts hath purposed it, to stain the pride of all glory, and to bring into contempt all the honourable of the earth.*

He will bring every ruler down to the ground trembling; they will cast off their royal apparel and will be dressed in terror and dismay. They will not be able to stop trembling, they will be terrified and horror struck. The neighboring towns submitted to Babylonian and Grecian rule.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:**

Isa 10:33 Behold, the Lord, the LORD of hosts, shall lop the bough with terror: and the high ones of stature *shall be* hewn down, and the haughty shall be humbled.

Isa 14:24 The LORD of hosts hath sworn, saying, Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, *so* shall it stand:
Pass through thy land as a river, O daughter of Tarshish: there is no more strength.

Tyre, you are headed for the grave! You are going to everlasting ruins. They will sift thru your garbage dumps and seek to understand how you lived. They will draw a map of where you lived but no one will be living there. Today all that can be found are a few arches and baths, and some ruined walls, and collapsed towers and rubbish, there is nothing of value left at Tyre.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 23:12 And he said, Thou shalt no more rejoice, O thou oppressed virgin, daughter of Zidon: arise, pass over to Chittim; there also shalt thou have no rest.

Job 12:21 He poureth contempt upon princes, and weakeneth the strength of the mighty.

Hag 2:22 And I will overthrow the throne of kingdoms, and I will destroy the strength of the kingdoms of the heathen; and I will overthrow the chariots, and those that ride in them; and the horses and their riders shall come down, every one by the sword of his brother.

He stretched out his hand over the sea, he shook the kingdoms: the LORD hath given a commandment against the merchant city, to destroy the strong holds thereof.

Their countenance has changed, they are horrified and appalled and are aghast at their fate, this people was so panic-stricken that it showed it on their face. Doom has come to the people of Tyre. Alexander will capture 40,000 citizens of Tyre, 8,000 citizens will be slaughtered, 2,000 will be crucified and 30,000 will be sold as slaves. Is it any wonder that the scripture says that their kings shudder with horror and faces are distorted with fear.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Eze 31:16 I made the nations to shake at the sound of his fall, when I cast him down to hell with them that descend into the pit: and all the trees of Eden,
the choice and best of Lebanon, all that drink water, shall be comforted in the nether parts of the earth. Read: Eze 27:34-35; Eze 26:10; Psa 46:

12 And he said, Thou shalt no more rejoice, O thou oppressed virgin, daughter of Zidon: arise, pass over to Chittim; there also shalt thou have no rest.

God is saying, just “wait and see!” I will bring a ruthless nation against you and then we will see if you are as strong as God. The kings of Tyre had outwitted the Babylonians by moving their possessions off shore and building a fortified city on an island where they would be secure from any army on earth. Little did they know the ingenuity of Alexander the Great.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Eze 26:13-14 And I will cause the noise of thy songs to cease; and the sound of thy harps shall be no more heard. And I will make thee like the top of a rock: thou shalt be a place to spread nets upon; thou shalt be built no more: for I the LORD have spoken it, saith the Lord GOD.

13 Behold the land of the Chaldeans; this people was not, till the Assyrian founded it for them that dwell in the wilderness: they set up the towers thereof, they raised up the palaces thereof; and he brought it to ruin.

The prophet reminds them to look at what happened to Babylon. There’s nothing left of it. It has been turned into a desert, into a refuge for wild animals their palaces have become a shelter for animals.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Hab 1:6 For, lo, I raise up the Chaldeans, that bitter and hasty nation, which shall march through the breadth of the land, to possess the dwelling places that are not theirs. Read: Eze 26:7-21

14 Howl, ye ships of Tarshish: for your strength is laid waste.

A fleet of ships from Tarshish (Spain) came filled to the brim with merchandise and left with a load of cargo to other seaports. Now their source of exports
and trading has come to an end. Here is a brief description of how the final blow happened. Alexander the Great accomplished the reduction of Tyre. He built a causeway 200 feet wide and ½ mile long to the island. Thus turning the island into a peninsula scaled the wall and conquered the people. After a siege of 7 months the city was captured, 8,000 citizens were slaughtered, 2,000 crucified and 30,000 sold into slavery. Alexander performed a feet of military ingenuity by building a 2,000 ft, mole in the sea. To safeguard operations, mobile protective shields, so called ‘tortoises’ had to be employed. Despite this the construction was greatly hindered by and incessant hail of missiles. Meantime engineers on shore were building mobile protective towers many stories high. They were the highest siege towers ever used in the history of war. A drawbridge on front enabled a surprise attack to be made on the enemy’s wall. Each of them was one hundred and sixty feet high. When these monsters were prepared they were rolled toward the walls of Tyre. The impregnable Tyre met with fate at Alexander’s hand. According to prophecy Tyre was to be “broken in the heart of the sea.” When Alexander arrived Tyre was not on land but in the heart of the sea. Was there ever a prophecy fulfilled with such accuracy and detail.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:**

**Eze 27:25-30** The ships of Tarshish did sing of thee in thy market: and thou wast replenished, and made very glorious in the midst of the seas. Thy rowers have brought thee into great waters: the east wind hath broken thee in the midst of the seas. Thy riches, and thy fairs, thy merchandise, thy mariners, and thy pilots, thy calkers, and the occupiers of thy merchandise, and all thy men of war, that are in thee, and in all thy company which is in the midst of thee, shall fall into the midst of the seas in the day of thy ruin. The suburbs shall shake at the sound of the cry of thy pilots.

> And it shall come to pass in that day, that Tyre shall be forgotten seventy years, according to the days of one king: after the end of seventy years shall Tyre sing as an harlot.

Tyre will stage a comeback but it will be a long, long time and then it will be like the comeback of a worn out whore.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Jer 25:9-11** Behold, I will send and take all the families of the north, saith the LORD, and Nebuchadrezzar the king of Babylon, my servant, and will bring them against this land, and against the inhabitants thereof, and against all these nations round about, and will utterly destroy them, and make them an astonishment, and an hissing, and perpetual desolations. Moreover I will take from them the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride, the sound of the millstones, and the light of the candle. And this whole land shall be a desolation, and an astonishment; and these nations shall serve the king of Babylon seventy years.

16*Take an harp, go about the city, thou harlot that hast been forgotten; make sweet melody, sing many songs, that thou mayest be remembered.*

God is going to use some irony. This type of satire will be about a comeback from captivity after 70 years of hard labor however, she will be back to her old whoring trade, selling herself to the highest bidder, doing anything with anyone—promiscuous with anyone—for a fee—singing the same old ditty.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT
GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Jer 30:14** All thy lovers have forgotten thee; they seek thee not; for I have wounded thee with the wound of an enemy, with the chastisement of a cruel one, for the multitude of thine iniquity; because thy sins were increased. Read: **Pro 7:10-12**

17*And it shall come to pass after the end of seventy years, that the LORD will visit Tyre, and she shall turn to her hire, and shall commit fornication with all the kingdoms of the world upon the face of the earth.*

She served the Babylonians for 70 years afterwards she rebuilt Tyre on the Island. Isa. 23:15-17 “At that time Tyre will be forgotten for seventy years, the span of a king’s life. But at the end of these seventy years, it will happen to Tyre as in the song of the prostitute: “Take up a harp, walk through the city, O prostitute forgotten; play the harp well, sing many a song, so that you will be remembered.” At the end of seventy years, the LORD will deal with Tyre.
She will return to her hire as a prostitute and will ply her trade with all the kingdoms on the face of the earth.” Nebuchadnezzar made himself master of Tyre, after a siege of thirteen years continuance, and utterly destroyed the place, that is, the city which was on the continent; the ruins of which were afterwards called Palæ Tyrus, or Old Tyre. But, before it came to this extremity, the inhabitants had removed most of their effects onto an island about half a mile distant from the shore, and there built them a new city. And therefore, when Neabuchadnezzar entered that, which he had so long besieged, he found little there wherewith to reward his soldiers in the spoil of the place, which they had so long labored to take; and therefore wreaking his anger upon the buildings, and the few inhabitants who were left in them, he razed the whole town to the ground, and slew all he found therein. After this it never more recovered it former glory; but the city on the island became the Tyre that was afterward so famous by that name; the other on the continent never arising any higher than to become a village by the name of Old Tyre, as was before said. Prideaux’s Connection 1676 Page 127,

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Deu 23:18 Thou shalt not bring the hire of a whore, or the price of a dog, into the house of the LORD thy God for any vow: for even both these are abomination unto the LORD thy God. Read: Mic 3:11; Pro 13:22

18And her merchandise and her hire shall be holiness to the LORD: it shall not be treasured nor laid up; for her merchandise shall be for them that dwell before the LORD, to eat sufficiently, and for durable clothing.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITY DATA TO THE TEXT:

Her money was not stored in banks or deposited in swiss bank accounts or invested in the stock market but finally ended up in Persia where Esther comes to the throne and under Nehemiah and Ezra is used to reconstruct the temple and restore the city of Jerusalem.

Isa 60:6-7 The multitude of camels shall cover thee, the dromedaries of Midian and Ephah; all they from Sheba shall come: they shall bring gold and incense; and they shall shew forth the praises of the LORD. All the flocks
of Kedar shall be gathered together unto thee, the rams of Nebaioth shall minister unto thee: they shall come up with acceptance on mine altar, and I will glorify the house of my glory.

**Pro 13:22** A good *man* leaveth an inheritance to his children’s children: and the wealth of the sinner *is* laid up for the just.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 24

Jerusalem is fallen and Judea is ruined—God has overthrown the entire country—God has cut off head and tail. The leaders had lead them to ruin. They had transgressed the law, followed the abominations of the heathen and polluted the house of the Lord. They mocked and despised the prophets and went so far away that there was no remedy. The land was mourning and the forest was ashamed. They had changed the ordinances and broken the everlasting covenant they had defiled themselves with the nations that God had spued out. They sacrificed their sons and daughters unto devils—the land was polluted with blood—this people would not walk in God’s ways—they were cursed in the city and on their farms—cursed when they came in and cursed when they went out—therefore, they shall surely perish from the land. The comments in this chapter will provide more insight to this catastrophe.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 24

1Behold, the LORD maketh the earth empty, and maketh it waste, and turneth it upside down, and scattereth abroad the inhabitants thereof.

God is overturning cities—buckling the earth—emptying the land of its inhabitants.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 4:7 The lion is come up from his thicket, and the destroyer of the Gentiles is on his way; he is gone forth from his place to make thy land desolate; and thy cities shall be laid waste, without an inhabitant. Read: Isa 1:7-9; Isa 5:6; Isa 6:11-12; Isa 7:17-25; Isa 32:13-14; Deu 4:27
And it shall be, as with the people, so with the priest; as with the servant, so with his master; as with the maid, so with her mistress; as with the buyer, so with the seller; as with the lender, so with the borrower; as with the taker of usury, so with the giver of usury to him.

Everyone will fare alike—priest, people, master, slave, borrower or creditor.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Isa 9:14-17 Therefore the LORD will cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush, in one day. The ancient and honourable, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail. For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed. Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows: for every one is an hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still. Read: Isa 3:2-8; 2Ch 36:14-17; Hos 4:9

The land shall be utterly emptied, and utterly spoiled: for the LORD hath spoken this word.

God is going to strip the land of its inhabitants and lay bare all the earth for the Lord has spoken his word.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Lev 26:30-35 And I will destroy your high places, and cut down your images, and cast your carcases upon the carcases of your idols, and my soul shall abhor you. And I will make your cities waste, and bring your sanctuaries unto desolation, and I will not smell the savour of your sweet odours. And I will bring the land into desolation: and your enemies which dwell therein shall be astonished at it. And I will scatter you among the heathen, and will draw out a sword after you: and your land shall be desolate, and your cities waste. Then shall the land enjoy her sabbaths, as long as it lieth desolate, and ye be in your enemies’ land; even then shall the land rest, and enjoy her sabbaths. As long as it lieth desolate it shall rest; because it did not rest in your sabbaths, when ye dwelt upon it. Read: Deu 29:28; 2Ch 36:21
4The earth mourneth and fadeth away, the world languisheth and fadeth away, the haughty people of the earth do languish.

Conditions were so bad that the earth was crying out and having a fainting spell—the whole world was getting weaker.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 33:9 The earth mourneth and languisheth: Lebanon is ashamed and hewn down: Sharon is like a wilderness; and Bashan and Carmel shake off their fruits. Read: Jer 12:4; Hos 4:3

5The earth also is defiled under the inhabitants thereof; because they have transgressed the laws, changed the ordinance, broken the everlasting covenant.

These people have set aside Gods laws, defiled the land with pollution—it has been desecrated by those who live in it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Gen 6:11-13 The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence. And God looked upon the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth. And God said unto Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth. Read: Lev 18:24-28; Num 35:33; Psa 106:36-39

6Therefore hath the curse devoured the earth, and they that dwell therein are desolate: therefore the inhabitants of the earth are burned, and few men left.

Because the people had committed these abominations the earth was under a curse and its people were paying the price for their defilement.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 42:24-25 Who gave Jacob for a spoil, and Israel to the robbers? did not
the LORD, he against whom we have sinned? for they would not walk in his ways, neither were they obedient unto his law. Therefore he hath poured upon him the fury of his anger, and the strength of battle: and it hath set him on fire round about, yet he knew not; and it burned him, yet he laid it not to heart. Read: Deu 28:15-20; Deu 30:18-19; Jos 23:15-16; Mal 2:2

7The new wine mourneth, the vine languisheth, all the merryhearted do sigh.

Vines are withering—Grapes are dried up—the party folks are sighing.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 16:8 For the fields of Heshbon languish, and the vine of Sibmah: the lords of the heathen have broken down the principal plants thereof, they are come even unto Jazer, they wandered through the wilderness: her branches are stretched out, they are gone over the sea. Read: Isa 32:10; Hos 9:1-2; Joe 1:10-12

8The mirth of tabrets ceaseth, the noise of them that rejoice endeth, the joy of the harp ceaseth.

The shouts of the jubilant jet set has ceased—the mirth of tambourines and the harp is silent.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jer 25:10 Moreover I will take from them the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride, the sound of the millstones, and the light of the candle.

Hos 2:11 I will also cause all her mirth to cease, her feast days, her new moons, and her sabbaths, and all her solemn feasts.

9They shall not drink wine with a song; strong drink shall be bitter to them that drink it.
Strong drink is bitter because of the pour crops of grapes all of their liquor has a bad taste and their beer is sour.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

**Isa 5:11-12** Woe unto them that rise up early in the morning, *that* they may follow strong drink; that continue until night, *till* wine inflame them! And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine, are in their feasts: but they regard not the work of the LORD, neither consider the operation of his hands. Read: *Amo 6:5-7; Amo 8:10*

10*The city of confusion is broken down: every house is shut up, that no man may come in.*

Houses are boarded up—authorities have red tagged houses and put up no trespassing signs. No one is allowed to return to his home for his belongings.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:**

**Isa 32:14** Because the palaces shall be forsaken; the multitude of the city shall be left; the forts and towers shall be for dens for ever, a joy of wild asses, a pasture of flocks; Read: *Isa 34:13-15; 2Ki 25:9-10*

11*There is a crying for wine in the streets; all joy is darkened, the mirth of the land is gone.*

Riots are forming and there is an outcry for wine—joy has vanished like the morning dew—no one is laughing now—mobs are forming in the streets—good times has vanished and life is at it lowest ebb in years—everyone is longing for the good old days.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:**

**Lam 5:14-15** The elders have ceased from the gate, the young men from their musick. The joy of our heart is ceased; our dance is turned into mourning. Read: *Hos 7:14; Joe 1:15-17; Jer 48:33*
12 In the city is left desolation, and the gate is smitten with destruction.

All that is left in the city is ruin and rubble—hinges and bars on the gates are missing—people have moved away!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Jer 9:11 And I will make Jerusalem heaps, and a den of dragons; and I will make the cities of Judah desolate, without an inhabitant. Read: Isa 32:14; Lam 2:9

13 When thus it shall be in the midst of the land among the people, there shall be as the shaking of an olive tree, and as the gleaning grapes when the vintage is done.

The picture that the prophet leaves us is like an olive tree after it has been picked and there is a few stragglers on the uppermost boughs and someone climbs it and shakes it to get the few that are left or to change the metaphor it is like a grape vineyard that has been picked and there are a few grapes left for the gleaners (poor people). The land looked like a picked orchard or vineyard with not many people left.

Isa 1:9 Except the LORD of hosts had left unto us a very small remnant, we should have been as Sodom, and we should have been like unto Gomorrah. Read: Eze 6:8-11; Eze 9:4-6

14 They shall lift up their voice, they shall sing for the majesty of the LORD, they shall cry aloud from the sea.

The people that are left will sing and shout for joy—they will thank the lord for what remains and that they are not among the fatalities.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 12:1-2 And in that day thou shalt say, O LORD, I will praise thee: though thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me. Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the LORD
JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also is become my salvation. Read Isa 35:10-12

15 Wherefore glorify ye the LORD in the fires, even the name of the LORD God of Israel in the isles of the sea.

They had gone through the fire and had experienced traitors, treachery, deceivers, plunderers and robbers and still they praised the Lord and gave him glory.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Job 35:9-10 By reason of the multitude of oppressions they make the oppressed to cry: they cry out by reason of the arm of the mighty. But none saith, Where is God my maker, who giveth songs in the night;

Hab 3:17-18 Although the fig tree shall not blossom, neither shall fruit be in the vines; the labour of the olive shall fail, and the fields shall yield no meat; the flock shall be cut off from the fold, and there shall be no herd in the stalls: Yet I will rejoice in the LORD, I will joy in the God of my salvation.

16 From the uttermost part of the earth have we heard songs, even glory to the righteous. But I said, My leanness, my leanness, woe unto me! the treacherous dealers have dealt treacherously; yea, the treacherous dealers have dealt very treacherously.

From the places afar off—from the ends of the earth songs were hymned to the glorious God. But they were saying woe unto me, my leanness, my leanness. They were so miserable that they proclaimed that they were wretched and ruined. There was treachery everywhere.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 45:22-25 Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I am God, and there is none else. I have sworn by myself, the word is gone out of my mouth in righteousness, and shall not return, That unto me every knee shall bow, every tongue shall swear. Surely, shall one say, in the LORD have I righteousness and strength: even to him shall men come; and all that
are incensed against him shall be ashamed. In the LORD shall all the seed of Israel be justified, and shall glory. Read: **Isa 66:19-22; Psa 106:15; Jer 5:11; Jer 12:6**

17 **Fear, and the pit, and the snare, are upon thee, O inhabitant of the earth.**

They had gone through panic, pitfalls and plots. They were living in fear and terror and the captivity of hell every moment.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Lev 26:21-22** And if ye walk contrary unto me, and will not hearken unto me; I will bring seven times more plagues upon you according to your sins. I will also send wild beasts among you, which shall rob you of your children, and destroy your cattle, and make you few in number; and your high ways shall be desolate. Read: **Jer 48:43-44; Eze 14:21**

18 **And it shall come to pass, that he who fleeth from the noise of the fear shall fall into the pit; and he that cometh up out of the midst of the pit shall be taken in the snare: for the windows from on high are open, and the foundations of the earth do shake.**

The flood gates of heaven were opened and God was pouring out destruction upon the world and all its foundations were shaken beneath her and as the old saying is true they had got out of the frying pan into the fire.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:**

**Amo 5:19** As if a man did flee from a lion, and a bear met him; or went into the house, and leaned his hand on the wall, and a serpent bit him. Read: **Deu 32:23-26**

19 **The earth is utterly broken down, the earth is clean dissolved, the earth is moved exceedingly.**

The earth was bursting, cracking and shaken violently—probably from a tornado or an earthquake.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Jer 4:23-28 I beheld the earth, and, lo, it was without form, and void; and the heavens, and they had no light. I beheld the mountains, and, lo, they trembled, and all the hills moved lightly. I beheld, and, lo, there was no man, and all the birds of the heavens were fled. I beheld, and, lo, the fruitful place was a wilderness, and all the cities thereof were broken down at the presence of the LORD, and by his fierce anger. For thus hath the LORD said, The whole land shall be desolate; yet will I not make a full end. For this shall the earth mourn, and the heavens above be black: because I have spoken it, I have purposed it, and will not repent, neither will I turn back from it. Read: Nah 1:5; Isa 34:4-8

The earth shall reel to and fro like a drunkard, and shall be removed like a cottage; and the transgression thereof shall be heavy upon it; and it shall fall, and not rise again.

The earth was being shaken by the almighty like a drunkard staggering under the influence of hard liquor. It was rocking back and forth like a night-hut and swaying like a hammock. It was swaying like a tent in a storm or a palm tree in a hurricane.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Psa 107:27 They reel to and fro, and stagger like a drunken man, and are at their wits’ end.

Isa 1:8 And the daughter of Zion is left as a cottage in a vineyard, as a lodge in a garden of cucumbers, as a besieged city. Read: Hos 4:1-5

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the LORD shall punish the host of the high ones that are on high, and the kings of the earth upon the earth.

The high and mighty, the proud and arrogant and kings—none will escape when the Lord opens heavens windows of destruction.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 14:1-2 For the LORD will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land: and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob. And the people shall take them, and bring them to their place: and the house of Israel shall possess them in the land of the LORD for servants and handmaids: and they shall take them captives, whose captives they were; and they shall rule over their oppressors.
Read: Isa 34:2-8; Psa 149:8-9; Joe 3:9-14,19; Hag 2:22

22 And they shall be gathered together, as prisoners are gathered in the pit, and shall be shut up in the prison, and after many days shall they be visited.

God will see to it that they are rounded up—locked up—and tried—convicted—condemned—and visited with swift judgment.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Jos 10:22-23 Then said Joshua, Open the mouth of the cave, and bring out those five kings unto me out of the cave. And they did so, and brought forth those five kings unto him out of the cave, the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, and the king of Eglon.

23 Then the moon shall be confounded, and the sun ashamed, when the LORD of hosts shall reign in mount Zion, and in Jerusalem, and before his ancients gloriously.

The moon is shamefaced—the sun is red faced and humiliated—all the powers of the sky are disgraced.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Eze 32:7-8 And when I shall put thee out, I will cover the heaven, and make the stars thereof dark; I will cover the sun with a cloud, and the moon shall not give her light. All the bright lights of heaven will I make dark over thee, and set darkness upon thy land, saith the Lord GOD. Read: Isa 30:26; Isa 13:10; Joe 2:31; Rev 11:15; Dan 7:9-10; Dan 7:18; Dan 7:27
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 25

God wants us to put on the garment of praise and deck ourselves with the ornament of righteousness. We praise him for our redemption by the blood of Jesus who has now made us kings and priests. This chapter informs us that the enemies of Israel will lick the dust. God is our refuge from the storm, a shadow from the heat when the storms of life approach. No weapon that is formed against God’s people shall prevail. This chapter promises that death will be swallowed up in victory and tears will disappear. The prophet forecasts that the long awaited messiah will come. This chapter is waiting for you to digest.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 25

1O Lord, thou art my God; I will exalt thee, I will praise thy name; for thou hast done wonderful things; thy counsels of old are faithfulness and truth.

We should celebrate and extol our God for the wonderful miracle wonders that he has preformed. So certain and sure are his plans of old—plans formed long ago.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 61:10 I will greatly rejoice in the LORD, my soul shall be joyful in my God; for he hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels. Read: Rev 5:9-14; Isa 46:10

2For thou hast made of a city an heap; of a defenced city a ruin: a palace of strangers to be no city; it shall never be built.
Palaces now being lived in by animals—defenced cities turned into a pile of rubble—BIG CITY is now a non-city never to be rebuilt or lived in again.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Isa 14:23 I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water: and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the LORD of hosts. Read: Deu 13:16; Rev 18:2

Therefore shall the strong people glorify thee, the city of the terrible nations shall fear thee.

Fierce and barbarous people will fear and revere thee while strong people will be glorifying thee.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Isa 49:23-26 And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers: they shall bow down to thee with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the LORD: for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me. Shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered? But thus saith the LORD, Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered: for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children. And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood, as with sweet wine: and all flesh shall know that I the LORD am thy Saviour and thy Redeemer, the mighty One of Jacob.

For thou hast been a strength to the poor, a strength to the needy in his distress, a refuge from the storm, a shadow from the heat, when the blast of the terrible ones is as a storm against the wall.

Our God has been a shelter from the storms and a shade from the heat in troublous times. Our God takes care of the poor and provides a warm and dry place for them.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEAD EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Psa 35:10** All my bones shall say, LORD, who *is* like unto thee, which deliverest the poor from him that is too strong for him, yea, the poor and the needy from him that spoileth him?

**Psa 72:4** He shall judge the poor of the people, he shall save the children of the needy, and shall break in pieces the oppressor.

**Jas 2:5** Hearken, my beloved brethren, Hath not God chosen the poor of this world rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom which he hath promised to them that love him?

5Thou shalt bring down the noise of strangers, as the heat in a dry place; even the heat with the shadow of a cloud: the branch of the terrible ones shall be brought low.

God is going to silence the noise of strangers like a driving rain that melts down a wall made of mud. He will silence their shouts of victory and quell the songs of the proud and cruel. Their branches will be bent over till they touch the earth. God is going to shut-em-up!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 13:11** And I will punish the world for *their* evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible

**Isa 54:17** No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue *that* shall rise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This *is* the heritage of the servants of the LORD, and their righteousness *is* of me, saith the LORD.

6And in this mountain shall the LORD of hosts make unto all people a feast of fat things, a feast of wines on the lees, of fat things full of marrow, of wines on the lees well refined.
God is going to throw a feast—gourmet desserts—a seven course dinner of rich food—with goblets filled with wine.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 55:1** Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price. Read: **Isa 2:1-4; Pro 9:1-5**

**7And he will destroy in this mountain the face of the covering cast over all people, and the vail that is spread over all nations.**

The shadow of doom that was covering the face of his people will be lifted like a vail is lifted at the wedding feast.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:**

**Isa 60:1-3** Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the LORD is risen upon thee. For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the LORD shall arise upon thee, and his glory shall be seen upon thee. And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising.

**Luk 2:32** A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

**8He will swallow up death in victory; and the Lord GOD will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the rebuke of his people shall he take away from off all the earth: for the LORD hath spoken it.**

God is going to remove the mourning veil and the shroud of death covering his people like a mantle—he has sent the messiah to take away all tears and bring life and immortality to light through the gospel.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

**2Ti 1:10** But is now made manifest by the appearing of our Saviour Jesus
Christ, who hath abolished death, and hath brought life and immortality to light through the gospel:

**Rev 21:4** And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.

9And it shall be said in that day, Lo, this is our God; we have waited for him, and he will save us: this is the LORD; we have waited for him, we will be glad and rejoice in his salvation.

We exult and we rejoice that he has redeemed us and been our rock in the storm—This God of ours has arrived to save us—the one we’ve waited for—it’s celebration time!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

**Zep 3:14-20** Sing, O daughter of Zion; shout, O Israel; be glad and rejoice with all the heart, O daughter of Jerusalem. The LORD hath taken away thy judgments, he hath cast out thine enemy: the king of Israel, even the LORD, is in the midst of thee: thou shalt not see evil any more. In that day it shall be said to Jerusalem, Fear thou not: and to Zion, Let not thine hands be slack. The LORD thy God in the midst of thee is mighty; he will save, he will rejoice over thee with joy; he will rest in his love, he will joy over thee with singing. I will gather them that are sorrowful for the solemn assembly, who are of thee, to whom the reproach of it was a burden. Behold, at that time I will undo all that afflict thee: and I will save her that halteth, and gather her that was driven out; and I will get them praise and fame in every land where they have been put to shame. At that time will I bring you again, even in the time that I gather you: for I will make you a name and a praise among all people of the earth, when I turn back your captivity before your eyes, saith the LORD.

Read: **Rev 19:1-9; Isa 30:18-19**

10For in this mountain shall the hand of the LORD rest, and Moab shall be trodden down under him, even as straw is trodden down for the dunghill.

God’s hand of rest will rest in this mountain because he had chosen Zion as his resting place. Moab will be treated like straw tromped in the manure pile.
Lewis P. Hussell

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

**Psa 132:13-14** For the LORD hath chosen Zion; he hath desired it for his habitation. This is my rest for ever: here will I dwell; for I have desired it. Read: Num 24:17; Zec 9:9-10; Zec 9:9-10

11And he shall spread forth his hands in the midst of them, as he that swimmeth spreadeth forth his hands to swim: and he shall bring down their pride together with the spoils of their hands.

Moab may spread its hands and arms wide like a swimmer but he is going to sink—he will try to stay afloat but God is going to bring down his pride and haughtiness.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

**Isa 16:6** We have heard of the pride of Moab; he is very proud: even of his haughtiness, and his pride, and his wrath: but his lies shall not be so.

**Jer 48:29** We have heard the pride of Moab, (he is exceeding proud) his loftiness, and his arrogancy, and his pride, and the haughtiness of his heart. Read: Jer 50:31-32

12And the fortress of the high fort of thy walls shall he bring down, lay low, and bring to the ground, even to the dust.

Their fortifications will crumble—their mighty walls will come tumbling down—everything they have will be reduced to dust.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

**Isa 26:5** For he bringeth down them that dwell on high; the lofty city, he layeth it low; he layeth it low, even to the ground; he bringeth it even to the dust.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 26

\textit{In that day shall this song be sung in the land of Judah; We have a strong city; salvation will God appoint for walls and bulwarks.}

Close your eyes—take a deep breath—and you can hear the song that they are singing—God has brought us back to our home land—restored Zion and surrounded us with the walls of salvation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES

\textit{That make the case:}

\textbf{Rev 5:9} And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation; Read: \textit{Isa 27:1-2; Jdg 5:1-2; Rev 19:1-7; Eze 48:31-34}

\textit{Open ye the gates, that the righteous nation which keepeth the truth may enter in.}
The first verse of the song begins with the phrase that this nation is righteous—and that the gate keepers have removed the bar and swung open the gates to admit the keepers of truth.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Isa 60:11 Therefore thy gates shall be open continually; they shall not be shut day nor night; that men may bring unto thee the forces of the Gentiles, and that their kings may be brought. Read: Psa 118:20; Eze 48:31-34

3Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on thee: because he trusteth in thee.

This song progresses with the words that God will sustain a nation whose firm purpose is on the Lord and because it trusts in him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Isa 57:19-21 I create the fruit of the lips; Peace, peace to him that is far off, and to him that is near, saith the LORD; and I will heal him. But the wicked are like the troubled sea, when it cannot rest, whose waters cast up mire and dirt. There is no peace, saith my God, to the wicked.

Rom 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:

Eph 2:14 For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us;

4Trust ye in the LORD for ever: for in the LORD JEHOVAH is everlasting strength:

This song is about trusting—not in the arm of flesh—but in the everlasting strength of JEHOVAH.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 12:2 Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the LORD JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also is become my salvation.

2Ch 32:8 With him is an arm of flesh; but with us is the LORD our God to help us, and to fight our battles. And the people rested themselves upon the words of Hezekiah king of Judah.

5 For he bringeth down them that dwell on high; the lofty city, he layeth it low; he layeth it low, even to the ground; he bringeth it even to the dust.

Jehovah is able to bring down the high and mighty and bring a towering city to the ground and leave nothing but the dust.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Jer 50:31-32 Behold, I am against thee, O thou most proud, saith the Lord GOD of hosts: for thy day is come, the time that I will visit thee. And the most proud shall stumble and fall, and none shall raise him up: and I will kindle a fire in his cities, and it shall devour all round about him.

Rev 18:2 And he cried mightily with a strong voice, saying, Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and is become the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird.

6 The foot shall tread it down, even the feet of the poor, and the steps of the needy.

The scriptures picture the down trodden, poor and needy as tromping on the wicked. Paul said in Romans 16:20 “And the God of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly.”
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 37:25 I have digged, and drunk water; and with the sole of my feet have I dried up all the rivers of the besieged places. Read: Jos 10:24; Mal 4:3; Luk 1:51-53; Rom 16:20

"The way of the just is uprightness: thou, most upright, dost weigh the path of the just.

God is weighing us in the balances of justice and if we are upright and righteous then we will be victorious. When we read the history of the martyrs we see the righteous being weighed and were not found wanting.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 35:8 And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein.

1Ch 29:17 I know also, my God, that thou triest the heart, and hast pleasure in uprightness. As for me, in the uprightness of mine heart I have willingly offered all these things: and now have I seen with joy thy people, which are present here, to offer willingly unto thee.

"Yea, in the way of thy judgments, O LORD, have we waited for thee; the desire of our soul is to thy name, and to the remembrance of thee.

The key to this verse is that the righteous have waited for God to cause them to overcome and their motive was to see God glorified.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Job 23:10-12 But he knoweth the way that I take: when he hath tried me, I shall come forth as gold. My foot hath held his steps, his way have I kept, and not declined. Neither have I gone back from the commandment of his lips; I have esteemed the words of his mouth more than my necessary food."
Luk 1:6 And they were both righteous before God, walking in all the commandments and ordinances of the Lord blameless.

9With my soul have I desired thee in the night; yea, with my spirit within me will I seek thee early: for when thy judgments are in the earth, the inhabitants of the world will learn righteousness.

We may warm church pews but if our soul does not desire God and seek him then the judgment of God and his righteous acts will be providentially hindered.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Psa 130:6 My soul waiteth for the Lord more than they that watch for the morning: I say, more than they that watch for the morning. Read: Psa 63:1,6-7

10Let favour be shewed to the wicked, yet will he not learn righteousness: in the land of uprightness will he deal unjustly, and will not behold the majesty of the LORD.

The wicked show contempt for the grace of God. The God haters and Christ deniers of our day are showing contempt for the goodness toward his people.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 63:9-10 In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old. But they rebelled, and vexed his holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them.

Rom 2:5 But after thy hardness and impenitent heart treasurest up unto thyself wrath against the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God;

11LORD, when thy hand is lifted up, they will not see: but they shall see,
and be ashamed for their envy at the people; yea, the fire of thine enemies shall devour them.

The works of God are ignored by the wicked but the day will come when they will see and be ashamed but it will be too late for their salvation.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:**

Mic 5:9 Thine hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

Jer 5:3 O LORD, are not thine eyes upon the truth? thou hast stricken them, but they have not grieved; thou hast consumed them, but they have refused to receive correction: they have made their faces harder than a rock; they have refused to return.

12LORD, thou wilt ordain peace for us: for thou also hast wrought all our works in us.

True peace comes from the Lord. Jesus said: “my peace I give unto you.”

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:**

Joh 14:27 Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.

Deu 30:6 And the LORD thy God will circumcise thine heart, and the heart of thy seed, to love the LORD thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, that thou mayest live.

13O LORD our God, other lords beside thee have had dominion over us: but by thee only will we make mention of thy name.

They had been ruled over by the gods of Egypt, Assyria, and Babylonia but now the time has arrived when they can sing a new song.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Jos 23:7 That ye come not among these nations, these that remain among you; neither make mention of the name of their gods, nor cause to swear by them, neither serve them, nor bow yourselves unto them: Amo 6:10

14 They are dead, they shall not live; they are deceased, they shall not rise: therefore hast thou visited and destroyed them, and made all their memory to perish.

God had cut off their enemies and destroyed their gods and sent all their idols to the garbage dump. Their leaders had been destroyed and their posterity wiped out. The prophet sees the future demise of Israel’s enemies.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Psa 109:13 Let his posterity be cut off; and in the generation following let their name be blotted out. Read: Isa 51:12-13; Psa 106:28; Isa 14:19-22

15 Thou hast increased the nation, O LORD, thou hast increased the nation: thou art glorified: thou hadst removed it far unto all the ends of the earth.

God had given them a population explosion and they had been scattered unto the ends of the earth and were now coming back to their homeland.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Gen 13:16 And I will make thy seed as the dust of the earth: so that if a man can number the dust of the earth, then shall thy seed also be numbered.

Deu 10:22 Thy fathers went down into Egypt with threescore and ten persons; and now the LORD thy God hath made thee as the stars of heaven for multitude.

16 LORD, in trouble have they visited thee, they poured out a prayer when thy chastening was upon them.
The pronoun (they) refers to the Israelites who had been scattered to all nations and were being chastised for their unfaithfulness. In their distress they poured out a prayer unto God for deliverance.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Deu 4:29-30 But if from thence thou shalt seek the LORD thy God, thou shalt find him, if thou seek him with all thy heart and with all thy soul. When thou art in tribulation, and all these things are come upon thee, even in the latter days, if thou turn to the LORD thy God, and shalt be obedient unto his voice;

17Like as a woman with child, that draweth near the time of her delivery, is in pain, and crieth out in her pangs; so have we been in thy sight, O LORD.

The prophet likens their crying out to that of a woman having labor pains.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

1Th 5:3 For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape.

18We have been with child, we have been in pain, we have as it were brought forth wind; we have not wrought any deliverance in the earth; neither have the inhabitants of the world fallen.

This metaphor describes their crying out but instead of a birth it was nothing but false labor. All their years in exile they had not been delivered neither had the nations that had conquered them fallen.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Isa 37:3 And they said unto him, Thus saith Hezekiah, This day is a day of trouble, and of rebuke, and of blasphemy: for the children are come to the birth, and there is not strength to bring forth.
19Thy dead men shall live, together with my dead body shall they arise. Awake and sing, ye that dwell in dust: for thy dew is as the dew of herbs, and the earth shall cast out the dead.

Isaiah assures them that the dead shall arise from the graves.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Hos 13:14 I will ransom them from the power of the grave; I will redeem them from death: O death, I will be thy plagues; O grave, I will be thy destruction: repentance shall be hid from mine eyes.

Joh 5:28-29 Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in the which all that are in the graves shall hear his voice, And shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation. Read: Isa 25:8; 1Co 15:22-23; Act 24:15

20Come, my people, enter thou into thy chambers, and shut thy doors about thee: hide thyself as it were for a little moment, until the indignation be overpast.

The indignation is the ruling over them by brutal tyrants—the prophet tells them to go into their chamber and pray. (Jesus tells us to go to our closet and pray). He calls this a “little moment” as in one of our hymns “it won’t be very long.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Eze 11:16 Therefore say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Although I have cast them far off among the heathen, and although I have scattered them among the countries, yet will I be to them as a little sanctuary in the countries where they shall come.

Psa 27:5 For in the time of trouble he shall hide me in his pavilion: in the secret of his tabernacle shall he hide me; he shall set me up upon a rock. Read: Psa 31:20

21For, behold, the LORD cometh out of his place to punish the inhabitants
of the earth for their iniquity: the earth also shall disclose her blood, and shall no more cover her slain.

The blood of the people slain will bear testimony against these wicked tyrants and it will be like the blood of righteous Abel crying out against them. 

**Genesis 4:10**

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:**

**Mic 1:1-3** The word of the LORD that came to Micah the Morasthite in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, which he saw concerning Samaria and Jerusalem. Hear, all ye people; hearken, O earth, and all that therein is: and let the Lord GOD be witness against you, the Lord from his holy temple. For, behold, the LORD cometh forth out of his place, and will come down, and tread upon the high places of the earth.

**2Th 1:7-9** And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ: Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power;
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 27

The song continues from the previous chapter—picture Jerusalem as a ruin and the Jews as Babylonian slaves. Somehow they dust off the pages of Isaiah and flick through the writings and hope arises like smoke from a furnace. It’s hugging time—it’s all over—they’ve had a double discipline. God is flattening the mountains and filling the valleys and the cavalcade will be arriving soon. It’s planting time and reconstruction of their homes and cities from ruins. And as a bonus God is taking care of their enemies he is going to slay the dragon by the sea and punish leviathan the piercing serpent. Try the exposition for more detail.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 27

1In that day the LORD with his sore and great and strong sword shall punish leviathan the piercing serpent, even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that is in the sea.

The prophets often compared tyrannical kingdoms to serpents, dragons, and leviathan. Daniel saw four beasts that came out of the sea and were unlike each other (Dan 7:3-7). The first was like a lion and had eagle’s wings, the second was like a bear with three ribs in its mouth, the third was like a leopard with four wings and four heads, the fourth was diverse from all the others and had ten horns. (All four of these creatures represented four kingdoms, namely Babylon, Media-Persia, Greece and the Roman Empire.) Leviathan, Lion with eagle’s wings, bear with three ribs in its mouth, leopard with four wings and four heads, and a nondescript animal with seven heads and ten horns are symbolic creatures representing the arrogant, turbulent world governments in revolt against God. Wolves and lambs feeding together represent kingdoms at peace with each other. The prophets speak of lions, snakes and ferocious animals, such as a red dragon with seven heads and seven crowns as representing the kingdoms that were devoid of spiritual understanding.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 65:25 The wolf and the lamb shall feed together, and the lion shall eat straw like the bullock: and dust shall be the serpent’s meat. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, saith the LORD. Read: Psa 74:14; Psa 104:26; Isa 51:9; Isa 51:9; Eze 29:3; Jer 51:34; Rev 12:3; Rev 20:2

3In that day sing ye unto her, A vineyard of red wine.

The prophet paints a different picture from the destruction of leviathan (leviathan was Babylon) to Israel once again in their homeland planting a vineyard and raising grapes and making red wine.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 5:1 Now will I sing to my wellbeloved a song of my beloved touching his vineyard. My wellbeloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill: Read: Psa 80:8; Jer 2:21; Mat 21:33

3I the LORD do keep it; I will water it every moment: lest any hurt it, I will keep it night and day.

God promises to water the vineyard. (Israel, which he continually represents as a vineyard planted by the Lord.) He brought them out of Egypt, planted them in the Holy Land and removed the noxious weeds of heathenism and nurtured them day and night.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Eze 37:14 And shall put my spirit in you, and ye shall live, and I shall place you in your own land: then shall ye know that I the LORD have spoken it, and performed it, saith the LORD. Read: Deu 33:26-29; 1Sa 2:9; Isa 35:6-7

4Fury is not in me: who would set the briers and thorns against me in battle? I would go through them, I would burn them together.
The song continues with the words that God is no longer angry with her even if there are thistles and thorn bushes he will gather them out and burn them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 12:1 And in that day thou shalt say, O LORD, I will praise thee: though thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

Psa 85:3 Thou hast taken away all thy wrath: thou hast turned thyself from the fierceness of thine anger.

5 Or let him take hold of my strength, that he may make peace with me; and he shall make peace with me.

They were told to take hold of the strength that God offered them like a vine climbing a wall and clinging to the surface of the clay.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 25:4 For thou hast been a strength to the poor, a strength to the needy in his distress, a refuge from the storm, a shadow from the heat, when the blast of the terrible ones is as a storm against the wall. Read Eph 2:16-17; Col 1:20

6 He shall cause them that come of Jacob to take root: Israel shall blossom and bud, and fill the face of the world with fruit.

He is going to put down fresh roots and bloom like a fruitful tree and once again repopulate the land with their offspring.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 37:31 And the remnant that is escaped of the house of Judah shall again take root downward, and bear fruit upward:

Hos 14:5 I will be as the dew unto Israel: he shall grow as the lily, and cast forth his roots as Lebanon.
Zec 10:8-9 I will hiss for them, and gather them; for I have redeemed them: and they shall increase as they have increased. And I will sow them among the people: and they shall remember me in far countries; and they shall live with their children, and turn again. Read: Isa 49:20-23; Isa 60:22

Hath he smitten him, as he smote those that smote him? or is he slain according to the slaughter of them that are slain by him?

Even though God had been hard on them in exile he had been harder on his enemies. He blew them away like an east wind from the desert. A remnant of Israel returned from the nations where he had scattered her and he bound up her bruises and healed her but her enemies were brought to a full end.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jer 30:11-16 For I am with thee, saith the LORD, to save thee: though I make a full end of all nations whither I have scattered thee, yet will I not make a full end of thee: but I will correct thee in measure, and will not leave thee altogether unpunished. For thus saith the LORD, Thy bruise is incurable, and thy wound is grievous. There is none to plead thy cause, that thou mayest be bound up: thou hast no healing medicines. Read Jer 50:33-34

In measure, when it shooteth forth, thou wilt debate with it: he stayeth his rough wind in the day of the east wind.

There was some good news—Israel’s guilt was taken away—her sin was removed, she had survived the exile.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Jdg 10:10-16 And the children of Israel cried unto the LORD, saying, We have sinned against thee, both because we have forsaken our God, and also served Baalim. And the LORD said unto the children of Israel, Did not I deliver you from the Egyptians, and from the Amorites, from the children of Ammon, and from the Philistines? The Zidonians also, and the Amalekites, and the Maonites, did oppress you; and ye cried to me, and I delivered you out of their hand. Yet ye have forsaken me, and served other gods: wherefore I will deliver you no more. Go and cry unto the gods which ye have chosen;
let them deliver you in the time of your tribulation. And the children of Israel said unto the LORD, We have sinned: do thou unto us whatsoever seemeth good unto thee; deliver us only, we pray thee, this day. And they put away the strange gods from among them, and served the LORD: and his soul was grieved for the misery of Israel. Read **Psa 38:1; Jer 10:24**

**9**By this therefore shall the iniquity of Jacob be purged; and this is all the fruit to take away his sin; when he maketh all the stones of the altar as chalkstones that are beaten in sunder, the groves and images shall not stand up.

The evidence that Jacob is purged and all her sins forgiven are this: God is going to tear down the pagan altars stone by stone and the sex-and-religion shrines will be dismantled.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:**

2Ch 34:4 And they brake down the altars of Baalim in his presence; and the images, that were on high above them, he cut down; and the groves, and the carved images, and the molten images, he brake in pieces, and made dust of them, and strowed it upon the graves of them that had sacrificed unto them. Read **Isa 48:10; Pro 20:30; Eze 24:13; Mal 3:2-4; Isa 2:20-21; Isa 17:8**

**10**Yet the defenced city shall be desolate, and the habitation forsaken, and left like a wilderness: there shall the calf feed, and there shall he lie down, and consume the branches thereof.

Further evidence of God’s forgiveness will be the defenced cities of the heathen will be desolate with no one living there anymore—animals will lie down in their ruins and browse on the branches of their shrubbery.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:**

**Isa 32:13-14** Upon the land of my people shall come up thorns and briers; yea, upon all the houses of joy in the joyous city: Because the palaces shall be forsaken; the multitude of the city shall be left; the forts and towers shall be for dens for ever, a joy of wild asses, a pasture of flocks; Read: **Isa 6:11-12; Isa 64:10; Jer 26:18; Lam 2:5-9**
11When the boughs thereof are withered, they shall be broken off: the women come, and set them on fire: for it is a people of no understanding: therefore he that made them will not have mercy on them, and he that formed them will shew them no favour.

What was once lovely trees in their lawns are now nothing but dead branches that are gathered for fire wood. The prophet describes these people as a people with no understanding—a people with no sense of God. God will have nothing to do with them—no mercy from God—no favor from the almighty.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Joh 15:6 If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast them into the fire, and they are burned.

Isa 44:18 -19 They have not known nor understood: for he hath shut their eyes, that they cannot see; and their hearts, that they cannot understand. And none considereth in his heart, neither is there knowledge nor understanding to say, I have burned part of it in the fire; yea, also I have baked bread upon the coals thereof; I have roasted flesh, and eaten it: and shall I make the residue thereof an abomination? shall I fall down to the stock of a tree? Read: Deu 32:18-25

12And it shall come to pass in that day, that the LORD shall beat off from the channel of the river unto the stream of Egypt, and ye shall be gathered one by one, O ye children of Israel.

God’s anger will cause him to thresh from the Euphrates to the Nile and the children of Israel will be gathered like select grain.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Deu 30:3-4 That then the LORD thy God will turn thy captivity, and have compassion upon thee, and will return and gather thee from all the nations, whither the LORD thy God hath scattered thee. If any of thine be driven out unto the outmost parts of heaven, from thence will the LORD thy God gather thee, and from thence will he fetch thee:
For, lo, I will command, and I will sift the house of Israel among all nations, like as corn is sifted in a sieve, yet shall not the least grain fall upon the earth. Read: Isa 11:11-12

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the great trumpet shall be blown, and they shall come which were ready to perish in the land of Assyria, and the outcasts in the land of Egypt, and shall worship the LORD in the holy mount at Jerusalem.

It's homecoming for the exiles and refugees—returning from the long seventy year sentence for their sins against God—returning to Jerusalem to the holy mount to worship.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Isa 2:11-12 The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the LORD alone shall be exalted in that day.

12 And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

Zec 10:8-10 I will hiss for them, and gather them; for I have redeemed them: and they shall increase as they have increased. And I will sow them among the people: and they shall remember me in far countries; and they shall live with their children, and turn again. I will bring them again also out of the land of Egypt, and gather them out of Assyria; and I will bring them into the land of Gilead and Lebanon; and place shall not be found for them. Read: Hos 11:11; Zec 14:16
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 28

The prophet has a word for these beer-bellied winesops—someone tough is going to flatten their city. Priest and prophet alike were staggering under the influence—so besot with wine and strong drink that they can’t think straight or talk sense—living in their vomit they mock the prophet as a father trying to teach his children to talk. They are warned about being mockers and then he turns to the Stone that will be laid in Zion. The leaders of Zion will make a covenant with Hell and an agreement with death—all of this will be annulled by the Resurrection of Jesus. Keep reading for more information.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 28

‘Woe to the crown of pride, to the drunkards of Ephraim, whose glorious beauty is a fading flower, which are on the head of the fat valleys of them that are overcome with wine!

Ancient Samaria was situated on the top of a hill, and surrounded with a rich valley, and then a circle of other hills around it, looking down from the hill top to the surrounding valleys it looked like a wreath of flowers. Whoredoom and men lying drunk in the streets was an everyday occurrence.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Hos 6:10 I have seen an horrible thing in the house of Israel: there is the whoredom of Ephraim, Israel is defiled.

Hos 4:11 Whoredom and wine and new wine take away the heart.
Amo 2:8 And they lay themselves down upon clothes laid to pledge by every altar, and they drink the wine of the condemned in the house of their god.

2 Behold, the Lord hath a mighty and strong one, which as a tempest of hail and a destroying storm, as a flood of mighty waters overflowing, shall cast down to the earth with the hand.

The Lord is going to send his agent (Assyria) to batter down the city of Samaria—it will be like a mighty hailstorm or a surging flood—He will send a hurricane of havoc and their crown will fall from their head—when God finishes with them they will be beaten to the ground.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Isa 9:9-12 And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitant of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart, The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones: the sycomores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars. Therefore the LORD shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together; The Syrians before, and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

3 The crown of pride, the drunkards of Ephraim, shall be trodden under feet:

When Assyria finishes with them they will be hurled to the ground and tromped on by her mighty armed forces.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Lam 1:15 The Lord hath trodden under foot all my mighty men in the midst of me: he hath called an assembly against me to crush my young men: the Lord hath trodden the virgin, the daughter of Judah, as in a winepress.

Heb 10:29 Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace?
4And the glorious beauty, which is on the head of the fat valley, shall be a fading flower, and as the hasty fruit before the summer; which when he that looketh upon it seeth, while it is yet in his hand he eateth it up.

Samaria will look like a fading rose in late fall—her lush valleys and farmland will all be snatched away like an early fig is gobbled up before the season comes.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Mic 7:1 Woe is me! for I am as when they have gathered the summer fruits, as the grape gleanings of the vintage: there is no cluster to eat: my soul desired the firstripe fruit. Read: Hos 9:10, 11, 16

5In that day shall the LORD of hosts be for a crown of glory, and for a diadem of beauty, unto the residue of his people,

To the people who are left God himself will be their crown of glory—a royal diadem in his hand. The once forsaken land will be called Beulah land—the land will be married. Generations later when the Gentiles were called and kings saw the righteousness of God and his people were called by a new name (Christians) this scripture met its fulfillment. See Isaiah sixty two for a full description.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 62:3-4 Thou shalt also be a crown of glory in the hand of the LORD, and a royal diadem in the hand of thy God. Thou shalt no more be termed Forsaken; neither shall thy land any more be termed Desolate: but thou shalt be called Hephzibah, and thy land Beulah: for the LORD delighteth in thee, and thy land shall be married.

6And for a spirit of judgment to him that sitteth in judgment, and for strength to them that turn the battle to the gate.

He will give those who sit in the halls of justice a longing for justice and the brave and courageous soldiers who fight the battle and turn the tide in their favor at the gate or entrance to the city.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 32:15-16 Until the spirit be poured upon us from on high, and the wilderness be a fruitful field, and the fruitful field be counted for a forest. Then judgment shall dwell in the wilderness, and righteousness remain in the fruitful field. Read: Num 11:17; 1Ki 3:28

7But they also have erred through wine, and through strong drink are out of the way; the priest and the prophet have erred through strong drink, they are swallowed up of wine, they are out of the way through strong drink; they err in vision, they stumble in judgment.

Priest—prophet—judges have erred through strong drink—they are overpowered by alcohol—they stagger in their vomit—befuddled with liquor they make stupid errors and mistakes. These rulers were “out of the game” they were like an impotent old man unfit to rule. They were so swallowed up of wine that they were paralyzed and unqualified to rule.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 56:12 Come ye, say they, I will fetch wine, and we will fill ourselves with strong drink; and to morrow shall be as this day, and much more abundant.

Lev 10:9-10 Do not drink wine nor strong drink, thou, nor thy sons with thee, when ye go into the tabernacle of the congregation, lest ye die: it shall be a statute for ever throughout your generations: And that ye may put difference between holy and unholy, and between unclean and clean; princes eat in due season, for strength, and not for drunkenness!

Eze 44:21 Neither shall any priest drink wine, when they enter into the inner court.

Hos 4:11 Whoredom and wine and new wine take away the heart.

Mic 2:11 If a man walking in the spirit and falsehood do lie, saying, I will prophesy unto thee of wine and of strong drink; he shall even be the prophet of this people.
Psalm 107:27 They reel to and fro, and stagger like a drunken man, and are at their wits’ end.

For all tables are full of vomit and filthiness, so that there is no place clean.

Priest has vomited on the sacred tables and judges in their chambers—the smell and stench of vomit is everywhere.

Cross Reference Scriptures
That Attest to the Text:

Jeremiah 48:26 Make ye him drunken: for he magnified himself against the LORD: Moab also shall wallow in his vomit, and he also shall be in derision. Read: Habakkuk 2:15-16

Whom shall he teach knowledge? and whom shall he make to understand doctrine? them that are weaned from the milk, and drawn from the breasts.

These drunkards mock Isaiah by asking him if he thinks that they are babies just weaned from the milk—a child was weaned between the ages of two and five.

Cross Reference Scriptures
That Carry Weight Regarding the Text:

1Peter 2:2 As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby:

Matthew 11:25 At that time Jesus answered and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes.

For precept must be upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line; here a little, and there a little:

Just like a teaching a child—over and over again—Da, da, da, da, blah, blah, blah, blah. That’s a good girl…that’s a good boy. Here a little, and there a little.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Jer 25:3-8 From the thirteenth year of Josiah the son of Amon king of Judah, even unto this day, that is the three and twentieth year, the word of the LORD hath come unto me, and I have spoken unto you, rising early and speaking; but ye have not hearkened. And the LORD hath sent unto you all his servants the prophets, rising early and sending them; but ye have not hearkened, nor inclined your ear to hear. They said, Turn ye again now every one from his evil way, and from the evil of your doings, and dwell in the land that the LORD hath given unto you and to your fathers for ever and ever: And go not after other gods to serve them, and to worship them, and provoke me not to anger with the works of your hands; and I will do you no hurt. Yet ye have not hearkened unto me, saith the LORD; that ye might provoke me to anger with the works of your hands to your own hurt. Therefore thus saith the LORD of hosts; Because ye have not heard my words,

11For with stammering lips and another tongue will he speak to this people.

When they hear the Assyrian oppressors speaking it will sound like a baby talking to them—one syllable at a time—just like a parent trying to teach their children to understand.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Deu 28:49 The LORD shall bring a nation against thee from far, from the end of the earth, as swift as the eagle flieth; a nation whose tongue thou shalt not understand; Read: Jer 5:15; 1Co 14:21

12To whom he said, This is the rest wherewith ye may cause the weary to rest; and this is the refreshing: yet they would not hear.

He had told them that this is the place for weary souls to rest—they wouldn’t listen—they could have laid their burdens down and had rest in Beulah land but they wouldn’t hearken.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

2Ch 14:11 And Asa cried unto the LORD his God, and said, LORD, it is nothing with thee to help, whether with many, or with them that have no power: help us, O LORD our God; for we rest on thee, and in thy name we go against this multitude. O LORD, thou art our God; let not man prevail against thee. Read: Jer 6:16; Psa 81:11

13But the word of the LORD was unto them precept upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line; here a little, and there a little; that they might go, and fall backward, and be broken, and snared, and taken.

They didn’t like the word of God from their religious teachers so now they are getting a form of discipline from their foreign oppressors who will be teaching them their form of morals.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Hos 8:12 I have written to him the great things of my law, but they were counted as a strange thing. Read: Jer 23:36-39; Isa 6:9-10; Rom 11:9

14Wherefore hear the word of the LORD, ye scornful men, that rule this people which is in Jerusalem.

They were not only drunkards and fools but they are scornful men who mock the word of God—they have nothing but disdain and contempt for religion.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Pro 29:8 Scornful men bring a city into a snare: but wise men turn away wrath.

Hos 7:5 In the day of our king the princes have made him sick with bottles of wine; he stretched out his hand with scorners. Read: Isa 1:10; Pro 1:22; Act 13:41
Because ye have said, We have made a covenant with death, and with hell are we at agreement; when the overflowing scourge shall pass through, it shall not come unto us: for we have made lies our refuge, and under falsehood have we hid ourselves:

They had made a bargain with death—sold themselves to the Devil—but the overflowing scourge (Assyria) will pass through—their cover-up would be exposed. It looked like they had covered all the bases—thought of everything—sought the best advice of the experts—all set—hid from everything except God!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Jer 5:31 The prophets prophesy falsely, and the priests bear rule by their means; and my people love to have it so: and what will ye do in the end thereof?

Jer 14:13 Then said I, Ah, Lord GOD! behold, the prophets say unto them, Ye shall not see the sword, neither shall ye have famine; but I will give you assured peace in this place. Read: Jer 44:17; Eze 8:12; Eze 13:22; Amo 2:4

Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD, Behold, I lay in Zion for a foundation a stone, a tried stone, a precious corner stone, a sure foundation: he that believeth shall not make haste.

In answer to all of this the Lord says that a granite corner stone—the sure foundation of justice and faith will be laid in Zion and all who believe in it shall not be ashamed. If you trust in Jesus your life won’t topple. Trusting in a shantytown of lies and evolution will result in a flash flood washing you into destruction.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Psa 118:22 The stone which the builders refused is become the head stone of the corner.

Mat 21:42 Jesus saith unto them, Did ye never read in the scriptures, The
stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner: this is the Lord’s doing, and it is marvellous in our eyes?

**Act 4:11-12** This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.

**1Co 3:11** For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ. Read: **Eph 2:20; 1Pe 2:6**

**17** Judgment also will I lay to the line, and righteousness to the plummet: and the hail shall sweep away the refuge of lies, and the waters shall overflow the hiding place.

Jesus uses a level and a plum line to straighten things out—he is sweeping away the refuge of lies that people have trusted in and exposed their hiding place. Justice is his measuring tape which is squared and true. If you trust in him your life will not be shaken.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:**

**2Ki 21:13** And I will stretch over Jerusalem the line of Samaria, and the plummet of the house of Ahab: and I will wipe Jerusalem as a man wipeth a dish, wiping it, and turning it upside down.

**Amo 7:7** Thus he shewed me: and, behold, the Lord stood upon a wall made by a plumbline, with a plumbline in his hand.

**18** And your covenant with death shall be disannulled, and your agreement with hell shall not stand; when the overflowing scourge shall pass through, then ye shall be trodden down by it.

Here are some things that were to occur before the foundation stone was laid. 1. They were to make a covenant with death. 2. Their agreement with hell (sheol A.S.V.) shall not stand. 3. They were to make lies their refuge. 4. They would hide under falsehood. Let’s take a look at what happened when they made a bargain with death and how it was cancelled—how it was swept away like a flash flood. The Jews covenanted with Judas to betray Jesus. Mt. 26:15. They bore false witness before the Roman Governor. Mt. 26:59. They gave money to the soldiers to tell that the body of Jesus had been stolen. Mt 28:12.
Hell’s agreement was disannulled the third day on resurrection morning, Mt. 28:6. The overflowing scourge passed through like a flood washing away a house.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:**

**Dan 11:6** And in the end of years they shall join themselves together; for the king’s daughter of the south shall come to the king of the north to make an agreement: but she shall not retain the power of the arm; neither shall he stand, nor his arm: but she shall be given up, and they that brought her, and he that begat her, and he that strengthened her in these times. Read: Isa 7:7; Isa 8:10

19From the time that it goeth forth it shall take you: for morning by morning shall it pass over, by day and by night: and it shall be a vexation only to understand the report.

After the resurrection it was sheer panic—every report that came sent them into a tail-storm. Morning and night they lived in a reign of terror. Tremors and shaking when they saw dead men walking the streets—the earthquake and sun going down at noontime—they were awe-stricken at the temple curtain being rent from top to bottom—miracles, healings, and Pentecost reports sent shock-waves and distress like a nightmare throughout Jerusalem.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:**

**1Sa 3:11** And the LORD said to Samuel, Behold, I will do a thing in Israel, at which both the ears of every one that heareth it shall tingle.

**2Ki 21:12-13** Therefore thus saith the LORD God of Israel, Behold, I am bringing such evil upon Jerusalem and Judah, that whosoever heareth of it, both his ears shall tingle. And I will stretch over Jerusalem the line of Samaria, and the plummet of the house of Ahab: and I will wipe Jerusalem as a man wipeth a dish, wiping it, and turning it upside down.

**Hab 3:16** When I heard, my belly trembled; my lips quivered at the voice: rottenness entered into my bones, and I trembled in myself, that I might rest
in the day of trouble: when he cometh up unto the people, he will invade them with his troops. Read: **Luk 21:26**

**20**For the bed is shorter than that a man can stretch himself on it: and the covering narrower than that he can wrap himself in it.

No place to rest—no place to hide. Their cover-up was falling apart—they had wrapped themselves in prevarication and varnished the truth regarding the resurrection and in their perfidy trumped up a story about the body being stolen—the prophet’s picture of a bed too short and the cover too narrow is the best one-liner you will ever hear.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**Isa 59:5-6** They hatch cockatrice’ eggs, and weave the spider’s web: he that eateth of their eggs dieth, and that which is crushed breaketh out into a viper. Their webs shall not become garments, neither shall they cover themselves with their works: their works are works of iniquity, and the act of violence is in their hands.

**Isa 66:4** I also will choose their delusions, and will bring their fears upon them; because when I called, none did answer; when I spake, they did not hear: but they did evil before mine eyes, and chose that in which I delighted not.

**21**For the LORD shall rise up as in mount Perazim, he shall be wroth as in the valley of Gibeon, that he may do his work, his strange work; and bring to pass his act, his strange act.

The work of judgment and punishment against his own people is called a strange work. God broke forth as a breach of waters at Perazim and destroyed David’s enemies and again with a sound in the tops of the mulberry trees at Gibeon. (2Sam. 5:20; 1 Chron. 14:15). The laying of the foundation in Zion and the resurrection of Jesus from the dead is called a strange work and a strange act.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:**

**2Sa 5:20** And David came to Baalperazim, and David smote them there,
and said, The LORD hath broken forth upon mine enemies before me, as the breach of waters. Therefore he called the name of that place Baalperazim. Read: Jos 10:10-12

22Now therefore be ye not mockers, lest your bands be made strong: for I have heard from the Lord GOD of hosts a consumption, even determined upon the whole earth.

If these rulers don't stop their scoffing God will tighten the bands stronger and if this doesn't produce results then he has issued a warrant of destruction against the whole earth—it will be an international disaster.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

2Ch 36:16 But they mocked the messengers of God, and despised his words, and misused his prophets, until the wrath of the LORD arose against his people, till there was no remedy. Read: Jer 15:17; Jer 15:17; Act 13:40-41

23Give ye ear, and hear my voice; hearken, and hear my speech.

We need to listen carefully to the prophet’s message—underline it—underscore it—highlight it—and above all understand and believe it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 1:2 Hear, O heavens, and give ear, O earth: for the LORD hath spoken, I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against me.

Rev 2:7 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the tree of life, which is in the midst of the paradise of God.

24Doth the plowman plow all day to sow? doth he open and break the clods of his ground?

This is a rhetorical question—the answer is implied in the question. Is the farmer plowing and plowing and plowing all day continually and never harrowing and planting the seeds?
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Jer 4:3 For thus saith the LORD to the men of Judah and Jerusalem, Break up your fallow ground, and sow not among thorns.

Hos 10:11-12 And Ephraim is as an heifer that is taught, and loveth to tread out the corn; but I passed over upon her fair neck: I will make Ephraim to ride; Judah shall plow, and Jacob shall break his clods. Sow to yourselves in righteousness, reap in mercy; break up your fallow ground: for it is time to seek the LORD, till he come and rain righteousness upon you.

When he hath made plain the face thereof, doth he not cast abroad the fitches, and scatter the cummin, and cast in the principal wheat and the appointed barley and the rie in their place?

Does the farmer not scatter some of the seeds and plant others in rows? If the farmer knows to do all this then why is it that my people do not know how to break up the fallow ground and sow righteousness and seek the Lord?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Exo 9:31-32 And the flax and the barley was smitten: for the barley was in the ear, and the flax was binned. But the wheat and the rie were not smitten: for they were not grown up.

For his God doth instruct him to discretion, and doth teach him.

God had instructed man from Eden’s garden how to plant a field and raise crops, so also had he taught man moral and spiritual responsibility. He has even written eternity upon our heart so that none are without responsibility.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT
ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Job 35:11 Who teacheth us more than the beasts of the earth, and maketh us wiser than the fowls of heaven?

Dan 1:17 As for these four children, God gave them knowledge and skill in
all learning and wisdom: and Daniel had understanding in all visions and dreams.

27 For the fitches are not threshed with a threshing instrument, neither is a cart wheel turned about upon the cummin; but the fitches are beaten out with a staff, and the cummin with a rod.

Different grains require a different mode of threshing. Nuts require the shell to be removed by crushing while strawberries require handing delicately.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Amo 1:3 Thus saith the LORD; For three transgressions of Damascus, and for four, I will not turn away the punishment thereof; because they have threshed Gilead with threshing instruments of iron:

28 Bread corn is bruised; because he will not ever be threshing it, nor break it with the wheel of his cart, nor bruise it with his horsemen.

We know that some grains require a grinding wheel and other grains require little or no grinding.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Amo 1:3 Thus saith the LORD; For three transgressions of Damascus, and for four, I will not turn away the punishment thereof; because they have threshed Gilead with threshing instruments of iron:

Joh 12:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except a corn of wheat fall into the ground and die, it abideth alone: but if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit.

29 This also cometh forth from the LORD of hosts, which is wonderful in counsel, and excellent in working.

This counsel or advice is from the Lord who has given the farmer wisdom. He has taught us the how, when and where regarding crops.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Job 5:9** Which doeth great things and unsearchable; marvellous things without number:

**Job 37:23** Touching the Almighty, we cannot find him out: he is excellent in power, and in judgment, and in plenty of justice: he will not afflict.
Ariel is about to experience a blood bath. They will be encircled with an army from Assyria—the enemy will build forts and blockade the city. It will be a swarm of invaders that encamp Jerusalem but they will be scattered like chaff. Their voice will be like a ghost of the past and they will lie buried in the ground. All of the above will happen suddenly. Assyria will come with an appetite for war and will vanish like a dream. When this happens it will befuddle your wits—you will be bamboozled and amazed. Read 2 Kings 32 where all these events happened. But Israel’s eyes were closed and their ears were muffled—the events that were to happen were like a sealed book to them. When God brings the events to fruition they will be astonished and amazed. God will turn Lebanon into a fruitful forest again. The blind will see God’s plans—the humbled and poor rejoice—the tyrant (Sennacherib) will vanish—scoffers cease—evil doers will be killed. All the above and more are waiting for your understanding in the commentary section.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 29

1Woe to Ariel, to Ariel, the city where David dwelt! add ye year to year; let them kill sacrifices.

A woe is pronounced against the city where David dwelt. This city was better known as Jerusalem. A city where a cycle of festivals and pilgrims visit year by year.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

2Sa 5:9 So David dwelt in the fort, and called it the city of David. And David built round about from Millo and inward.
Hos 5:6 They shall go with their flocks and with their herds to seek the LORD; but they shall not find him; he hath withdrawn himself from them.

Yet I will distress Ariel, and there shall be heaviness and sorrow: and it shall be unto me as Ariel.

God is going to bring heavy judgment upon “Ariel.” “Ariel” means an altar covered with blood.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Isa 10:12-16 Wherefore it shall come to pass, that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon mount Zion and on Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks. For he saith, By the strength of my hand I have done it, and by my wisdom; for I am prudent: and I have removed the bounds of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man: And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people: and as one gathereth eggs that are left, have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped. Shall the axe boast itself against him that heweth therewith? or shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? as if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself, as if it were no wood. Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of hosts, send among his fat ones leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire. Read: Eze 24:1-7,21

And I will camp against thee round about, and will lay siege against thee with a mount, and I will raise forts against thee.

They will be encircled with an armed camp, a ring of outposts and siege works and a blockade. The enemy will build forts around the city to destroy it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

2Ki 18:17 And the king of Assyria sent Tartan and Rabsaris and Rabshakeh from Lachish to king Hezekiah with a great host against Jerusalem. And they went up and came to Jerusalem. And when they were come up, they came and
stood by the conduit of the upper pool, which is in the highway of the fuller’s field. Read: 2Ki 19:32; 2Ki 24:11-12; 2Ki 25:1-4; Eze 21:22

4And thou shalt be brought down, and shalt speak out of the ground, and thy speech shall be low out of the dust, and thy voice shall be, as of one that hath a familiar spirit, out of the ground, and thy speech shall whisper out of the dust.

A swarm of invaders will come upon you and they will be scattered like chaff in the wind. Their voice will be like a ghost of the past and they will lie buried in the ground.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Psa 76:5-6 The stouthearted are spoiled, they have slept their sleep: and none of the men of might have found their hands. At thy rebuke, O God of Jacob, both the chariot and horse are cast into a dead sleep.

Isa 3:8 For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen: because their tongue and their doings are against the LORD, to provoke the eyes of his glory. Read: Isa 2:20-21

5Moreover the multitude of thy strangers shall be like small dust, and the multitude of the terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away: yea, it shall be at an instant suddenly.

The multitude of their enemies will be like dust in number and they will come suddenly.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 17:13 The nations shall rush like the rushing of many waters: but God shall rebuke them, and they shall flee far off, and shall be chased as the chaff of the mountains before the wind, and like a rolling thing before the whirlwind.

Psa 76:5-6 The stouthearted are spoiled, they have slept their sleep: and none of the men of might have found their hands. At thy rebuke, O God of Jacob, both the chariot and horse are cast into a dead sleep.
6Thou shalt be visited of the LORD of hosts with thunder, and with earthquake, and great noise, with storm and tempest, and the flame of devouring fire.

They will get an unpleasant visit from the Lord of hosts. It will come like a raging storm and devouring fire.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 30:30 And the LORD shall cause his glorious voice to be heard, and shall shew the lighting down of his arm, with the indignation of his anger, and with the flame of a devouring fire, with scattering, and tempest, and hailstones.

7And the multitude of all the nations that fight against Ariel, even all that fight against her and her munition, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision.

Those who besiege her—all the baggage-trains—the entrenchments shall fade like a dream and vanish like a vision.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 37:36 Then the angel of the LORD went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred and fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses.

Isa 41:11-12 Behold, all they that were incensed against thee shall be ashamed and confounded: they shall be as nothing; and they that strive with thee shall perish. Thou shalt seek them, and shalt not find them, even them that contended with thee: they that war against thee shall be as nothing, and as a thing of nought.

8It shall even be as when an hungry man dreameth, and, behold, he eateth; but he awaketh, and his soul is empty: or as when a thirsty man dreameth, and, behold, he drinketh; but he awaketh, and, behold, he is faint, and his soul hath appetite: so shall the multitude of all the nations be, that fight against mount Zion.
They will come with an appetite for war but will leave without a conquest.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES FOR OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

2Ki 19:35-37 And it came to pass that night, that the angel of the LORD went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians an hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses. So Sennacherib king of Assyria departed, and went and returned, and dwelt at Nineveh. And it came to pass, as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, that Adrammelech and Sharezer his sons smote him with the sword: and they escaped into the land of Armenia. And Esarhaddon his son reigned in his stead.

Stay yourselves, and wonder; cry ye out, and cry: they are drunken, but not with wine; they stagger, but not with strong drink.

It will fuddle your wits—you will be bamboozled and amazed—you won’t believe it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Hab 1:5 Behold ye among the heathen, and regard, and wonder marvellously: for I will work a work in your days, which ye will not believe, though it be told you.

Isa 19:14 The LORD hath mingled a perverse spirit in the midst thereof: and they have caused Egypt to err in every work thereof, as a drunken man staggereth in his vomit.

Isa 51:21-23 Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, but not with wine: Thus saith thy Lord the LORD, and thy God that pleadeth the cause of his people, Behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, even the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again: But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; which have said to thy soul, Bow down, that we may go over: and thou hast laid thy body as the ground, and as the street, to them that went over.

For the LORD hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep, and
hath closed your eyes: the prophets and your rulers, the seers hath he covered.

The Lord poured out a spirit of lethargy and closed their eyes and muffled their ears to the events ahead.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

**1Sa 26:12** So David took the spear and the cruse of water from Saul’s bolster; and they gat them away, and no man saw it, nor knew it, neither awaked: for they were all asleep; because a deep sleep from the LORD was fallen upon them.

**Psa 69:23** Let their eyes be darkened, that they see not; and make their loins continually to shake.

**Isa 44:18** They have not known nor understood: for he hath shut their eyes, that they cannot see; and their hearts, that they cannot understand.

**Eze 14:9** And if the prophet be deceived when he hath spoken a thing, I the LORD have deceived that prophet, and I will stretch out my hand upon him, and will destroy him from the midst of my people Israel.

**2Th 2:9-11** Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie:

11 And the vision of all is become unto you as the words of a book that is sealed, which men deliver to one that is learned, saying, Read this, I pray thee: and he saith, I cannot; for it is sealed:

The events to come was like giving a book to the illiterate and asking them to read it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

**Isa 8:16** Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.
Dan 12:9-10 And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end. Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand. Read: Mat 11:25; Mat 13:11; Mat 16:17

12And the book is delivered to him that is not learned, saying, Read this, I pray thee: and he saith, I am not learned.

The events to come was like giving a book to the illiterate and asking them to read.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

 Isa 29:18 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness.

 Jer 5:4 Therefore I said, Surely these are poor; they are foolish: for they know not the way of the LORD, nor the judgment of their God. Read: Hos 4:6; Joh 7:15-17

13Wherefore the Lord said, Forasmuch as this people draw near me with their mouth, and with their lips do honour me, but have removed their heart far from me, and their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men:

This people honored God with lip service but their heart and minds were far removed from him. Their fear and reverence was routine observance of human precepts and commandments of men.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

 Isa 48:1-2 Hear ye this, O house of Jacob, which are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, which swear by the name of the LORD, and make mention of the God of Israel, but not in truth, nor in righteousness. For they call themselves of the holy city, and stay themselves upon the God of Israel; The LORD of hosts is his name. Read: Jer 3:10; Eze 33:31; Mar 7:6-7
Therefore, behold, I will proceed to do a marvellous work among this people, even a marvellous work and a wonder: for the wisdom of their wise men shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent men shall be hid.

God is going to deal with them in such a way that it will astonish them and leave them in amazement. Even wise and clever men will have their wisdom eclipsed.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

**Hab 1:5** Behold ye among the heathen, and regard, and wonder marvellously: for I will work a work in your days, *which ye* will not believe, though it be told you. Read: *Isa 19:11-14*

**15**Woe unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the LORD, and their works are in the dark, and they say, Who seeth us? and who knoweth us?

Some tried to hide their secret plans and works from the Lord thinking that they were hidden from his view.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:**

**Psa 139:1-2** O LORD, thou hast searched me, and known *me*. Thou knowest my downsitting and mine uprising, thou understandest my thought afar off. Read; *Eze 8:12; Rev 2:23*

**16**Surely your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter’s clay: for shall the work say of him that made it, He made me not? or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, He had no understanding?

How stupid can they be? Can clay talk back to the potter and say, “you never made me?” Clever evolutionists are walking in the same path.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Act 17:6** And when they found them not, they drew Jason and certain brethren unto the rulers of the city, crying, These that have turned the world upside down are come hither also; Read: **Jer 18:1-10**

**17**Is it not yet a very little while, and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field, and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest?

Very soon Lebanon will turn into a forest—a lush fertile forest.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 35:1-2** The wilderness and the solitary place shall be glad for them; and the desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose. It shall blossom abundantly, and rejoice even with joy and singing: the glory of Lebanon shall be given unto it, the excellency of Carmel and Sharon, they shall see the glory of the LORD, and the excellency of our God. Read: **Isa 41:19; Isa 55:13**

**18**And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness.

Out of the gloom and darkness of captivity the blind will see my plans.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Isa 42:16-18** And I will bring the blind by a way that they knew not; I will lead them in paths that they have not known: I will make darkness light before them, and crooked things straight. These things will I do unto them, and not forsake them. They shall be turned back, they shall be greatly ashamed, that trust in graven images, that say to the molten images, Ye are our gods. Hear, ye deaf; and look, ye blind, that ye may see. Read: **Deu 29:4; Mat 13:14-16**

**19**The meek also shall increase their joy in the LORD, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.
Those who have been humbled will obtain fresh joy and the poor shall rejoice and exult the Holy One of Israel.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:**

**Psalm 37:11** But the meek shall inherit the earth; and shall delight themselves in the abundance of peace.

**Isaiah 66:2** For all those things hath mine hand made, and all those things have been, saith the LORD: but to this man will I look, even to him that is poor and of a contrite spirit, and trembleth at my word.

"For the terrible one is brought to nought, and the scorners are consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off:

The ruthless bully tyrant will vanish—scoffers will cease—and evil doers will be killed.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:**

**Isaiah 25:4-5** For thou hast been a strength to the poor, a strength to the needy in his distress, a refuge from the storm, a shadow from the heat, when the blast of the terrible ones is as a storm against the wall. Thou shalt bring down the noise of strangers, as the heat in a dry place; even the heat with the shadow of a cloud: the branch of the terrible ones shall be brought low. Read: **Isaiah 28:14; Micah 2:1**

"That make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reprovest in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of nought.

These folks made a man an offender by a mere word. (Political right speech). They laid a trap to destroy good men by mere legal quibble. All these shall be exterminated.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**Luke 11:54** Laying wait for him, and seeking to catch something out of his mouth, that they might accuse him.
Then said they, Come, and let us devise devices against Jeremiah; for the law shall not perish from the priest, nor counsel from the wise, nor the word from the prophet. Come, and let us smite him with the tongue, and let us not give heed to any of his words. Read: Eze 13:19

Therefore thus saith the LORD, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob, Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

This message is from the God of Jacob. Jacob will not be ashamed nor does his face grow pale from disappointment.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

Isa 41:8-10 But thou, Israel, art my servant, Jacob whom I have chosen, the seed of Abraham my friend. Thou whom I have taken from the ends of the earth, and called thee from the chief men thereof, and said unto thee, Thou art my servant; I have chosen thee, and not cast thee away. Fear thou not; for I am with thee: be not dismayed; for I am thy God: I will strengthen thee; yea, I will help thee; yea, I will uphold thee with the right hand of my righteousness. Read: Isa 45:17

But when he seeth his children, the work of mine hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

When they see God’s deliverance from captivity they will stand in awe and reverence the God of Israel. Israel will experience a surging birth rate and a booming economy.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORESE THE TEXT:

Isa 43:21 This people have I formed for myself; they shall shew forth my praise.

Lev 10:3 Then Moses said unto Aaron, This is it that the LORD spake, saying, I will be sanctified in them that come nigh me, and before all the people I will be glorified. And Aaron held his peace.
24 They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.

The hard-headed obstinate—fault finders and murmurs’, whose minds are confused will gain understanding and receive instruction.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

1Ti 1:13-15 Who was before a blasphemer, and a persecutor, and injurious: but I obtained mercy, because I did it ignorantly in unbelief. And the grace of our Lord was exceeding abundant with faith and love which is in Christ Jesus. This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptation, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners; of whom I am chief. Read: Isa 28:7; Luk 15:17-19
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 30

They had vexed God’s Holy Spirit and turned to Egypt for help. Foreign aid was sent to Egypt and when Pharaoh’s army came to help defend Jerusalem they simply returned to Egypt—their help amounted to no help—she was a “do nothing” utterly useless helper. The prophet calls Israel a lying faithless brood of evildoers who tried to get their prophets to prophesy delusions. Every effort was made to shut the prophets up. Their disposal of the word caused God to let this bunch of reprobates go into captivity. War came and they were left like a flag pole without a flag. However, God is still holding out hope for them when they come to their senses. While in exile they will eat the bread of adversity and drink the water of affliction. Finally repentance takes hold and they throw away their images of silver and get right with God. He restores them to their homeland and blesses them beyond their dreams.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 30

1Woe to the rebellious children, saith the LORD, that take counsel, but not of me; and that cover with a covering, but not of my spirit, that they may add sin to sin:

The scriptures make it plain that this people had from day one been rebellious. This stiff-necked self-willed generation of people who resisted the Holy Ghost was bent on a plan that was not sanctioned by the Eternal—they were weaving a treaty with Egypt.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Act 7:51 Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye. Read: Isa 30:9; Isa 63:10; Deu 9:24; Eze 3:9; 1Ch 10:13-14
That walk to go down into Egypt, and have not asked at my mouth; to strengthen themselves in the strength of Pharaoh, and to trust in the shadow of Egypt!

Trusting in Egypt for military aid against the Assyrians was as futile as the U.S. looking to the U.N. We have the words “IN GOD WE TRUST” on our coins, but reluctantly we seek help from other sources.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORESE THE TEXT:

Isa 31:1 Woe to them that go down to Egypt for help; and stay on horses, and trust in chariots, because they are many; and in horsemen, because they are very strong; but they look not unto the Holy One of Israel, neither seek the LORD! Read: Isa 36:6; Deu 28:68; Jos 9:14

3Therefore shall the strength of Pharaoh be your shame, and the trust in the shadow of Egypt your confusion.

Putting their trust in Egypt will bring disappointment and humiliation. Egypt was the reluctant dragon or the crockadile of the Nile.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 30:5-7 They were all ashamed of a people that could not profit them, nor be an help nor profit, but a shame, and also a reproach. The burden of the beasts of the south: into the land of trouble and anguish, from whence come the young and old lion, the viper and fiery flying serpent, they will carry their riches upon the shoulders of young asses, and their treasures upon the bunches of camels, to a people that shall not profit them. For the Egyptians shall help in vain, and to no purpose: therefore have I cried concerning this, Their strength is to sit still. Read: Isa 20:5; Jer 37:5-9; Rom 10:11

4For his princes were at Zoan, and his ambassadors came to Hanes.

Zoan in the North and Hanes in the South—their help will amount to nothing. They were trusting in a broken reed. We learned in chapter 19 that her princes were fools.
Hos 7:11-12 Ephraim also is like a silly dove without heart: they call to Egypt, they go to Assyria. When they shall go, I will spread my net upon them; I will bring them down as the fowls of the heaven; I will chastise them, as their congregation hath heard. Read: Isa 19:11; Eze 30:18; Isa 20:5-6; Isa 31:1-3

5They were all ashamed of a people that could not profit them, nor be an help nor profit, but a shame, and also a reproach.

The leaders that had looked for help but found none would be ashamed that they trusted in a people that brought them nothing but disappointment. The Egyptians were all a sorry lot.

Jer 2:36 Why gaddest thou about so much to change thy way? thou also shalt be ashamed of Egypt, as thou wast ashamed of Assyria. Read: Isa 31:1-3

6The burden of the beasts of the south: into the land of trouble and anguish, from whence come the young and old lion, the viper and fiery flying serpent, they will carry their riches upon the shoulders of young asses, and their treasures upon the bunches of camels, to a people that shall not profit them.

The donkeys and camels were all laden with foreign aid—treasures to pay for Egypt’s help—trusting in Egypt was the ruin of Israel.

Deu 8:15 Who led thee through that great and terrible wilderness, wherein were fiery serpents, and scorpions, and drought, where there was no water; who brought thee forth water out of the rock of flint; Read: Jer 11:4; Num 21:6; 2Ch 28:21-23
For the Egyptians shall help in vain, and to no purpose: therefore have I cried concerning this, Their strength is to sit still.

“To Egypt, whose help is utterly useless. Therefore I call her Rahab the Do-Nothing.” (NIV)

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 31:3 Now the Egyptians are men, and not God; and their horses flesh, and not spirit. When the LORD shall stretch out his hand, both he that helpeth shall fall, and he that is holpen shall fall down, and they all shall fail together.

Lam 3:26 It is good that a man should both hope and quietly wait for the salvation of the LORD.

8Now go, write it before them in a table, and note it in a book, that it may be for the time to come for ever and ever:

This writing still stands as an indictment of Israel’s unbelief. God does not leave himself without witness. In time to come they will claim that “you never told us.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Job 19:23-24 Oh that my words were now written! oh that they were printed in a book! That they were graven with an iron pen and lead in the rock for ever! Read: Isa 8:1; Jer 51:60; Hab 2:2

9That this is a rebellious people, lying children, children that will not hear the law of the LORD:

This rebellious—apt at deceiving—faithless brood—seed of evildoers they wanted nothing to do with the prophet’s word.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 1:4 Ah sinful nation, a people laden with iniquity, a seed of evildoers,
children that are corrupters: they have forsaken the LORD, they have provoked the Holy One of Israel unto anger, they are gone away backward.

**Deu 31:27** For I know thy rebellion, and thy stiff neck: behold, while I am yet alive with you this day, ye have been rebellious against the LORD; and how much more after my death?

10**Which say to the seers, See not; and to the prophets, Prophesy not unto us right things, speak unto us smooth things, prophesy deceits:**

They wanted the prophets to prophesy delusion—they preferred lies to truth and sought every means to shut them up. They plotted assassinations, prisons and death to silence them.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

1Ki 21:20 And Ahab said to Elijah, Hast thou found me, O mine enemy? And he answered, I have found thee: because thou hast sold thyself to work evil in the sight of the LORD. Read: 1Ki 22:8; 2Ch 24:19; Jer 26:20-23

11**Get you out of the way, turn aside out of the path, cause the Holy One of Israel to cease from before us.**

Since they despised the word of God and put their trust in wile and guile, God will give them over to a reprobate mind to do as they pleased and send a foreign nation to feed them on the bread of adversity and the water of affliction.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

Isa 29:21 That make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of nought.

Amo 7:13 But prophesy not again any more at Bethel: for it is the king’s chapel, and it is the king’s court. Read: Rom 1:28-30

12**Wherefore thus saith the Holy One of Israel, Because ye despise this word, and trust in oppression and perverseness, and stay thereon:**
The prophets spared no words in describing their perverted mind set.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:**

**Isa 5:24** Therefore as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, _so_ their root shall be as rottenness, and their blossom shall go up as dust: because they have cast away the law of the LORD of hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel. Read: 2Sa 12:9-10; Isa 28:15

**13**Therefore this iniquity shall be to you as a breach ready to fall, swelling out in a high wall, whose breaking cometh suddenly at an instant.

Isaiah warns them that the calamity that is about to come upon them is like a bulging wall that will come crashing down upon them. In his fury and anger God will come crashing down on them.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:**

**1Ki 20:30** But the rest fled to Aphek, into the city; and _there_ a wall fell upon twenty and seven thousand of the men _that were_ left. And Benhadad fled, and came into the city, into an inner chamber. Read: Eze 13:10-15; Pro 29:1

**14**And he shall break it as the breaking of the potters’ vessel that is broken in pieces; he shall not spare: so that there shall not be found in the bursting of it a sherd to take fire from the hearth, or to take water withal out of the pit.

When God finishes with them, they will be like a broken pitcher—not one piece big enough to carry coals from a fireplace or dip water from a spring.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:**

**Psa 2:9** Thou shalt break them with a rod of iron; thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter’s vessel. Read: Jer 19:10-11; Deu 29:20

**15**For thus saith the Lord GOD, the Holy One of Israel; In returning
and rest shall ye be saved; in quietness and in confidence shall be your strength: and ye would not.

God sought repentance and returning to him but they would have “none of it”.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:**

**Jer 23:36** And the burden of the LORD shall ye mention no more: for every man’s word shall be his burden; for ye have perverted the words of the living God, of the LORD of hosts our God. Read: **Isa 7:4; Isa 32:17**

16But ye said, No; for we will flee upon horses; therefore shall ye flee: and, We will ride upon the swift; therefore shall they that pursue you be swift.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

**Isa 31:1** Woe to them that go down to Egypt for help; and stay on horses, and trust in chariots, because they are many; and in horsemen, because they are very strong; but they look not unto the Holy One of Israel, neither seek the LORD! Read: **Amo 2:14-16**

17One thousand shall flee at the rebuke of one; at the rebuke of five shall ye flee: till ye be left as a beacon upon the top of a mountain, and as an ensign on an hill.

When you hear the war-cry, one of them will chase a 1,000 of you. You will be scattered like a flock of ducks in gun season. You will be like a lonely tree on a mountain, like a flagpole on a hill.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:**

**Lev 26:8** And five of you shall chase an hundred, and an hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight: and your enemies shall fall before you by the sword.

**Lev 26:36** And upon them that are left alive of you I will send a faintness
into their hearts in the lands of their enemies; and the sound of a shaken leaf shall chase them; and they shall flee, as fleeing from a sword; and they shall fall when none pursueth. Read: Deu 32:30; Isa 1:7-8; Zec 13:8-9

18 And therefore will the LORD wait, that he may be gracious unto you, and therefore will he be exalted, that he may have mercy upon you: for the LORD is a God of judgment: blessed are all they that wait for him.

Nevertheless the LORD will wait that he may show his grace to you. You will be blessed if you wait for him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Rom 9:15-18 For he saith to Moses, I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion. So then it is not of him that willeth, nor of him that runneth, but of God that sheweth mercy. For the scripture saith unto Pharaoh, Even for this same purpose have I raised thee up, that I might shew my power in thee, and that my name might be declared throughout all the earth. Therefore hath he mercy on whom he will have mercy, and whom he will he hardeneth.

19 For the people shall dwell in Zion at Jerusalem: thou shalt weep no more: he will be very gracious unto thee at the voice of thy cry; when he shall hear it, he will answer thee.

Weep no more! The LORD will hear your cry and answer you — the remnant will return and dwell in Zion.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Jer 50:4-5 In those days, and in that time, saith the LORD, the children of Israel shall come, they and the children of Judah together, going and weeping: they shall go, and seek the LORD their God. They shall ask the way to Zion with their faces thitherward, saying, Come, and let us join ourselves to the LORD in a perpetual covenant that shall not be forgotten.

20 And though the Lord give you the bread of adversity, and the water of
affliction, yet shall not thy teachers be removed into a corner any more, but thine eyes shall see thy teachers:

While in exile they had bread in scarcity and water in allowance — your teacher will no longer be hidden away in some remote corner but your eyes will look to him for guidance.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

1Ki 22:27 And say, Thus saith the king, Put this fellow in the prison, and feed him with bread of affliction and with water of affliction, until I come in peace.

Psa 80:5 Thou feedest them with the bread of tears; and givest them tears to drink in great measure. Read: Psa 74:9; Amo 8:11-12

21 And thine ears shall hear a word behind thee, saying, This is the way, walk ye in it, when ye turn to the right hand, and when ye turn to the left.

If you stray from the path you will hear a voice (from your comrades) saying get back on the path and follow the right way.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Isa 35:8 And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein. Read: Isa 42:16; Isa 48:17; Isa 58:11; Psa 25:8; Psa 143:8-10; Pro 3:5-6; Jer 6:16; 1Jn 2:27; Psa 32:8

22 Ye shall defile also the covering of thy graven images of silver, and the ornament of thy molten images of gold: thou shalt cast them away as a menstruous cloth; thou shalt say unto it, Get thee hence.

You will throw away the graven images like dirty rags—you will say good riddance.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Isa 2:20 In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold,
which they made *each one* for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats; Read: 2Ch 31:1; Eze 18:6

Then shall he give the rain of thy seed, that thou shalt sow the ground withal; and bread of the increase of the earth, and it shall be fat and plenteous: in that day shall thy cattle feed in large pastures.

In that day the ground will be fertile—abundance of rain—plenty of corn—abundance of cattle.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Isa 44:2-4 Thus saith the LORD that made thee, and formed thee from the womb, *which* will help thee; Fear not, O Jacob, my servant; and thou, Jesurun, whom I have chosen. For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry ground: I will pour my spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring: And they shall spring up *as* among the grass, as willows by the water courses.

Psa 65:9 Thou visitest the earth, and waterest it: thou greatly enrichest it with the river of God, *which* is full of water: thou preparest them corn, when thou hast so provided for it.

The oxen likewise and the young asses that ear the ground shall eat clean provender, which hath been winnowed with the shovel and with the fan.

The oxen and young asses that have plowed the ground and prepared the soil will eat grain that has been made free from waste by the harvest process of shovel and fan.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTER EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

1Co 9:9-10 For it is written in the law of Moses, Thou shalt not muzzle the mouth of the ox that treadeth out the corn. Doth God take care for oxen? Or saith he *it* altogether for our sakes? For our sakes, no doubt, *this* is written: that he that ploweth should plow in hope; and that he that thresheth in hope should be partaker of his hope.
25And there shall be upon every high mountain, and upon every high hills, rivers and streams of waters in the day of the great slaughter, when the towers fall.

In the day when God brings great slaughter to your enemies he will bring streams of water on every high hills—the flat tops of mountains, the coves and steep hills, deserts and wilderness would once again bring forth trees, and abundance of crops. When the towers fall probably refers to the siege towers or water towers in the enemy cities.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

 Isa 43:19-20 Behold, I will do a new thing; now it shall spring forth; shall ye not know it? I will even make a way in the wilderness, and rivers in the desert. The beast of the field shall honour me, the dragons and the owls: because I give waters in the wilderness, and rivers in the desert, to give drink to my people, my chosen.

26Moreover the light of the moon shall be as the light of the sun, and the light of the sun shall be sevenfold, as the light of seven days, in the day that the LORD bindeth up the breach of his people, and healeth the stroke of their wound.

In the day when God stepped in and destroyed Israel’s enemies— when he bound up their bruises and healed their wounds it was like the light of seven days.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

 Isa 24:23 Then the moon shall be confounded, and the sun ashamed, when the LORD of hosts shall reign in mount Zion, and in Jerusalem, and before his ancients gloriously.

 Amo 9:11 In that day will I raise up the tabernacle of David that is fallen, and close up the breaches thereof; and I will raise up his ruins, and I will build it as in the days of old:

27Behold, the name of the LORD cometh from far, burning with his
anger, and the burden thereof is heavy: his lips are full of indignation, and his tongue as a devouring fire:

God came from the far reaches of heaven and was ticked-off—he was furious—burning with anger and his lips and tongue was like a devouring fire.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Deu 32:22 For a fire is kindled in mine anger, and shall burn unto the lowest hell, and shall consume the earth with her increase, and set on fire the foundations of the mountains. Read: Psa 18:7-9; Psa 79:5; Nah 1:5 -6; Heb 12:29

28And his breath, as an overflowing stream, shall reach to the midst of the neck, to sift the nations with the sieve of vanity: and there shall be a bridle in the jaws of the people, causing them to err.

God was pouring out his wrath like a stream overflowing its banks—he then changes the metaphor and likens it to a sieve that removes the chaff from the grain and then gives us a third metaphor of a bridle in the jaws causing them to be led to their doom. The sieve was a large instrument, somewhat like a shovel, with a long handle, with which they tossed the corn mixed with the chaff and chopped straw into the air, that the wind might separate the chaff from the grain. When the wind wasn’t blowing they used people with fans to blow the chaff away.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 11:4 But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked. Read: 2Th 2:8; Luk 22:31; Heb 4:12; Rev 2:16

29Ye shall have a song, as in the night when a holy solemnity is kept; and gladness of heart, as when one goeth with a pipe to come into the mountain of the LORD, to the mighty One of Israel.
Gods people will have a song to sing—like the ones sung at great celebrations—or as a trumpet player leading one on a pilgrimage.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

2Ch 20:27-28 Then they returned, every man of Judah and Jerusalem, and Jehoshaphat in the forefront of them, to go again to Jerusalem with joy; for the LORD had made them to rejoice over their enemies. And they came to Jerusalem with psalteries and harps and trumpets unto the house of the LORD. Read: Isa 2:20; Deu 32:31

30And the LORD shall cause his glorious voice to be heard, and shall shew the lighting down of his arm, with the indignation of his anger, and with the flame of a devouring fire, with scattering, and tempest, and hailstones.

Verses 27-33 are poetry—and in this verse he describes the voice, the arm and the extent of God’s anger and ways that he destroys his enemies.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 29:6 Thou shalt be visited of the LORD of hosts with thunder, and with earthquake, and great noise, with storm and tempest, and the flame of devouring fire. Read: Rev 14:16-19; Isa 28:2; Luk 1:51; Psa 18:13-14

31For through the voice of the LORD shall the Assyrian be beaten down, which smote with a rod.

God is going to shatter the Assyrian’s—185,000 died in one night and the remaining soldiers returned to Ninevah.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 37:33-38 Therefore thus saith the LORD concerning the king of Assyria, He shall not come into this city, nor shoot an arrow there, nor come before it with shields, nor cast a bank against it. By the way that he came, by the same shall he return, and shall not come into this city, saith the LORD. For I
will defend this city to save it for mine own sake, and for my servant David’s sake. Then the angel of the LORD went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred and fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses. So Sennacherib king of Assyria departed, and went and returned, and dwelt at Nineveh. And it came to pass, as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, that Adrammelech and Sharezer his sons smote him with the sword; and they escaped into the land of Armenia: and Esarhaddon his son reigned in his stead.

32And in every place where the grounded staff shall pass, which the LORD shall lay upon him, it shall be with tabrets and harps: and in battles of shaking will he fight with it.

After God smote them—when the battle was over they celebrated the victory with tabrets and harps and singing.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Psa 81:1-2 To the chief Musician upon Gittith, A Psalm of Asaph. Sing aloud unto God our strength: make a joyful noise unto the God of Jacob. Take a psalm, and bring hither the timbrel, the pleasant harp with the psaltery. Read: Hag 2:22

33For Tophet is ordained of old; yea, for the king it is prepared; he hath made it deep and large: the pile thereof is fire and much wood; the breath of the LORD, like a stream of brimstone, doth kindle it.

Old Moloch (the Assyrian god) is going to be burned on a pile of wood.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

2Ki 23:10 And he defiled Topheth, which is in the valley of the children of Hinnom, that no man might make his son or his daughter to pass through the fire to Molech. Read Jer 7:31-32
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 31

They never gave God a thought—what they want is horses and cavalry, with an alliance with Egypt they felt secure. But all the while they had broken ranks with God—violated the covenant and trusted a foreign power to protect them. A wake of prophets had pleaded for Israel to trust God for divine intervention but to no avail. It was under the faithful leadership of Hezekiah that they see Assyria fall—not by horses and chariots but by the sword of the LORD.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 31

1Woe to them that go down to Egypt for help; and stay on horses, and trust in chariots, because they are many; and in horsemen, because they are very strong; but they look not unto the Holy One of Israel, neither seek the LORD!

They didn’t give God a glance—not so much as a prayer—their mind set is strength through horses and chariots and cavalry. Multiplying horses for chariots of war and cavalry, would increase the splendour of a monarch, and form a ground of confidence distinct from a proper confidence in God. Egypt abounded in horses; and the desire of multiplying these would induce the prince to encourage a trade with that kingdom. It was the command of God that they should no more return thither, but be totally detached from them. Besides, they might be tempted to extend their dominion by means of cavalry, and so get scattered among the surrounding idolatrous nations.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES

THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Deu 17:16 But he shall not multiply horses to himself, nor cause the people to return to Egypt, to the end that he should multiply horses: forasmuch as
the LORD hath said unto you, Ye shall henceforth return no more that way. Read: **Isa 36:6; Isa 57:9; Eze 17:15; 2Ch 16:7; Jer 17:5**

Yet he also is wise, and will bring evil, and will not call back his words: but will arise against the house of the evildoers, and against the help of them that work iniquity.

God can call down a catastrophe at any moment in time. He can rise up against these evildoers. God has warned his people against such evil doings and he will not call back his words.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ILLUMINATE THE TEXT:

**Jer 10:12** He hath made the earth by his power, he hath established the world by his wisdom, and hath stretched out the heavens by his discretion.

**Isa 45:7** I form the light, and create darkness: I make peace, and create evil: I the LORD do all these things. Read: **Jos 23:15; Amo 3:6; Jer 44:29; Psa 68:1-2**

Now the Egyptians are men, and not God; and their horses flesh, and not spirit. When the LORD shall stretch out his hand, both he that helpeth shall fall, and he that is holpen shall fall down, and they all shall fail together.

The key to this verse is that when the LORD shall stretch out his hand They had entered a covenant with God and he had sworn their protection, now they are depending on Egypt instead of the LORD.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDOURSE THE TEXT:

**Isa 30:1-3** Woe to the rebellious children, saith the LORD, that take counsel, but not of me; and that cover with a covering, but not of my spirit, that they may add sin to sin: That walk to go down into Egypt, and have not asked at my mouth; to strengthen themselves in the strength of Pharaoh, and to trust in the shadow of Egypt! Therefore shall the strength of Pharaoh be your shame, and the trust in the shadow of Egypt your confusion. Read: **Act 12:22-23; 2Th 2:4-8; Jer 15:6; Jer 37:7-10**
4 For thus hath the LORD spoken unto me, Like as the lion and the young lion roaring on his prey, when a multitude of shepherds is called forth against him, he will not be afraid of their voice, nor abase himself for the noise of them: so shall the LORD of hosts come down to fight for mount Zion, and for the hill thereof.

God is represented as a lion roaring after its prey and no matter how much shouting and rhetoric the enemies have he is not in the least frightened—he can defend what is his.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Num 24:8 God brought him forth out of Egypt; he hath as it were the strength of an unicorn: he shall eat up the nations his enemies, and shall break their bones, and pierce them through with his arrows. Read: Jer 50:44; Hos 11:10-11; Rev 5:5; 2Ch 20:15; Zec 12:8

5 As birds flying, so will the LORD of hosts defend Jerusalem; defending also he will deliver it; and passing over he will preserve it.

As a mother bird hovers over her young and defends them from assaults so shall God defend and protect Jerusalem, rescue it, spare it and save it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Exo 19:4 Ye have seen what I did unto the Egyptians, and how I bare you on eagles’ wings, and brought you unto myself. Read: Deu 32:11-13; Psa 91:4; Psa 37:40

6 Turn ye unto him from whom the children of Israel have deeply revolted.

God is calling on them to repent and honor the covenant that they had entered into. They needed to return to him with the heart—with fasting—weeping and mourning.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Joe 2:12-13 Therefore also now, saith the LORD, turn ye even to me with all your heart, and with fasting, and with weeping, and with mourning: And rend your heart, and not your garments, and turn unto the LORD your God: for he is gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repenteth him of the evil. Read: Isa 55:7; Jer 3:10; Act 26:20; Isa 1:4

7For in that day every man shall cast away his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which your own hands have made unto you for a sin.

They had plunged deep into idolatry and offended their God. Isaiah sees into the future when they will spurn the very gods that they are clinging to. Jeroboam invented a political religion, and instituted feasts in his own times, different from those appointed by Jehovah; gave the people certain objects of adoration, and pretended to think that it would be both inconvenient and oppressive to them to go up to Jerusalem to worship. These calves were doubtless of the same kind as the calf which was set up by Aaron; and it is remarkable, that in pointing them out to the people he should use the same words that Aaron used on that occasion, when they must have heard what terrible judgments fell upon their forefathers for this idolatry. Solomon’s idolatry, however, had prepared the people for Jeroboam’s abominations.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Deu 7:25 The graven images of their gods shall ye burn with fire: thou shalt not desire the silver or gold that is on them, nor take it unto thee, lest thou be snared therein: for it is an abomination to the LORD thy God. Read: Isa 2:20; Isa 30:22; 1Ki 12:28-30

8Then shall the Assyrian fall with the sword, not of a mighty man; and the sword, not of a mean man, shall devour him: but he shall flee from the sword, and his young men shall be discomfited.

Assyria fell but it was not of mans sword—at night—an angel of the horde smote the army that was encamped outside Jerusalem and killed 185,000 and Sennacherib fled back to Assyria where his two sons assassinated him.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Isa 14:25** That I will break the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders. Read: **Isa 37:35; 2Ki 19:34-37**

"And he shall pass over to his strong hold for fear, and his princes shall be afraid of the ensign, saith the LORD, whose fire is in Zion, and his furnace in Jerusalem.

In sheer terror he flees back to Assyrian and his princes all panic—his commander’s desert and flee. The raging fire of God had erupted from the furnace of God’s fury.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

**Mal 4:1** For, behold, the day cometh, that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the LORD of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch. Read: **Isa 11:10-11; Isa 18:3; Isa 29:6; Eze 22:18-22**
Hezekiah and his princes and officers shall govern in equity and wisdom. They will protect the innocent and oppressed. He will promote the instruction of the laws of God. He will treat everyone with fairness. Worthless, hypocritical officials will be detected and debarred from their office. The upright will be blessed and prosper.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 32

1Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness, and princes shall rule in judgment.

A righteous king is coming and shall rule with justice and his princess’s shall rule rightly. Notice that even his princes shall rule in judgment.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

2Ch 31:20 And thus did Hezekiah throughout all Judah, and wrought that which was good and right and truth before the LORD his God.

Psa 72:1-2 A Psalm for Solomon. Give the king thy judgments, O God, and thy righteousness unto the king’s son. He shall judge thy people with righteousness, and thy poor with judgment. Read: Psa 99:4; Psa 99:4; Jer 33:15

2And a man shall be as an hiding place from the wind, and a covert from the tempest; as rivers of water in a dry place, as the shadow of a great rock in a weary land.

This righteous king will shelter Israel from storm and wind—he will be
like a shelter and shade—he will be like refreshing water from a river in the desert.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**Mic 5:4-5** And he shall stand and feed in the strength of the LORD, in the majesty of the name of the LORD his God; and they shall abide: for now shall he be great unto the ends of the earth. And this man shall be the peace, when the Assyrian shall come into our land: and when he shall tread in our palaces, then shall we raise against him seven shepherds, and eight principal men.

**Isa 32:18** And my people shall dwell in a peaceable habitation, and in sure dwellings, and in quiet resting places;

3And the eyes of them that see shall not be dim, and the ears of them that hear shall hearken.

His people will listen to him and he will be an eye opener.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

**Isa 35:5-7** Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped. Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert. And the parched ground shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water: in the habitation of dragons, where each lay, shall be grass with reeds and rushes. Read *Isa 29:18; Isa 29:24*

4The heart also of the rash shall understand knowledge, and the tongue of the stammerers shall be ready to speak plainly.

Hot heads and people given to sudden impulses will readily hear and speak.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 29:18** And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness.
Isa 29:24 They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine. Read: Mar 7:37; Isa 29:24; Neh 8:8; Mat 11:25; Exo 4:11; Luk 21:14-15

5 The vile person shall be no more called liberal, nor the churl said to be bountiful

Fools, atheist and scoundrels will not be their heroes. Cheaters and impious will not be considered as outstanding men. The generation of Hezekiah’s reign was a reign of outstanding great men.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 5:20 Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil; that put darkness for light, and light for darkness; that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

Mal 3:18 Then shall ye return, and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not. Read: 1Sa 25:3

6 For the vile person will speak villany, and his heart will work iniquity, to practise hypocrisy, and to utter error against the LORD, to make empty the soul of the hungry, and he will cause the drink of the thirsty to fail.

Out of the abundance of the heart one speaks.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

1Sa 24:13 As saith the proverb of the ancients, Wickedness proceedeth from the wicked: but mine hand shall not be upon thee.

1Sa 25:10-11 And Nabal answered David’s servants, and said, Who is David? and who is the son of Jesse? there be many servants now a days that break away every man from his master. Shall I then take my bread, and my water, and my flesh that I have killed for my shearers, and give it unto men, whom I know not whence they be? Read: Jer 13:23
7The instruments also of the churl are evil: he deviseth wicked devices to destroy the poor with lying words, even when the needy speaketh right.

When people mediate on evil they will speak and act treacherously.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jer 5:26-28 For among my people are found wicked men: they lay wait, as he that setteth snares; they set a trap, they catch men. As a cage is full of birds, so are their houses full of deceit: therefore they become great, and waxen rich. They are waxen fat, they shine: yea, they overpass the deeds of the wicked: they judge not the cause, the cause of the fatherless, yet they prosper; and the right of the needy do they not judge. Read: Isa 5:23; Mic 2:11; Psa 10:7-10

8But the liberal deviseth liberal things; and by liberal things shall he stand.

Noble people make noble plans and sticks by his word.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Psa 112:9 He hath dispersed, he hath given to the poor; his righteousness endureth for ever; his horn shall be exalted with honour. Read: 2Sa 9:1-7

9Rise up, ye women that are at ease; hear my voice, ye careless daughters; give ear unto my speech.

The prophet calls for the idle, complacent women to listen to his advice. When mothers are sunk in indolence, and careless of the instruction of their children in righteousness the welfare of the nation suffers as a whole.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 3:16 Moreover the LORD saith, Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet: Read: Amo 6:1-6

326
10 Many days and years shall ye be troubled, ye careless women: for the vintage shall fail, the gathering shall not come.

In a little more than a year the harvest will fail and no fruit will be gathered in.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Jer 8:13 I will surely consume them, saith the LORD: there shall be no grapes on the vine, nor figs on the fig tree, and the leaf shall fade; and the things that I have given them shall pass away from them.

Joe 1:12 The vine is dried up, and the fig tree languisheth; the pomegranate tree, the palm tree also, and the apple tree, even all the trees of the field, are withered: because joy is withered away from the sons of men. Read: Isa 16:10

11 Tremble, ye women that are at ease; be troubled, ye careless ones: strip you, and make you bare, and gird sackcloth upon your loins.

They will be trembling when disaster strikes and will strip of their pretty clothes and put on an old gunny sack and they will beat upon their breast in grief.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 33

Woe to the Assyrians, their doom will soon happen. The spoils were pounced on like a locust devouring the crops. God promised justice and righteousness to Jerusalem. Israel’s ambassadors weep in disappointment as Assyria violates her peace pact. Highways and roads are ruined and deserted, the earth is pictured as mourning, forests are cut down and burned, armies ruin farms and vineyards. God has had enough so he shows his power. God will lop her branches off and burn them. Sinners in Zion are shuttering with fear. God promises better days ahead, but only to those who walk righteously. Some flash-backs occur and then the exiles are promised a return to Jerusalem where God will defend them. The national covenant is again restored exempting them from diseases. The commentary section will provide wisdom and insight.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 33

1Woe to thee that spoilest, and thou wast not spoiled; and dealest treacherously, and they dealt not treacherously with thee! when thou shalt cease to spoil, thou shalt be spoiled; and when thou shalt make an end to deal treacherously, they shall deal treacherously with thee.

It is evident that this refers to the Assyrians who were the spoilers and Israel had never wronged the Assyrians. The prophet tells us that when the Assyrians cease destroying that they will be betrayed and destroyed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 10:5 O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is mine indignation.
At that time did king Ahaz send unto the kings of Assyria to help him. For again the Edomites had come and smitten Judah, and carried away captives. Read: **Isa 10:6; Hab 2:8**

\[2\]
**O LORD, be gracious unto us; we have waited for thee: be thou their arm every morning, our salvation also in the time of trouble.**

Save us when trouble comes—use your arm to lift us up and be gracious to us.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**Psa 62:5** My soul, wait thou only upon God; for my expectation is from him.

**Jer 2:27-28** Saying to a stock, Thou art my father; and to a stone, Thou hast brought me forth: for they have turned their back unto me, and not their face: but in the time of their trouble they will say, Arise, and save us. But where are thy gods that thou hast made thee? let them arise, if they can save thee in the time of thy trouble: for according to the number of thy cities are thy gods, O Judah. Read: **Isa 25:9-10**

\[3\]**At the noise of the tumult the people fled; at the lifting up of thyself the nations were scattered.**

When God stood up the enemy fled—his power was manifest—nations were scattered at the sound of God’s voice.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 37:29** Because thy rage against me, and thy tumult, is come up into mine ears, therefore will I put my hook in thy nose, and my bridle in thy lips, and I will turn thee back by the way by which thou camest. Read: **Isa 37:12-18**

\[4\]**And your spoil shall be gathered like the gathering of the caterpiller: as the running to and fro of locusts shall he run upon them.**
The spoil of Nineveh was pounced on like a bunch of caterpillars or locusts that strip the fields and vines leaving nothing behind.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEAD EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

2Ki 7:15-16 And they went after them unto Jordan: and, lo, all the way was full of garments and vessels, which the Syrians had cast away in their haste. And the messengers returned, and told the king. And the people went out, and spoiled the tents of the Syrians. So a measure of fine flour was sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel, according to the word of the LORD.

2 Ch 20:25 And when Jehoshaphat and his people came to take away the spoil of them, they found among them in abundance both riches with the dead bodies, and precious jewels, which they stripped off for themselves, more than they could carry away: and they were three days in gathering of the spoil, it was so much.

5The LORD is exalted; for he dwelleth on high: he hath filled Zion with judgment and righteousness.

The eternal was magnified as supreme—the one who lives in heaven. He brought justice and righteousness to Zion.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Psa 46:9-10 He maketh wars to cease unto the end of the earth; he breaketh the bow, and cutteth the spear in sunder; he burneth the chariot in the fire. Be still, and know that I am God: I will be exalted among the heathen, I will be exalted in the earth.

Psa 97:8-9 Zion heard, and was glad; and the daughters of Judah rejoiced because of thy judgments, O LORD. For thou, LORD, art high above all the earth: thou art exalted far above all gods. Read: Dan 4:37

6And wisdom and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times, and strength of salvation: the fear of the LORD is his treasure.
The only way a nation can have stability is for her people to possess wisdom and knowledge and the fear of the Lord.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

**Pro 24:3-7** Through wisdom is an house builded; and by understanding it is established: And by knowledge shall the chambers be filled with all precious and pleasant riches. A wise man is strong; yea, a man of knowledge increaseth strength. For by wise counsel thou shalt make thy war: and in multitude of counsellors there is safety. Wisdom is too high for a fool: he openeth not his mouth in the gate.

**Ecc 7:12** For wisdom is a defence, and money is a defence: but the excellency of knowledge is, that wisdom giveth life to them that have it.

**Ecc 9:18** Wisdom is better than weapons of war: but one sinner destroyeth much good. Read **Psa 112:1-3; Isa 11:2; 2Ch 32:27-29**

*’Behold, their valiant ones shall cry without: the ambassadors of peace shall weep bitterly.*

The valiant ones are crying for help. Her ambassadors weep in better disappointment. Assyria has broken her promises and refuses their cry for peace.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

**2Ki 18:37** Then came Eliakim the son of Hilkiah, which was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah the son of Asaph the recorder, to Hezekiah with their clothes rent, and told him the words of Rabshakeh.

**2Ki 19:1-3** And it came to pass, when king Hezekiah heard it, that he rent his clothes, and covered himself with sackcloth, and went into the house of the LORD. And he sent Eliakim, which was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and the elders of the priests, covered with sackcloth, to Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz. And they said unto him, Thus saith Hezekiah, This day is a day of trouble, and of rebuke, and blasphemy: for the children are come to the birth, and there is not strength to bring forth.
8The highways lie waste, the wayfaring man ceaseth: he hath broken the 
covenant, he hath despised the cities, he regardeth no man.

Highways are deserted—roads lie in ruin—the truce was broken by Assyria. 
The covenant is broken and terms are spurned. No respect for anyone. They 
broke the peace pact that had been entered into with Israel.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT 
PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 10:13-14 For he saith, By the strength of my hand I have done it, and by 
my wisdom; for I am prudent: and I have removed the bounds of the people, 
and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a 
valiant man: And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people: and 
as one gathereth eggs that are left, have I gathered all the earth; and there was 
none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

9The earth mourneth and languisheth: Lebanon is ashamed and hewn 
down: Sharon is like a wilderness; and Bashan and Carmel shake off 
their fruits.

The earth is pictured as mourning—they cut down the forest—destroying 
the pride of Lebanon. Sharon was a fertile pasture region south of Mount 
Carmel when this army finished its destruction and burning it looked like a 
desert. Bashan was cattle country, now it too is ruined—Carmel was ruined 
by fires.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES 
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 37:24 By thy servants hast thou reproached the Lord, and hast said, By 
the multitude of my chariots am I come up to the height of the mountains, 
to the sides of Lebanon; and I will cut down the tall cedars thereof, and the 
choice fir trees thereof: and I will enter into the height of his border, and the 
forest of his Carmel.

Zec 11:1-3 Open thy doors, O Lebanon, that the fire may devour thy cedars. 
Howl, fir tree; for the cedar is fallen; because the mighty are spoiled: howl, 
O ye oaks of Bashan; for the forest of the vintage is come down. There is a
voice of the howling of the shepherds; for their glory is spoiled: a voice of the roaring of young lions; for the pride of Jordan is spoiled.

He rebuketh the sea, and maketh it dry, and drieth up all the rivers: Bashan languisheth, and Carmel, and the flower of Lebanon languisheth. Read Jer 50:19; Nah 1:4

10Now will I rise, saith the LORD; now will I be exalted; now will I lift up myself.

God is going to stand up and show his power.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 42:13-14 The LORD shall go forth as a mighty man, he shall stir up jealousy like a man of war: he shall cry, yea, roar; he shall prevail against his enemies. I have long time holden my peace; I have been still, and refrained myself: now will I cry like a travailing woman; I will destroy and devour at once. Read: Isa 59:16-17; Psa 78:65; Zep 3:8; Psa 7:6

11Ye shall conceive chaff, ye shall bring forth stubble: your breath, as fire, shall devour you.

Pregnant on chaff and the baby is stubble and fire from your mouth will ignite the chaff (another one liner by the prophet.) What a picture of self destruction.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 59:4 None calleth for justice, nor any pleadeth for truth: they trust in vanity, and speak lies; they conceive mischief, and bring forth iniquity.

Job 15:35 They conceive mischief, and bring forth vanity, and their belly prepareth deceit.

Psa 7:14 Behold, he travaileth with iniquity, and hath conceived mischief, and brought forth falsehood. Read: Nah 1:5-7
12 And the people shall be as the burnings of lime: as thorns cut up shall they be burned in the fire.

Assyria shall be like lime burnt in a lime kiln, or a thorn brush lopped off and piled up for burning.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Amo 2:1 Thus saith the LORD; For three transgressions of Moab, and for four, I will not turn away the punishment thereof; because he burned the bones of the king of Edom into lime:

Isa 9:18 For wickedness burneth as the fire: it shall devour the briers and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forest, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.

13 Hear, ye that are far off, what I have done; and, ye that are near, acknowledge my might.

God wanted the heathen nations to realize his power.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Jos 2:9-11 And she said unto the men, I know that the LORD hath given you the land, and that your terror is fallen upon us, and that all the inhabitants of the land faint because of you. For we have heard how the LORD dried up the water of the Red sea for you, when ye came out of Egypt; and what ye did unto the two kings of the Amorites, that were on the other side Jordan, Sihon and Og, whom ye utterly destroyed. And as soon as we had heard these things, our hearts did melt, neither did there remain any more courage in any man, because of you: for the LORD your God, he is God in heaven above, and in earth beneath. Read: Isa 49:1; Dan 4:1-3

14 The sinners in Zion are afraid; fearfulness hath surprised the hypocrites. Who among us shall dwell with the devouring fire? who among us shall dwell with everlasting burnings?

These profane, godless, impious sinners are shuttering with fear.
Deu 32:21-24 They have moved me to jealousy with that which is not God; they have provoked me to anger with their vanities: and I will move them to jealousy with those which are not a people; I will provoke them to anger with a foolish nation. For a fire is kindled in mine anger, and shall burn unto the lowest hell, and shall consume the earth with her increase, and set on fire the foundations of the mountains. I will heap mischiefs upon them; I will spend mine arrows upon them. They shall be burnt with hunger, and devoured with burning heat, and with bitter destruction: I will also send the teeth of beasts upon them, with the poison of serpents of the dust. Read: Isa 10:6; Isa 66:24

15He that walketh righteously, and speaketh uprightly; he that despiseth the gain of oppressions, that shaketh his hands from holding of bribes, that stoppeth his ears from hearing of blood, and shutteth his eyes from seeing evil;

The man who acts with integrity, who lives an upright life, who tells the truth, who is honest and fair, who does not take a bribe, who rejects making profit by fraud, who cannot be enticed to do wrong. This is the person who will dwell on high.

Neh 5:7-9 Then I consulted with myself, and I rebuked the nobles, and the rulers, and said unto them, Ye exact usury, every one of his brother. And I set a great assembly against them. And I said unto them, We after our ability have redeemed our brethren the Jews, which were sold unto the heathen; and will ye even sell your brethren? or shall they be sold unto us? Then held they their peace, and found nothing to answer. Also I said, It is not good that ye do: ought ye not to walk in the fear of our God because of the reproach of the heathen our enemies? Read: Exo 23:6-8; Psa 26:9-11

16He shall dwell on high: his place of defence shall be the munitions of rocks: bread shall be given him; his waters shall be sure.
He will find refuge in a citadel built like a fortress upon the top of a rock. Food and drink will be given to him in a steady fashion.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Psa 15:1-5** A Psalm of David. LORD, who shall abide in thy tabernacle? who shall dwell in thy holy hill? He that walketh uprightly, and worketh righteousness, and speaketh the truth in his heart. He that backbiteth not with his tongue, nor doeth evil to his neighbour, nor taketh up a reproach against his neighbour. In whose eyes a vile person is contemned; but he honoureth them that fear the LORD. He that sweareth to his own hurt, and changeth not. He that putteth not out his money to usury, nor taketh reward against the innocent. He that doeth these things shall never be moved.

17 Thine eyes shall see the king in his beauty: they shall behold the land that is very far off.

Perhaps the song writer had this verse in mind when he penned these words, “we shall see the king some day.”

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:**

**2Ch 32:23** And many brought gifts unto the LORD to Jerusalem, and presents to Hezekiah king of Judah: so that he was magnified in the sight of all nations from thenceforth.

**Isa 32:1-2** Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness, and princes shall rule in judgment. And a man shall be as an hiding place from the wind, and a covert from the tempest; as rivers of water in a dry place, as the shadow of a great rock in a weary land.

18 Thine heart shall meditate terror. Where is the scribe? where is the receiver? where is he that counted the towers?

You will have a flash back to the time when the king of Assyria’s officers were counting the towers and having a scribe make notes and sketches of them and telling the people on the wall that they will soon be coming down.
And blessed be thy advice, and blessed be thou, which hast kept me this day from coming to shed blood, and from avenging myself with mine own hand. For in very deed, as the LORD God of Israel liveth, which hath kept me back from hurting thee, except thou hadst hasted and come to meet me, surely there had not been left unto Nabal by the morning light any that pisseth against the wall. So David received of her hand that which she had brought him, and said unto her, Go up in peace to thine house; see, I have hearkened to thy voice, and have accepted thy person.

 Thou shalt not see a fierce people, a people of a deeper speech than thou canst perceive; of a stammering tongue, that thou canst not understand.

These people (the Assyrians) will soon disappear from the scene—a people with a dialect difficult to understand—a foreign tongue—chattering in a language you can’t understand.

The LORD shall bring a nation against thee from far, from the end of the earth, as swift as the eagle flieth; a nation whose tongue thou shalt not understand; A nation of fierce countenance, which shall not regard the person of the old, nor shew favour to the young: Read: Isa 28:11; Eze 3:5-6

Look upon Zion, the city of our solemnities: thine eyes shall see Jerusalem a quiet habitation, a tabernacle that shall not be taken down; not one of the stakes thereof shall ever be removed, neither shall any of the cords thereof be broken.

The prophet wants them to look beyond the exile to the time when Jerusalem would be restored and secure. It will be like a tent whose pegs will not pull out when the wind of adversity comes—whose cord will not break under stress.

Walk about Zion, and go round about her: tell the towers
thereof. Mark ye well her bulwarks, consider her palaces; that ye may tell it to the generation following. For this God is our God for ever and ever: he will be our guide even unto death.

**Psa 78:68-69** But chose the tribe of Judah, the mount Zion which he loved. And he built his sanctuary like high palaces, like the earth which he hath established for ever.

**Psa 125:1** A Song of degrees. They that trust in the LORD shall be as mount Zion, which cannot be removed, but abideth for ever.

**Psa 128:5** The LORD shall bless thee out of Zion: and thou shalt see the good of Jerusalem all the days of thy life.

**21But there the glorious LORD will be unto us a place of broad rivers and streams; wherein shall go no galley with oars, neither shall gallant ship pass thereby.**

This God of ours will protect us like a broad river and stream that surround a king’s castle—no galley with oars. No ships of war to invade—too broad for the enemy to cross.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**Psa 46:4-5** There is a river, the streams whereof shall make glad the city of God, the holy place of the tabernacles of the most High. God is in the midst of her; she shall not be moved: God shall help her, and that right early.

**22For the LORD is our judge, the LORD is our lawgiver, the LORD is our king; he will save us.**

He is our Judge, lawgiver and King—he will defend us.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:**

**Psa 75:7** But God is the judge: he putteth down one, and setteth up another.

**Deu 33:2** And he said, The LORD came from Sinai, and rose up from
Seir unto them; he shined forth from mount Paran, and he came with ten thousands of saints: from his right hand went a fiery law for them.

**Psa 44:4** Thou art my King, O God: command deliverances for Jacob.

23 *Thy tacklings are loosed; they could not well strengthen their mast, they could not spread the sail: then is the prey of a great spoil divided; the lame take the prey.*

Your enemies ropes are hanging loose—the mast is laying on the deck—the sails are tangled in the wind—the spoils of war are divided, even the lame gets part of the loot.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Act 27:19** And the third day we cast out with our own hands the tackling of the ship.

**Act 27:40-41** And when they had taken up the anchors, they committed themselves unto the sea, and loosed the rudder bands, and hoised up the mainsail to the wind, and made toward shore. And falling into a place where two seas met, they ran the ship aground; and the forepart stuck fast, and remained unmoveable, but the hinder part was broken with the violence of the waves.

**2Ki 7:8** And when these lepers came to the uttermost part of the camp, they went into one tent, and did eat and drink, and carried thence silver, and gold, and raiment, and went and hid it; and came again, and entered into another tent, and carried thence also, and went and hid it.

**Psa 68:12** Kings of armies did flee apace: and she that tarried at home divided the spoil.

24 *And the inhabitant shall not say, I am sick: the people that dwell therein shall be forgiven their iniquity.*

God had a national covenant with Israel exempting them from certain diseases and sicknesses, which scourged other nations. The Israelites, if obedient, would have been subject to no maladies but those common to fallen man,
and generally very healthy and long lived; being exempted from pestilential diseases, which have often most tremendously scourged guilty nations; and from such maladies in particular, as they had witnessed in Egypt, by which God afflicted their cruel oppressors. This must be referred to as the national covenant; for though godliness often secures the most solid temporal advantages, yet temporal blessings were not, even among them, uniformly dispensed to individuals according to their obedience; but they were to the nation, with an exactness which is not observed towards any other people.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 58:8** Then shall thy light break forth as the morning, and thine health shall spring forth speedily: and thy righteousness shall go before thee; the glory of the LORD shall be thy rereward.

**Exo 15:26** And said, If thou wilt diligently hearken to the voice of the LORD thy God, and wilt do that which is right in his sight, and wilt give ear to his commandments, and keep all his statutes, I will put none of these diseases upon thee, which I have brought upon the Egyptians: for I am the LORD that healeth thee.

**Deu 7:15** And the LORD will take away from thee all sickness, and will put none of the evil diseases of Egypt, which thou knowest, upon thee; but will lay them upon all them that hate thee.

**Lev 26:16** I also will do this unto you; I will even appoint over you terror, consumption, and the burning ague, that shall consume the eyes, and cause sorrow of heart: and ye shall sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it.

**Deu 28:27** The LORD will smite thee with the botch of Egypt, and with the emerods, and with the scab, and with the itch, whereof thou canst not be healed.

**Deu 28:60** Moreover he will bring upon thee all the diseases of Egypt, which thou wast afraid of; and they shall cleave unto thee.

**Psa 105:37** He brought them forth also with silver and gold: and there was not one feeble person among their tribes.
2Ch 30:20 And the LORD hearkened to Hezekiah, and healed the people.

Jer 33:6-8 Behold, I will bring it health and cure, and I will cure them, and will reveal unto them the abundance of peace and truth. And I will cause the captivity of Judah and the captivity of Israel to return, and will build them, as at the first. And I will cleanse them from all their iniquity, whereby they have sinned against me; and I will pardon all their iniquities, whereby they have sinned, and whereby they have transgressed against me.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 34

The land of Edom” Gen. 36:16, was mountainous. It was called “the mountain of Seir.” It is a wild and rugged region, and its old capitol was Bozrah Isa 63:1. The early inhabitants of the land were Horites. They were destroyed by the Edomites Deut. 2:12. At the time of the Exodus they refused permission to the Israelites to pass through their land Num. 20:14-21, and always maintained an attitude of hostility toward them. They were conquered by David 2 Sam 8:14, and afterwards by Amaziah 2 Ch. 25:11. But they regained again their independence, and in later years, during the decline of the Jewish kingdom 2 Ki. 16:6, made war against Israel. They took part with the Chaldeans when Nebuchadnezzar captured Jerusalem, and afterwards they invaded and held possession of the south of Palestine as far as Hebron. At length, however, Edom fell under the growing Babylonian power Jer. 27:3-6. The present desolate condition of that land is a standing testimony to the inspiration of these prophecies. After an existence as a people for above seventeen hundred years, they have utterly disappeared, and their language even is forgotten forever. In Petra, “where kings kept their court, and where nobles assembled, there no man dwells; it is given by lot to birds, and beasts, and reptiles.” God has deeded all the land of Edom to be a wildlife refuge forever.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 34

Come near, ye nations, to hear; and hearken, ye people: let the earth hear, and all that is therein; the world, and all things that come forth of it.

The news for all mankind is about to be published—this was not local news but worldwide.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Psa 49:1 To the chief Musician, A Psalm for the sons of Korah. Hear this, all ye people; give ear, all ye inhabitants of the world:

For the indignation of the LORD is upon all nations, and his fury upon all their armies: he hath utterly destroyed them, he hath delivered them to the slaughter.

God is going to turn the world up-side down. The land will be emptied when God pours out his fury.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jer 25:15-17 For thus saith the LORD God of Israel unto me; Take the wine cup of this fury at my hand, and cause all the nations, to whom I send thee, to drink it. And they shall drink, and be moved, and be mad, because of the sword that I will send among them. Then took I the cup at the LORD’S hand, and made all the nations to drink, unto whom the LORD had sent me: Read: Isa 24:1-3

Their slain also shall be cast out, and their stink shall come up out of their carcases, and the mountains shall be melted with their blood.

The dead bodies of soldiers will rot without a proper burial. Cholera will spread throughout the region. Scavenger birds will eat their flesh. Mountains shall stream with their blood.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 14:19 But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and as the raiment of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcase trodden under feet. Read: Isa 14:20; 2Ki 9:35; Eze 32:5-6

And all the host of heaven shall be dissolved, and the heavens shall be
rolled together as a scroll: and all their host shall fall down, as the leaf falleth off from the vine, and as a falling fig from the fig tree.

Stars falling—sun darkened—heavens rolled together, is symbolic of the collapse of world governments. Every time a nation fell the prophets likened it to the fall of a mountain (kingdom.)

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 13:10 For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light: the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine. Read: Isa 14:12; Eze 32:6-7; Joe 2:30-31; Rev 6:13-14

5For my sword shall be bathed in heaven: behold, it shall come down upon Idumea, and upon the people of my curse, to judgment.

When God gets finished, Idumaea (Edom) will fall under the terrible judgment of God. The following is a quote from my commentary on Amos regarding Edom. Take a trip up Mount Seir and you will see the ruins of thirty cities utterly laid waste and desolate all of these ruins lay within 3 days journey of the Red Sea. These cities and their ruins can be viewed on the internet. The Edomites have disappeared from the earth. They have not been heard from since the second century. The land that they inhabited is a God forsaken land that is occupied by animals. God gave this territory to the animals and tells us that their deed is perpetual.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Mal 1:4 Whereas Edom saith, We are impoverished, but we will return and build the desolate places; thus saith the LORD of hosts, They shall build, but I will throw down; and they shall call them, The border of wickedness, and, The people against whom the LORD hath indignation for ever. Read: Deu 32:42; Psa 137:7; Amo 1:11-12; Oba 1:1-9

6The sword of the LORD is filled with blood, it is made fat with fatness, and with the blood of lambs and goats, with the fat of the kidneys of
rams: for the LORD hath a sacrifice in Bozrah, and a great slaughter in the land of Idumea.

The sword was covered with blood from the slaying of lambs and goats—these animals became a feast for the army of the Chaldeans.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:**

**Jer 49:13** For I have sworn by myself, saith the LORD, that Bozrah shall become a desolation, a reproach, a waste, and a curse; and all the cities thereof shall be perpetual wastes. Read: *Isa 63:3; Eze 39:17-20*

7And the unicorns shall come down with them, and the bullocks with the bulls; and their land shall be soaked with blood, and their dust made fat with fatness.

The unicorns (wild bulls) and oxen are all victims of the army that came against Edom and the land is filled with slaughter. This scheduled sacrifice in the capital city of Bozrah and then spread into a wholesale slaughter of all their farm animals, until the land was soaked with blood.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:**

**Jer 50:27** Slay all her bullocks; let them go down to the slaughter: woe unto them! for their day is come, the time of their visitation.

8*For it is the day of the LORD’s vengeance, and the year of recompences for the controversy of Zion.*

This scheduled vengeance was to settle the Zion controversy.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

**Isa 61:2** To proclaim the acceptable year of the LORD, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn;

**Isa 59:17-18** For he put on righteousness as a breastplate, and an helmet of
salvation upon his head; and he put on the garments of vengeance for clothing, and was clad with zeal as a cloke. According to their deeds, accordingly he will repay, fury to his adversaries, recompence to his enemies; to the islands he will repay recompence.

9And the streams thereof shall be turned into pitch, and the dust thereof into brimstone, and the land thereof shall become burning pitch.

The whole country looked like a burning inferno—the skies were black from the smoke—breathing was difficult—Babylon literally burned this place into a cinder.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Psa 11:6 Upon the wicked he shall rain snares, fire and brimstone, and an horrible tempest: this shall be the portion of their cup. Read: Deu 29:23; Luk 17:29; Jud 1:7

10It shall not be quenched night nor day; the smoke thereof shall go up for ever: from generation to generation it shall lie waste; none shall pass through it for ever and ever.

The fires burned day and night—no firefighters available—everyone running for their lives—25 generations later nothing is there except the remains of burned out cities. At least 30 cities in Edom is wasteland—no one travels there—the prophet calls the destruction perpetual.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Jer 7:20 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, mine anger and my fury shall be poured out upon this place, upon man, and upon beast, and upon the trees of the field, and upon the fruit of the ground; and it shall burn, and shall not be quenched. Read: Eze 20:47-48; Rev 18:18

11But the cormorant and the bittern shall possess it; the owl also and the raven shall dwell in it: and he shall stretch out upon it the line of confusion, and the stones of emptiness.
Pelicans, owls, hawks, porcupines, ravens, hedge hogs, buzzards, ostriches, ferocious animals and deadly snakes live in this wasteland.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Mal 1:3-4** And I hated Esau, and laid his mountains and his heritage waste for the dragons of the wilderness. Whereas Edom saith, We are impoverished, but we will return and build the desolate places; thus saith the LORD of hosts, They shall build, but I will throw down; and they shall call them, The border of wickedness, and, The people against whom the LORD hath indignation for ever. Read: **Isa 13:20-22; Zep 2:14**

12*They shall call the nobles thereof to the kingdom, but none shall be there, and all her princes shall be nothing.*

The ASV reads “They shall name it No Kingdom there.” No king—no nobles—their government had collapsed. Her rulers had vanished like dew before the rays of the sun.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Isa 29:20** For the terrible one is brought to nought, and the scorners is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off:

13*And thorns shall come up in her palaces, nettles and brambles in the fortresses thereof: and it shall be an habitation of dragons, and a court for owls.*

God hated Esau and Esau hated God—this place was measured out by the eternal for desolation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

**Zep 2:9** Therefore as I live, saith the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel, Surely Moab shall be as Sodom, and the children of Ammon as Gomorrah, even the breeding of nettles, and saltpits, and a perpetual desolation: the residue of my
people shall spoil them, and the remnant of my people shall possess them. Read: Isa 32:13-14; Isa 35:7; Mal 1:3

14 The wild beasts of the desert shall also meet with the wild beasts of the island, and the satyr shall cry to his fellow; the screech owl also shall rest there, and find for herself a place of rest.

A place where ferocious animals congregated and her castles and palaces are overrun by wild beasts and nothing growing there except sage brush and bramble bushes!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Isa 13:21-22 But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there. And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces: and her time is near to come, and her days shall not be prolonged.

15 There shall the great owl make her nest, and lay, and hatch, and gather under her shadow: there shall the vultures also be gathered, every one with her mate.

Screech owls and hoot owls lay their eggs and hatch their young and no human beings to bother them. God’s team surveyed the area—plotted it and deeded it to the wild animals forever!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 30:8 Now go, write it before them in a table, and note it in a book, that it may be for the time to come for ever and ever:

Dan 10:21 But I will shew thee that which is noted in the scripture of truth: and there is none that holdeth with me in these things, but Michael your prince. Read: Jos 1:8; Pro 23:12

16 Seek ye out of the book of the LORD, and read: no one of these shall
fail, none shall want her mate: for my mouth it hath commanded, and his spirit it hath gathered them.

Turn your clock back—read the history books—this divine prophesy has been fulfilled in every detail. Will you meet the challenge from the LORD to seek out of the book of the LORD and read?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Amo 3:7 Surely the Lord GOD will do nothing, but he revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets.

Mal 3:16 Then they that feared the LORD spake often one to another: and the LORD hearkened, and heard it, and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the LORD, and that thought upon his name.

Joh 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.

Mat 5:18 For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.

Luk 21:33 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.

17And he hath cast the lot for them, and his hand hath divided it unto them by line: they shall possess it for ever, from generation to generation shall they dwell therein.

God’s hand has portioned Edom to be a wild life refuge forever. God sent his survey crew to stake it out—he has subdivided it—he has recorded the deed in this book. This land is declared a place for doleful creatures forever by the eternal.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Jos 18:8 And the men arose, and went away: and Joshua charged them that
went to describe the land, saying, Go and walk through the land, and describe it, and come again to me, that I may here cast lots for you before the LORD in Shiloh.

**Psa 78:55** He cast out the heathen also before them, and divided them an inheritance by line, and made the tribes of Israel to dwell in their tents.

**Act 13:19** And when he had destroyed seven nations in the land of Chanaan, he divided their land to them by lot.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 35

God is bringing the exiles home. Valleys, hills, mountains, trees and grass are rejoicing for their return. Weak hands and feeble knees gained new energy—God is redressing their grievances—He is taking vengeance on their enemies. Aforetime Israel was blind, deaf and hardhearted—but now they possess eyes of understanding and hearts of praise. God has a highway of holiness for the redeemed to walk on. Lame are jumping for joy and people are singing for the first time—its joy, joy, joy. God blessed their forests, pasture land and wasteland—God has made the lion lay down with the lamb. The commentary section is waiting for you to read.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 35

1The wilderness and the solitary place shall be glad for them; and the desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose.

When Israel returns the wilderness and wasteland and desert shall rejoice—it had been burned and ruined by invaders and plunderers for 70 long years and now the real owners have returned.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 51:3 For the LORD shall comfort Zion: he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the LORD; joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving, and the voice of melody. Read: Isa 29:17; Isa 32:15-16; Isa 52:9-10; Eze 36:35; Isa 27:6; Isa 55:12-13; Isa 61:10-11; Isa 66:10-14; Hos 14:5-6

2It shall blossom abundantly, and rejoice even with joy and singing: the glory of Lebanon shall be given unto it, the excellency of Carmel and
Sharon, they shall see the glory of the LORD, and the excellency of our God.

Mountains and hills are breaking out with singing and trees are clapping their hands. This long deserted waste land that was overgrown will have a new gardener and there will be an abundance of blossoms.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 42:10-12 Sing unto the LORD a new song, and his praise from the end of the earth, ye that go down to the sea, and all that is therein; the isles, and the inhabitants thereof. Let the wilderness and the cities thereof lift up their voice, the villages that Kedar doth inhabit: let the inhabitants of the rock sing, let them shout from the top of the mountains. Let them give glory unto the LORD, and declare his praise in the islands. Read: Isa 49:13; Isa 55:12-13; 1Ch 16:33; Psa 148:9-13; Isa 41:19; Isa 60:13; Eze 34:25-26; Amo 9:13-14; Psa 102:15-16

3Strengthen ye the weak hands, and confirm the feeble knees.

When the news came of Israel’s return those with feeble hands and tottering knees gained new energy—this put heart into the listless and weak-kneed souls.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 55:12-13 For ye shall go out with joy, and be led forth with peace: the mountains and the hills shall break forth before you into singing, and all the trees of the field shall clap their hands. Instead of the thorn shall come up the fir tree, and instead of the brier shall come up the myrtle tree: and it shall be to the LORD for a name, for an everlasting sign that shall not be cut off.

1Ch 16:33 Then shall the trees of the wood sing out at the presence of the LORD, because he cometh to judge the earth.

4Say to them that are of a fearful heart, Be strong, fear not: behold, your God will come with vengeance, even God with a recompence; he will come and save you.
The news of their return caused fearful hearts to become strong again,—God is bringing redress for your wrongs—it’s retribution time, he will destroy your enemies and save you.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

**Isa 32:4** The heart also of the rash shall understand knowledge, and the tongue of the stammerers shall be ready to speak plainly.

**1Ch 28:20** And David said to Solomon his son, Be strong and of good courage, and do it: fear not, nor be dismayed: for the LORD God, even my God, will be with thee; he will not fail thee, nor forsake thee, until thou hast finished all the work for the service of the house of the LORD.

**Dan 10:19** And said, O man greatly beloved, fear not: peace be unto thee, be strong, yea, be strong. And when he had spoken unto me, I was strengthened, and said, Let my lord speak; for thou hast strengthened me. Read: **Isa 41:10; Isa 25:9; Isa 61:2; Hos 1:7**

**5**Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.

The prophets had said that Israel was blind, deaf and hard hearted—now their eyes are opened and ears are unstopped.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Isa 29:18** And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness.

**Isa 32:3-4** And the eyes of them that see shall not be dim, and the ears of them that hear shall hearken. The heart also of the rash shall understand knowledge, and the tongue of the stammerers shall be ready to speak plainly. Read: **Isa 42:6-7; Isa 43:8; Isa 48:8; Jer 6:10; Jer 6:10; Mar 7:32-37**

**6**Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert.
The news that they were returning to their homestead caused them to leap like a stag. Places that had no water now have abundance.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

**Mat 11:5** The blind receive their sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the poor have the gospel preached to them.

**Act 3:6-8** Then Peter said, Silver and gold have I none; but such as I have give I thee: In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth rise up and walk. And he took him by the right hand, and lifted him up: and immediately his feet and ankle bones received strength. And he leaping up stood, and walked, and entered with them into the temple, walking, and leaping, and praising God. Read: **Isa 32:4; Luk 1:64; Isa 43:19-20; Exo 17:6; Psa 78:15-16; Joh 7:37-39**

7And the parched ground shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water: in the habitation of dragons, where each lay, shall be grass with reeds and rushes.

Ground that had long been dry will see an abundance of rain. Where wild hogs and jackals lived will once again become pasture land with reeds and papyrus growing along the water edge.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

**Isa 29:17** Is it not yet a very little while, and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field, and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest?

**Isa 44:3-4** For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry ground: I will pour my spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring: And they shall spring up as among the grass, as willows by the water courses. Read: **Joh 4:14; Joh 7:38; Isa 19:6**

8And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein.
A high road of holiness—it will be called a holy way—a sacred way. No evil hearted, defiled, no unclean, no un-redeemed, no un-regenerate, no impious shall travel this holy road. But the pilgrim, the redeemed, the undefiled—the wayfaring man; even stupid fools can find salvations way.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 11:16 And there shall be an highway for the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria; like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

Isa 19:23 In that day shall there be a highway out of Egypt to Assyria, and the Assyrian shall come into Egypt, and the Egyptian into Assyria, and the Egyptians shall serve with the Assyrians. Read: Isa 42:16; Isa 49:11-12; Joh 14:6; 1Th 4:7; Isa 52:1; Jer 32:39-40; Jer 50:4-5

"No lion shall be there, nor any ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk there:

No savage, cruel beast, ravenous animals—nothing and no one dangerous will walk on the sacred road of salvation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 35:10 And the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

Hos 2:18 And in that day will I make a covenant for them with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of heaven, and with the creeping things of the ground: and I will break the bow and the sword and the battle out of the earth, and will make them to lie down safely. Read: Isa 11:6-9; Isa 65:25; Lev 26:6; Eze 34:25; Isa 62:12

"And the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away."
They are welcomed home with “a yellow ribbon around the old oak tree.” They will come singing—smiles from ear to ear. It’s a new day! Sorrow and sighing has passed away!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

**Isa 51:10-11** Art thou not it which hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over? Therefore the redeemed of the LORD shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy shall be upon their head: they shall obtain gladness and joy; and sorrow and mourning shall flee away. Read **Jer 31:11-14; Jer 33:11; Isa 25:8; Isa 60:20; Isa 65:19**
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 36

Sennacherib has dispatched his field commander to Jerusalem for an unconditional surrender—the meeting was held close to the public laundry mat. Judah’s secretary of state, chief of staff and their historian was sent to negotiate the proposals with the Assyrians. This diplomacy turned into a war of words with no peace pact to be ratified by the two sides. Assyria claims that they are there by divine guidance—that God had spoken to Sennacherib and that he was acting upon heaven’s orders. These negotiations fell apart with each side reporting the progress to their superiors. More information is awaiting you in the exposition.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 36

1Now it came to pass in the fourteenth year of king Hezekiah, that Sennacherib king of Assyria came up against all the defenced cities of Judah, and took them.

Sennacherib’s army already occupied the fortified cities of Judah.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

2Ki 18:13 Now in the fourteenth year of king Hezekiah did Sennacherib king of Assyria come up against all the fenced cities of Judah, and took them.

2Ki 18:17 And the king of Assyria sent Tartan and Rabsaris and Rabshakeh from Lachish to king Hezekiah with a great host against Jerusalem. And they went up and came to Jerusalem. And when they were come up, they came and stood by the conduit of the upper pool, which is in the highway of the fuller’s field.
And the king of Assyria sent Rabshakeh from Lachish to Jerusalem unto king Hezekiah with a great army. And he stood by the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller’s field.

Sennacherib sends his field commander to ask for an unconditional surrender—the meeting between the two countries was held at the intersection of a highway that led to the public laundry mat.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

2 Kings 18:17-19 And the king of Assyria sent Tartan and Rabsaris and Rabshakeh from Lachish to king Hezekiah with a great host against Jerusalem. And they went up and came to Jerusalem. And when they were come up, they came and stood by the conduit of the upper pool, which is in the highway of the fuller’s field. And when they had called to the king, there came out to them Eliakim the son of Hilkiah, which was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah the son of Asaph the recorder. And Rabshakeh said unto them, Speak ye now to Hezekiah, Thus saith the great king, the king of Assyria, What confidence is this wherein thou trustest?

Then came forth unto him Eliakim, Hilkiah’s son, which was over the house, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah, Asaph’s son, the recorder.

These three government officials—secretary of state, chief of staff and historian met with the Assyrian general and his field commanders for negotiations.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 22:20 And it shall come to pass in that day, that I will call my servant Eliakim the son of Hilkiah:

2Sa 8:16-17 And Joab the son of Zeruiah was over the host; and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud was recorder; And Zadok the son of Ahitub, and Ahimelech the son of Abiathar, were the priests; and Seraiah was the scribe;

And Rabshakeh said unto them, Say ye now to Hezekiah, Thus saith the great king, the king of Assyria, What confidence is this wherein thou trustest?
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Assyria now Kourdistan, was bounded by Armenia on the north, Media and Persia on the east, Babylonia on the south, and the Tigris, which divides it from Mesopotamia, on the west. But the Assyrian empire, the bounds of which were different at different times, in its most flourishing state, according to the descriptions of the Greek and Roman writers, comprehended all the countries and nations between the Mediterranean on the west, and the Indus on the east, and between the deserts of Scythia on the north, and the Indian ocean on the south.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Isa 37:11-14 Behold, thou hast heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands by destroying them utterly; and shalt thou be delivered? Have the gods of the nations delivered them which my fathers have destroyed, as Gozan, and Haran, and Rezeph, and the children of Eden which were in Telassar? Where is the king of Hamath, and the king of Arphad, and the king of the city of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivah? And Hezekiah received the letter from the hand of the messengers, and read it: and Hezekiah went up unto the house of the LORD, and spread it before the LORD.

*I say, sayest thou, (but they are but vain words) I have counsel and strength for war: now on whom dost thou trust, that thou rebellest against me?*

The diplomats were engaging in a war of words—Rabshakeh lays down the premise that Hezekiah is trusting in the crocodile of the Nile for assistance.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITATIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

2Ki 18:7 And the LORD was with him; and he prospered whithersoever he went forth: and he rebelled against the king of Assyria, and served him not.

2Ki 24:1 In his days Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up, and Jehoiakim became his servant three years: then he turned and rebelled against him.
Lo, thou trustest in the staff of this broken reed, on Egypt; whereon if a man lean, it will go into his hand, and pierce it: so is Pharaoh king of Egypt to all that trust in him.

Trusting in Egypt was like trusting in a shadow or like leaning on a sharp stick for a cane.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Isa 30:1-2 Woe to the rebellious children, saith the LORD, that take counsel, but not of me; and that cover with a covering, but not of my spirit, that they may add sin to sin:

2 That walk to go down into Egypt, and have not asked at my mouth; to strengthen themselves in the strength of Pharaoh, and to trust in the shadow of Egypt! Read: Jer 37:5-8

But if thou say to me, We trust in the LORD our God: is it not he, whose high places and whose altars Hezekiah hath taken away, and said to Judah and to Jerusalem, Ye shall worship before this altar?

Hezekiah had removed the sex and religion shrines and broke down the images and broke up the bronze serpent that Moses made, because the people had begun to worship it and commanded Judah to worship God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

2Ki 18:5 He trusted in the LORD God of Israel; so that after him was none like him among all the kings of Judah, nor any that were before him. Read: 2Ch 32:7-8

Now therefore give pledges, I pray thee, to my master the king of Assyria, and I will give thee two thousand horses, if thou be able on thy part to set riders upon them.

Rabshakeh sets forth the conditions for surrender—he even bets him that Hezekiah can’t find 2,000 riders—how then can he fight against his war machine.
Some trust in chariots, and some in horses: but we will remember the name of the LORD our God. Read: Psa 123:3-4

9How then wilt thou turn away the face of one captain of the least of my master's servants, and put thy trust on Egypt for chariots and for horsemen?

Egypt abounded in horses, chariots and cavalry. When Israel put its trust in a foreign power, it no longer depended on God for protection.

But he shall not multiply horses to himself, nor cause the people to return to Egypt, to the end that he should multiply horses: forasmuch as the LORD hath said unto you, Ye shall henceforth return no more that way.

The horse is prepared against the day of battle: but safety is of the LORD.

And am I now come up without the LORD against this land to destroy it? the LORD said unto me, Go up against this land, and destroy it.

Assyria claims that they were acting on divine guidance—they claimed that God had sent them on this mission. God had sent the Assyrian army on this mission so He could show forth his power and glory.

O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is mine indignation. I will send him against an hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge, to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets. Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but it is in his heart to destroy and cut off nations not a few. Read: 1Ki 13:18; 2Ki 18:25
Then said Eliakim the son of Hilkiah, and Shebna, and Joah, unto Rabshakeh, Speak, I pray thee, unto thy servants in the Syrian language; for we understand it: and speak not to us in the Jews’ language, in the ears of the people that are on the wall.

Aramaic was the language used by diplomats in that day and time. In Babylonian time the language was Chaldean and in Roman time it was Latin and in our time it is English.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

2Ki 18:26-27 Then said Eliakim the son of Hilkiah, and Shebna, and Joah, unto Rabshakeh, Speak, I pray thee, to thy servants in the Syrian language; for we understand it: and talk not with us in the Jews’ language in the ears of the people that are on the wall. But Rabshakeh said unto them, Hath my master sent me to thy master, and to thee, to speak these words? hath he not sent me to the men which sit on the wall, that they may eat their own dung, and drink their own piss with you?

12But Rabshakeh said, Hath my master sent me to thy master and to thee to speak these words? hath he not sent me to the men that sit upon the wall, that they may eat their own dung, and drink their own piss with you?

Israel’s ambassadors tell Rabshakeh that he is not negotiating with the people on the wall but with Hezekiah, however Rabshakeh informs him that he wants to talk to the people on the wall so they can pressure the government to surrender.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

2Ki 18:27 But Rabshakeh said unto them, Hath my master sent me to thy master, and to thee, to speak these words? hath he not sent me to the men which sit on the wall, that they may eat their own dung, and drink their own piss with you?

13Then Rabshakeh stood, and cried with a loud voice in the Jews’ language, and said, Hear ye the words of the great king, the king of Assyria.
Rabshakeh was defiant and addressed the people who were sitting on the wall calling on them to pressure their king to accept his proposal for peace.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

**Isa 8:7** Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria, and all his glory: and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks: Read: **2Ki 18:28-29**

14Thus saith the king, Let not Hezekiah deceive you: for he shall not be able to deliver you.

Rabshakeh warns the people on the wall to not let the king fool or delude them into thinking that either Pharaoh or God can deliver them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**2Ch 32:13-15** Know ye not what I and my fathers have done unto all the people of other lands? were the gods of the nations of those lands any ways able to deliver their lands out of mine hand? Who was there among all the gods of those nations that my fathers utterly destroyed, that could deliver his people out of mine hand, that your God should be able to deliver you out of mine hand? Now therefore let not Hezekiah deceive you, nor persuade you on this manner, neither yet believe him: for no god of any nation or kingdom was able to deliver his people out of mine hand, and out of the hand of my fathers: how much less shall your God deliver you out of mine hand?

15Neither let Hezekiah make you trust in the LORD, saying, The LORD will surely deliver us: this city shall not be delivered into the hand of the king of Assyria.

He tells the people not to let Hezekiah fool them into thinking that God will give them victory.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:
**Psa 71:9-11** Cast me not off in the time of old age; forsake me not when my strength faileth. For mine enemies speak against me; and they that lay wait for my soul take counsel together, Saying, God hath forsaken him: persecute and take him; for there is none to deliver him.

16 *Hearken not to Hezekiah: for thus saith the king of Assyria, Make an agreement with me by a present, and come out to me: and eat ye every one of his vine, and every one of his fig tree, and drink ye every one the waters of his own cistern;*

Rabshakeh seeks for total surrender and wants to seal the peace pact with a gift and after they earn his good will he will take them to Kurdistan to live.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:**

**2Ki 18:31-32** Hearken not to Hezekiah: for thus saith the king of Assyria, Make an agreement with me by a present, and come out to me: and eat ye every man of his own vine, and every one of his fig tree, and drink ye every one the waters of his cistern: Until I come and take you away to a land like your own land, a land of corn and wine, a land of bread and vineyards, a land of oil olive and of honey, that ye may live, and not die: and hearken not unto Hezekiah, when he persuadeth you, saying, The LORD will deliver us.

17 Until I come and take you away to a land like your own land, a land of corn and wine, a land of bread and vineyards.

He promises them a new land of plenty—corn fields, olive groves, vineyards, wheat and wine. In his duplicity he really planned on keeping the best for slaves.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:**

**2Ki 17:6** In the ninth year of Hoshea the king of Assyria took Samaria, and carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor by the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.

18 *Beware lest Hezekiah persuade you, saying, the LORD will deliver us.*
Hath any of the gods of the nations delivered his land out of the hand of the king of Assyria?

His argument is that no idol god had delivered the subjects of other nations and therefore Israel’s God would be no different.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:**

 Isa 37:12 Have the gods of the nations delivered them which my fathers have destroyed, as Gozan, and Haran, and Rezeph, and the children of Eden which were in Telassar? Read: Psa 92:5-7

19 Where are the gods of Hamath and Arphad? where are the gods of Sepharvaim? and have they delivered Samaria out of my hand?

Hamath and Arphad, (cities in Syria), Sepharvaim, and Samaria (capitol of the 10 northern tribes of Israel.)—Not one of the heathen gods responded when these nations or cities were under attack.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

 Num 34:8 From mount Hor ye shall point out your border unto the entrance of Hamath; and the goings forth of the border shall be to Zedad:

20 Who are they among all the gods of these lands, that have delivered their land out of my hand, that the LORD should deliver Jerusalem out of my hand?

He thinks that it is ridiculous for Israel to trust their God since all the other cities trusted their god and it profits them nothing.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:**

 Isa 37:33-35 Therefore thus saith the LORD concerning the king of Assyria, He shall not come into this city, nor shoot an arrow there, nor come before it with shields, nor cast a bank against it. By the way that he came, by the same shall he return, and shall not come into this city, saith the LORD. For I
will defend this city to save it for mine own sake, and for my servant David’s sake.

21But they held their peace, and answered him not a word: for the king’s commandment was, saying, Answer him not.

God repeatedly tells his people to be silent—what argument could they have put forward?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Psa 39:1 To the chief Musician, even to Jeduthun, A Psalm of David. I said, I will take heed to my ways, that I sin not with my tongue: I will keep my mouth with a bridle, while the wicked is before me.

Pro 26:4 Answer not a fool according to his folly, lest thou also be like unto him.

22Then came Eliakim, the son of Hilkiah, that was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah, the son of Asaph, the recorder, to Hezekiah with their clothes rent, and told him the words of Rabshakeh.

The three men who were sent to negotiate a peace settlement return with a no progress report—to tear one’s clothes was a sign of defeat and despair.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

2Ki 18:27 But Rabshakeh said unto them, Hath my master sent me to thy master, and to thee, to speak these words? hath he not sent me to the men which sit on the wall, that they may eat their own dung, and drink their own piss with you?
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 37

A day of trouble had arrived for the administration of Hezekiah. Assyria had reneged on its peace treaty and invaded Israel. Jerusalem was next unless they surrendered. A meeting took place at the laundry mat—no agreement could be reached! A prayer meeting was held in the temple compound and the prophet Isaiah was asked if he had received any word from the LORD. He then reveals that God is going to cause a rumor thus sending the Rabashack hurriedly back to defend his country against an invasion of the Ethiopians. Meanwhile in the army camping nearby, God sends a death angel and 185,000 Assyrian soldiers were dead the following morning, and the king breaks camp and rushes home and goes to the idol temple to worship where his two sons slip in and kill him.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 37

1And it came to pass, when king Hezekiah heard it, that he rent his clothes, and covered himself with sackcloth, and went into the house of the LORD.

Hezekiah tore his robe, put on an old gunnysack and went to the temple to pray.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

2Ki 19:1 And it came to pass, when king Hezekiah heard it, that he rent his clothes, and covered himself with sackcloth, and went into the house of the LORD. Read: 2Ki 19:2-3; Ezr 9:5

2And he sent Eliakim, who was over the household, and Shebna the
scribe, and the elders of the priests covered with sackcloth, unto Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz.

He sends his prime minister and a large contingent of people to see if the prophet has any revelation from God. They not only inquire of the prophet Isaiah but they went to see the prophetess Huldah.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITATIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

2Ki 22:13-14 Go ye, enquire of the LORD for me, and for the people, and for all Judah, concerning the words of this book that is found: for great is the wrath of the LORD that is kindled against us, because our fathers have not hearkened unto the words of this book, to do according unto all that which is written concerning us. So Hilkiah the priest, and Ahikam, and Achbor, and Shaphan, and Asahiah, went unto Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum the son of Tikvah, the son of Harhas, keeper of the wardrobe; (now she dwelt in Jerusalem in the college;) and they communed with her.

3And they said unto him, Thus saith Hezekiah, This day is a day of trouble, and of rebuke, and of blasphemy: for the children are come to the birth, and there is not strength to bring forth.

It was a day of trouble and frustration—he likens the day to a breech birth and the woman hasn't enough strength to give birth to the baby.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

2Ki 22:12 And the king commanded Hilkiah the priest, and Ahikam the son of Shaphan, and Achbor the son of Michaiah, and Shaphan the scribe, and Asahiah a servant of the king's, saying,

4It may be the LORD thy God will hear the words of Rabshakeh, whom the king of Assyria his master hath sent to reproach the living God, and will reprove the words which the LORD thy God hath heard: wherefore lift up thy prayer for the remnant that is left.

He is hoping that God has heard Rabashakeh defying the living God and
taunting Hezekiah with insults. He is hoping that God won’t let him get away with these taunts.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**2Ch 15:4** But when they in their trouble did turn unto the LORD God of Israel, and sought him, he was found of them.

**Psa 50:15** And call upon me in the day of trouble: I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me.

**Psa 116:3-4** The sorrows of death compassed me, and the pains of hell gat hold upon me: I found trouble and sorrow. Then called I upon the name of the LORD; O LORD, I beseech thee, deliver my soul. Read: **2Sa 16:12**

5So the servants of king Hezekiah came to Isaiah.

6And Isaiah said unto them, Thus shall ye say unto your master, Thus saith the LORD, Be not afraid of the words that thou hast heard, wherewith the servants of the king of Assyria have blasphemed me.

The deputation returns with words of reassurance that God had heard the blasphemy.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**2Ki 19:5-7** So the servants of king Hezekiah came to Isaiah. And Isaiah said unto them, Thus shall ye say to your master, Thus saith the LORD, Be not afraid of the words which thou hast heard, with which the servants of the king of Assyria have blasphemed me. Behold, I will send a blast upon him, and he shall hear a rumour, and shall return to his own land; and I will cause him to fall by the sword in his own land.

7Behold, I will send a blast upon him, and he shall hear a rumour, and return to his own land; and I will cause him to fall by the sword in his own land.

This blast of alarm was the news from Assyria that they were about to be
attacked by Ethiopia. When he gets home he will be assassinated by his two sons.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

2Ch 32:21 And the LORD sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men of valour, and the leaders and captains in the camp of the king of Assyria. So he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, they that came forth of his own bowels slew him there with the sword.

8So Rabshakeh returned, and found the king of Assyria warring against Libnah: for he had heard that he was departed from Lachish.

Libnah and Lachish were cities in Judah that Assyria was warring against.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

2Ki 19:8 So Rabshakeh returned, and found the king of Assyria warring against Libnah: for he had heard that he was departed from Lachish.

2Ki 19:9 And when he heard say of Tirhakah king of Ethiopia, Behold, he is come out to fight against thee: he sent messengers again unto Hezekiah, saying,

9And he heard say concerning Tirhakah king of Ethiopia, He is come forth to make war with thee. And when he heard it, he sent messengers to Hezekiah, saying,

The prophet of Isaiah had already told Hezekiah that the king would hear a rumor—the rumor was that Assyria was under attack and he needed to come and defend the homeland.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

10Thus shall ye speak to Hezekiah king of Judah, saying, Let not thy God,
in whom thou trustest, deceive thee, saying, Jerusalem shall not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria.

Hezekiah was warned by the Assyrians not to trust God for the Assyrian king who had retreated would return to capture them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

2Ki 18:5 He trusted in the LORD God of Israel; so that after him was none like him among all the kings of Judah, nor any that were before him.

11Behold, thou hast heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands by destroying them utterly; and shalt thou be delivered?

Listen, the king of Assyria has crushed and exterminated all who had opposed him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

2Ki 17:4-5 And the king of Assyria found conspiracy in Hoshea: for he had sent messengers to So king of Egypt, and brought no present to the king of Assyria, as he had done year by year: therefore the king of Assyria shut him up, and bound him in prison. Then the king of Assyria came up throughout all the land, and went up to Samaria, and besieged it three years.

12Have the gods of the nations delivered them which my fathers have destroyed, as Gozan, and Haran, and Rezeph, and the children of Eden which were in Telassar?

One country after another was destroyed by Assyria and none of the idol gods stepped in to help them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 46:5-6 To whom will ye liken me, and make me equal, and compare me, that we may be like? They lavish gold out of the bag, and weigh silver in the
balance, and hire a goldsmith; and he maketh it a god: they fall down, yea, they worship.

13 Where is the king of Hamath, and the king of Arphad, and the king of the city of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivah?

Those who governed the city were executed and those with a trade were used as slaves.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

2Ki 17:24 And the king of Assyria brought men from Babylon, and from Cuthah, and from Ava, and from Hamath, and from Sepharvaim, and placed them in the cities of Samaria instead of the children of Israel: and they possessed Samaria, and dwelt in the cities thereof. Read: 2Ki 17:30-31

14 And Hezekiah received the letter from the hand of the messengers, and read it: and Hezekiah went up unto the house of the LORD, and spread it before the LORD.

Hezekiah laid out the contents of the letter before the LORD and prayed and wept.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Joe 2:17-20 Let the priests, the ministers of the LORD, weep between the porch and the altar, and let them say, Spare thy people, O LORD, and give not thine heritage to reproach, that the heathen should rule over them: wherefore should they say among the people, Where is their God? Then will the LORD be jealous for his land, and pity his people. Yea, the LORD will answer and say unto his people, Behold, I will send you corn, and wine, and oil, and ye shall be satisfied therewith: and I will no more make you a reproach among the heathen: But I will remove far off from you the northern army, and will drive him into a land barren and desolate, with his face toward the east sea, and his hinder part toward the utmost sea, and his stink shall come up, and his ill savour shall come up, because he hath done great things.

15 And Hezekiah prayed unto the LORD, saying,
16 O LORD of hosts, God of Israel, that dwellest between the cherubims, thou art the God, even thou alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth: thou hast made heaven and earth.

God was enthroned (in symbol) above the ark of the temple. The king ascribes God as creator and sustainer of the universe.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 44:6 Thus saith the LORD the King of Israel, and his redeemer the LORD of hosts; I am the first, and I am the last; and beside me there is no God. Read: Isa 43:10-11

17 Incline thine ear, O LORD, and hear; open thine eyes, O LORD, and see: and hear all the words of Sennacherib, which hath sent to reproach the living God.

He asked God to listen, and to see, and to hear, what Sennacherib had written, taunting and insulting the living God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Dan 9:17-19 Now therefore, O our God, hear the prayer of thy servant, and his supplications, and cause thy face to shine upon thy sanctuary that is desolate, for the Lord’s sake. O my God, incline thine ear, and hear; open thine eyes, and behold our desolations, and the city which is called by thy name: for we do not present our supplications before thee for our righteousnesses, but for thy great mercies. O Lord, hear; O Lord, forgive; O Lord, hearken and do; defer not, for thine own sake, O my God: for thy city and thy people are called by thy name.

18 Of a truth, LORD, the kings of Assyria have laid waste all the nations, and their countries,

It was true that the king of Assyria had brought to ruin nations and the lands they lived in.
1Ch 5:26 And the God of Israel stirred up the spirit of Pul king of Assyria, and the spirit of Tilgathpilneser king of Assyria, and he carried them away, even the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, and brought them unto Halah, and Habor, and Hara, and to the river Gozan, unto this day.

19And have cast their gods into the fire: for they were no gods, but the work of men's hands, wood and stone: therefore they have destroyed them.

Nothing angered God more than to worship idols.

Isa 44:9-10 They that make a graven image are all of them vanity; and their delectable things shall not profit; and they are their own witnesses; they see not, nor know; that they may be ashamed. Who hath formed a god, or molten a graven image that is profitable for nothing?

21Then Isaiah the son of Amoz sent unto Hezekiah, saying, Thus saith the LORD God of Israel, Whereas thou hast prayed to me against Sennacherib king of Assyria:

In answer to the prayers be assured that there will be an appropriate response.

Act 4:31 And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spake the word of God with boldness.

22This is the word which the LORD hath spoken concerning him; The virgin, the daughter of Zion, hath despised thee, and laughed thee to scorn; the daughter of Jerusalem hath shaken her head at thee.
Zion despises and mocks you—she is laughing you to scorn—you may insult idol gods but you can’t insult the God of heaven and get away with it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Psa 2:2-4** The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against the LORD, and against his anointed, saying,

3 Let us break their bands asunder, and cast away their cords from us.

4 He that sitteth in the heavens shall laugh: the Lord shall have them in derision.

23 Whom hast thou reproached and blasphemed? and against whom hast thou exalted thy voice, and lifted up thine eyes on high? even against the Holy One of Israel.

He taunted, defied, insulted and reviled the only God that could retaliate.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Isa 41:14** Fear not, thou worm Jacob, and ye men of Israel; I will help thee, saith the LORD, and thy redeemer, the Holy One of Israel. Read: **2Ki 19:4**

24 By thy servants hast thou reproached the Lord, and hast said, By the multitude of my chariots am I come up to the height of the mountains, to the sides of Lebanon; and I will cut down the tall cedars thereof, and the choice fir trees thereof; and I will enter into the height of his border, and the forest of his Carmel.

This brag-bag claims that he can scale the highest mountain—chop down the choicest trees—and push right into its furthest recesses.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

**2Ki 19:22** Whom hast thou reproached and blasphemed? and against whom hast thou exalted thy voice, and lifted up thine eyes on high? even against the Holy One of Israel.
Exo 9:17 As yet exaltest thou thyself against my people, that thou wilt not let them go?

25I have digged, and drunk water; and with the sole of my feet have I dried up all the rivers of the besieged places.

More boasting—he has dug a well of water and drained their rivers.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

2Ki 19:23-24 By thy messengers thou hast reproached the Lord, and hast said, With the multitude of my chariots I am come up to the height of the mountains, to the sides of Lebanon, and will cut down the tall cedar trees thereof, and the choice fir trees thereof: and I will enter into the lodgings of his borders, and into the forest of his Carmel. I have digged and drunk strange waters, and with the sole of my feet have I dried up all the rivers of besieged places.

26Hast thou not heard long ago, how I have done it; and of ancient times, that I have formed it? now have I brought it to pass, that thou shouldest be to lay waste defenced cities into ruinous heaps.

Have you not realized that a long time ago I planned it and I formed it. That I am the one who has power to lay waste defenced cities.

27Therefore their inhabitants were of small power, they were dismayed and confounded: they were as the grass of the field, and as the green herb, as the grass on the housetops, and as corn blasted before it be grown up.

These people were drained of their power—like tender grass shoots on a thatched roof, or like a field of corn in a drought.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Psa 129:6 Let them be as the grass upon the housetops, which withereth afore it groweth up: Read: Isa 40:6-8
28But I know thy abode, and thy going out, and thy coming in, and thy rage against me.

God lets him know that he had him in his GPS—he has zeroed in on him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORESE THE TEXT:

Psa 139:2-5 Thou knowest my downsitting and mine uprising, thou understandest my thought afar off. Thou compassest my path and my lying down, and art acquainted with all my ways. For there is not a word in my tongue, but, lo, O LORD, thou knowest it altogether. Thou hast beset me behind and before, and laid thine hand upon me.

29Because thy rage against me, and thy tumult, is come up into mine ears, therefore will I put my hook in thy nose, and my bridle in thy lips, and I will turn thee back by the way by which thou camest.

When God decides to make an end of a wicked man there is no limit to his power. Now who is boss? God is going to put a hook in his nose and a bridle in his mouth.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Nah 1:9-11 What do ye imagine against the LORD? he will make an utter end: affliction shall not rise up the second time. For while they be folden together as thorns, and while they are drunken as drunkards, they shall be devoured as stubble fully dry. There is one come out of thee, that imagineth evil against the LORD, a wicked counsellor.

30And this shall be a sign unto thee, Ye shall eat this year such as groweth of itself; and the second year that which springeth of the same: and in the third year sow ye, and reap, and plant vineyards, and eat the fruit thereof.

Put out your gardens, because two years from now you will have more than enough, and the third year you will have a bumper crop.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

2Ki 20:9 And Isaiah said, This sign shalt thou have of the LORD, that the LORD will do the thing that he hath spoken: shall the shadow go forward ten degrees, or go back ten degrees? Read: 1Ki 13:3-5

And the remnant that is escaped of the house of Judah shall again take root downward, and bear fruit upward:

The surviving remnant will take new root and have many children and grandchildren.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Jer 44:28 Yet a small number that escape the sword shall return out of the land of Egypt into the land of Judah, and all the remnant of Judah, that are gone into the land of Egypt to sojourn there, shall know whose words shall stand, mine, or theirs. Read: Isa 65:9

For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant, and they that escape out of mount Zion: the zeal of the LORD of hosts shall do this.

This band of survivors that escaped out of Zion—the remnant—shall go out and repopulate the cities and farmland.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

2Ki 19:31 For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant, and they that escape out of mount Zion: the zeal of the LORD of hosts shall do this.

Joe 2:18 Then will the LORD be jealous for his land, and pity his people.

Zec 1:14 So the angel that communed with me said unto me, Cry thou, saying, Thus saith the LORD of hosts; I am jealous for Jerusalem and for Zion with a great jealousy.

Therefore thus saith the LORD concerning the king of Assyria, He shall
not come into this city, nor shoot an arrow there, nor come before it with shields, nor cast a bank against it.

He will not fire a shot—he will not march around it—he will not build a siege ramp against it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

2Ki 19:32-34 Therefore thus saith the LORD concerning the king of Assyria, He shall not come into this city, nor shoot an arrow there, nor come before it with shield, nor cast a bank against it. By the way that he came, by the same shall he return, and shall not come into this city, saith the LORD. For I will defend this city, to save it, for mine own sake, and for my servant David’s sake.

34By the way that he came, by the same shall he return, and shall not come into this city, saith the LORD.

The eternal declares that he will take the same path back home.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 37:29 Because thy rage against me, and thy tumult, is come up into mine ears, therefore will I put my hook in thy nose, and my bridle in thy lips, and I will turn thee back by the way by which thou camest.

35For I will defend this city to save it for mine own sake, and for my servant David’s sake.

For God’s honor and in memory of his servant David.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 31:5 As birds flying, so will the LORD of hosts defend Jerusalem; defending also he will deliver it; and passing over he will preserve it.

2Ki 20:6 And I will add unto thy days fifteen years; and I will deliver thee
and this city out of the hand of the king of Assyria; and I will defend this city for mine own sake, and for my servant David’s sake.

36Then the angel of the LORD went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred and fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses.

When daylight came—just an army or corpses, 185,000 never awoke the next morning.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

2Ch 32:21-22 And the LORD sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men of valour, and the leaders and captains in the camp of the king of Assyria. So he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, they that came forth of his own bowels slew him there with the sword. Thus the LORD saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all other, and guided them on every side.

37So Sennacherib king of Assyria departed, and went and returned, and dwelt at Nineveh.

He broke camp leaving food and supplies behind.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Gen 10:11 Out of that land went forth Asshur, and buildevd Nineveh, and the city Rehoboth, and Calah,

Jon 1:2 Arise, go to Nineveh, that great city, and cry against it; for their wickedness is come up before me.

38And it came to pass, as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, that Adrammelech and Sharezer his sons smote him with the sword; and they escaped into the land of Armenia: and Esarhaddon his son reigned in his stead.
He went to the idols temple to honor the idol and his two sons slipped in and slew their own father—they thought with fear that they would be put to death and his third son reigned in his stead. Esar-haddon was the third son of Sennacherib; and having reigned twenty-nine years over the Assyrians, he took advantage of the anarchy and confusion which followed the death of Mesessimordacus, and seized upon Babylon; which he added to his former empire, and reigned over both for thirteen years.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

2Ch 32:21 And the LORD sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men of valour, and the leaders and captains in the camp of the king of Assyria. So he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, they that came forth of his own bowels slew him there with the sword.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 38

Hezekiah was the 12th king of Judah, son of Ahaz an idolator. He came to the throne in the 25th year of his life and he is at this time 39 years old. He is told by his physicians that the disease is fatal. The prophet Isaiah tells the king to set his house in order (write a will) the greatest consideration was that he was childless—now he will leave this world without a successor to become king. He prays for God to have mercy upon him. God sent Isaiah to reveal the good news that 15 years would be added to his life and he would be permitted to enter the temple in three days and would not be childless. Hezekiah wants a sign—the shadow on the steps went back ten degrees. Hezekiah writes a poem about his healing.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 38

In those days was Hezekiah sick unto death. And Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz came unto him, and said unto him, Thus saith the LORD, Set thine house in order: for thou shalt die, and not live.

Setting one’s house in order is writing a will or a living trust in which your affairs are decided before the funeral. It is there to give your last instructions.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

2Ch 32:24 In those days Hezekiah was sick to the death, and prayed unto the LORD: and he spake unto him, and he gave him a sign.

2Sa 17:23 And when Ahithophel saw that his counsel was not followed, he saddled his ass, and arose, and gat him home to his house, to his city, and put his household in order, and hanged himself; and died, and was buried in the sepulchre of his father. Read: 2Ki 20:1
2Then Hezekiah turned his face toward the wall, and prayed unto the LORD,

Hezekiah’s couch was probably placed in a corner, which is the place of honour in the East; in which, turning on either side, he must turn his face to the wall; by which he would withdraw himself from those attending him in his apartment.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Psa 50:15 And call upon me in the day of trouble: I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me.

Mat 6:6 But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father which is in secret; and thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward thee openly.

3And said, Remember now, O LORD, I beseech thee, how I have walked before thee in truth and with a perfect heart, and have done that which is good in thy sight. And Hezekiah wept sore.

While he is in death’s waiting room, he weeps and cries painful tears. His plea was based upon absolute devotion to God—loyal service and living honestly and heartily. He had destroyed images and other forms of idol worship, including the brazen serpent, he repaired the temple and its furniture, he held a great Passover and many other great things were accomplished during his reign. In this prayer he wants God to remember how he walked before him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

2Ch 31:20-21 And thus did Hezekiah throughout all Judah, and wrought that which was good and right and truth before the LORD his God. And in every work that he began in the service of the house of God, and in the law, and in the commandments, to seek his God, he did it with all his heart, and prospered.

4Then came the word of the LORD to Isaiah, saying,

God speaks the second time to Isaiah about the state of the king.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

1Ki 9:4-5 And if thou wilt walk before me, as David thy father walked, in integrity of heart, and in uprightness, to do according to all that I have commanded thee, and wilt keep my statutes and my judgments: Then I will establish the throne of thy kingdom upon Israel for ever, as I promised to David thy father, saying, There shall not fail thee a man upon the throne of Israel.

5Go, and say to Hezekiah, Thus saith the LORD, the God of David thy father, I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears: behold, I will add unto thy days fifteen years.

Isaiah is told that it’s a message from the God of David. God had listened to the plea of Hezekiah and responds with a new start that he has an additional 15 years.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

2Ch 32:22 Thus the LORD saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all other, and guided them on every side.

2Ti 4:17 Notwithstanding the Lord stood with me, and strengthened me; that by me the preaching might be fully known, and that all the Gentiles might hear: and I was delivered out of the mouth of the lion.

6And I will deliver thee and this city out of the hand of the king of Assyria: and I will defend this city.

I am going to save both you and this city from the hands of the king of Assyria.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Isa 37:35 For I will defend this city to save it for mine own sake, and for my servant David’s sake.
7And this shall be a sign unto thee from the LORD, that the LORD will do this thing that he hath spoken;

Hezekiah is asking for a confirming sign that he will be healed—go up to the house of God on the third day.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**Isa 38:22** Hezekiah also had said, What is the sign that I shall go up to the house of the LORD?

**Isa 7:11** Ask thee a sign of the LORD thy God; ask it either in the depth, or in the height above.

**Jdg 6:17** And he said unto him, If now I have found grace in thy sight, then shew me a sign that thou talkest with me.

**2Ki 20:8** And Hezekiah said unto Isaiah, What shall be the sign that the LORD will heal me, and that I shall go up into the house of the LORD the third day?

"Behold, I will bring again the shadow of the degrees, which is gone down in the sun dial of Ahaz, ten degrees backward. So the sun returned ten degrees, by which degrees it was gone down.

This was a staircase with steps marking the hours of the day—a tower was erected that bisected the sun and caused it to leave a shadow on the step that contained the time of day. This was indeed a miracle and only God can tell how it was performed. I am not falling for the bogus internet story about people at NASA discovering the missing time. That story has been debunked.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**Jos 10:13-14** And the sun stood still, and the moon stayed, until the people had avenged themselves upon their enemies. Is not this written in the book of Jasher? So the sun stood still in the midst of heaven, and hasted not to go down about a whole day. And there was no day like that before it or after it,
that the LORD hearkened unto the voice of a man: for the LORD fought for Israel.

2Ki 20:11 And Isaiah the prophet cried unto the LORD: and he brought the shadow ten degrees backward, by which it had gone down in the dial of Ahaz.

2Ch 32:24 In those days Hezekiah was sick to the death, and prayed unto the LORD: and he spake unto him, and he gave him a sign.

Mat 16:1 The Pharisees also with the Sadducees came, and tempting desired him that he would shew them a sign from heaven.

9The writing of Hezekiah king of Judah, when he had been sick, and was recovered of his sickness:

A poem written by Hezekiah.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORESE THE TEXT:

Psa 30:11 Thou hast turned for me my mourning into dancing: thou hast put off my sackcloth, and girded me with gladness;

Psa 30:12 To the end that my glory may sing praise to thee, and not be silent. O LORD my God, I will give thanks unto thee for ever.

10I said in the cutting off of my days, I shall go to the gates of the grave: I am deprived of the residue of my years.

It was in the prime of his life that he was being robbed of the normal years. He hadn’t celebrated his 40th birthday yet.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

2Co 1:9 But we had the sentence of death in ourselves, that we should not trust in ourselves, but in God which raiseth the dead:
11I said, I shall not see the LORD, even the LORD, in the land of the living: I shall behold man no more with the inhabitants of the world.

He knew that he was leaving this transitory world and would never again see his friends. He had no children and would leave this world without an heir to the throne.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Psa 6:5 For in death there is no remembrance of thee: in the grave who shall give thee thanks?

Ecc 9:5-6 For the living know that they shall die: but the dead know not any thing, neither have they any more a reward; for the memory of them is forgotten. Also their love, and their hatred, and their envy, is now perished; neither have they any more a portion for ever in any thing that is done under the sun.

12Mine age is departed, and is removed from me as a shepherd’s tent: I have cut off like a weaver my life: he will cut me off with pining sickness: from day even to night wilt thou make an end of me.

My life is cut off like a rug from the loom. He was suffering night and day and he knew that his life was like a brittle thread.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Psa 89:45-47 The days of his youth hast thou shortened: thou hast covered him with shame. Selah. How long, LORD? wilt thou hide thyself for ever? shall thy wrath burn like fire? Remember how short my time is: wherefore hast thou made all men in vain?

Psa 102:11 My days are like a shadow that declineth; and I am withered like grass.

Job 17:1 My breath is corrupt, my days are extinct, the graves are ready for me.
13 I reckoned till morning, that, as a lion, so will he break all my bones: from day even to night wilt thou make an end of me.

Day and night he was given over to suffering—he felt like a man who had been mauled by a lion. The agony of certain kinds of fever gives the feeling of breaking ones bones.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

1Ki 13:24 And when he was gone, a lion met him by the way, and slew him: and his carcase was cast in the way, and the ass stood by it, the lion also stood by the carcase.

1Ki 20:36 Then said he unto him, Because thou hast not obeyed the voice of the LORD, behold, as soon as thou art departed from me, a lion shall slay thee. And as soon as he was departed from him, a lion found him, and slew him.

14 Like a crane or a swallow, so did I chatter: I did mourn as a dove: mine eyes fail with looking upward: O LORD, I am oppressed; undertake for me.

He was delirious, and his words were inaudible—his speech was like the moan of a dove, or the chattering of a swallow, or the squawking of a doomed chicken. He couldn’t sleep—too upset and troubled and racked with pain.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Psa 102:4-7 My heart is smitten, and withered like grass; so that I forget to eat my bread. By reason of the voice of my groaning my bones cleave to my skin. I am like a pelican of the wilderness: I am like an owl of the desert. I watch, and am as a sparrow alone upon the house top.

15 What shall I say? he hath both spoken unto me, and himself hath done it: I shall go softly all my years in the bitterness of my soul.

He feels that God had sent this sickness on him—all night long he turns from
side to side, but there is no rest to be obtained—he was tossing every hour in
the bitterness of pain.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

**Psa 39:9-10** I was dumb, I opened not my mouth; because thou didst it. Remove thy stroke away from me: I am consumed by the blow of thine hand.

**Joh 12:27** Now is my soul troubled; and what shall I say? Father, save me from this hour: but for this cause came I unto this hour.

16**O LORD, by these things men live, and in all these things is the life of my spirit: so wilt thou recover me, and make me to live.**

He is still living in hope—he believes that some way there will be a restoration—he was still asking God to revive him and grant him recovery.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

**Job 33:19-22** He is chastened also with pain upon his bed, and the multitude of his bones with strong pain: So that his life abhorreth bread, and his soul dainty meat. His flesh is consumed away, that it cannot be seen; and his bones that were not seen stick out. Yea, his soul draweth near unto the grave, and his life to the destroyers.

17**Behold, for peace I had great bitterness: but thou hast in love to my soul delivered it from the pit of corruption: for thou hast cast all my sins behind thy back.**

Bitterness, bitterness—but now he sees it all—he gets a glimpse of deliverance—God has brought him out of the pit of desperation—forgiven him all of his sins.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

**Job 3:26** I was not in safety, neither had I rest, neither was I quiet; yet trouble came.
Job 29:18  Then I said, I shall die in my nest, and I shall multiply my days as the sand.

Mic 7:18-19  Who is a God like unto thee, that pardoneth iniquity, and passeth by the transgression of the remnant of his heritage? He retaineth not his anger for ever, because he delighteth in mercy. He will turn again, he will have compassion upon us; he will subdue our iniquities; and thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea.

“For the grave cannot praise thee, death cannot celebrate thee: they that go down into the pit cannot hope for thy truth.”

Dead people in caskets are not thanking you—choirs are not praising you from the morgue.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Psa 6:5  For in death there is no remembrance of thee: in the grave who shall give thee thanks?

Psa 30:9  What profit is there in my blood, when I go down to the pit? Shall the dust praise thee? shall it declare thy truth?

Ecc 9:9  Live joyfully with the wife whom thou lovest all the days of the life of thy vanity, which he hath given thee under the sun, all the days of thy vanity: for that is thy portion in this life, and in thy labour which thou takest under the sun.

Pro 14:32  The wicked is driven away in his wickedness: but the righteous hath hope in his death

“The living, the living, he shall praise thee, as I do this day: the father to the children shall make known thy truth.”

Only the living can praise God—it is the duty of fathers to tell their children why they are praising him.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

**Psa 146:2** While I live will I praise the LORD: I will sing praises unto my God while I have any being.

*The LORD was ready to save me: therefore we will sing my songs to the stringed instruments all the days of our life in the house of the LORD.*

Strike up the music—fiddles and mandolins—celebrate when God delivers you from the grave.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

**Psa 9:13-14** Have mercy upon me, O LORD; consider my trouble which I suffer of them that hate me, thou that liftest me up from the gates of death: That I may shew forth all thy praise in the gates of the daughter of Zion: I will rejoice in thy salvation. the LORD, and to enquire in his temple.

**Psa 27:5-6** For in the time of trouble he shall hide me in his pavilion: in the secret of his tabernacle shall he hide me; he shall set me up upon a rock. And now shall mine head be lifted up above mine enemies round about me: therefore will I offer in his tabernacle sacrifices of joy; I will sing, yea, I will sing praises unto the LORD.

**Psa 150:4** Praise him with the timbrel and dance: praise him with stringed instruments and organs.

**Hab 3:19** The LORD God is my strength, and he will make my feet like hinds’ feet, and he will make me to walk upon mine high places. To the chief singer on my stringed instruments.

*For Isaiah had said, Let them take a lump of figs, and lay it for a plaister upon the boil, and he shall recover.*

A poultice was prepared from an ointment of figs and was laid on the boil to draw out the puss and infection. This remedy was probably used as a home remedy by the populace.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Joh 9:6-7 When he had thus spoken, he spat on the ground, and made clay of the spittle, and he anointed the eyes of the blind man with the clay, And said unto him, Go, wash in the pool of Siloam, (which is by interpretation, Sent.) He went his way therefore, and washed, and came seeing.

Mar 7:33-34 And he took him aside from the multitude, and put his fingers into his ears, and he spit, and touched his tongue; And looking up to heaven, he sighed, and saith unto him, Ephphatha, that is, Be opened.

22Hezekiah also had said, What is the sign that I shall go up to the house of the LORD?

He had little hope that he would ever set foot in the house of the LORD again.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Psa 42:1-2 To the chief Musician, Maschil, for the sons of Korah. As the hart panteth after the water brooks, so panteth my soul after thee, O God. My soul thirsteth for God, for the living God: when shall I come and appear before God?

Psa 84:1-2 To the chief Musician upon Gittith, A Psalm for the sons of Korah. How amiable are thy tabernacles, O LORD of hosts!

2 My soul longeth, yea, even fainteth for the courts of the LORD: my heart and my flesh crieth out for the living God.

Psa 122:1 A Song of degrees of David. I was glad when they said unto me, Let us go into the house of the LORD.

Joh 5:14 Afterward Jesus findeth him in the temple, and said unto him, Behold, thou art made whole: sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto thee.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 39

Hezekiah entertains an envoy from Babylon—he is so delighted with the letter and gifts that he opens all the vaults and jewelry boxes for them to see the world’s greatest collection of valuables that he and his ancestors had amassed over centuries. He showed them the farms and stables, herds of cattle, horses and sheep—opened the kitchen cabinets and showed them the spices—this proud king bragged every step of the tour. When the envoys leave Isaiah will pay the king a visit and spell out on no uncertain terms what God will do for this foolish act.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 39

At that time Merodachbaladan, the son of Baladan, king of Babylon, sent letters and a present to Hezekiah: for he had heard that he had been sick, and was recovered.

Upon the news that Hezekiah had recovered from his fatal disease the king of Babylon sent envoys with a letter and a present to Hezekiah.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

2Ch 32:23-33 And many brought gifts unto the LORD to Jerusalem, and presents to Hezekiah king of Judah: so that he was magnified in the sight of all nations from thenceforth. In those days Hezekiah was sick to the death, and prayed unto the LORD: and he spake unto him, and he gave him a sign. But Hezekiah rendered not again according to the benefit done unto him; for his heart was lifted up: therefore there was wrath upon him, and upon Judah and Jerusalem. Notwithstanding Hezekiah humbled himself for the pride of his heart, both he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so that the wrath of the LORD came not upon them in the days of Hezekiah. And Hezekiah had
exceeding much riches and honour: and he made himself treasuries for silver, and for gold, and for precious stones, and for spices, and for shields, and for all manner of pleasant jewels; Storehouses also for the increase of corn, and wine, and oil; and stalls for all manner of beasts, and cotes for flocks. Moreover he provided him cities, and possessions of flocks and herds in abundance: for God had given him substance very much. This same Hezekiah also stopped the upper watercourse of Gihon, and brought it straight down to the west side of the city of David. And Hezekiah prospered in all his works. Howbeit in the business of the ambassadors of the princes of Babylon, who sent unto him to enquire of the wonder that was done in the land, God left him, to try him, that he might know all that was in his heart. Now the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and his goodness, behold, they are written in the vision of Isaiah the prophet, the son of Amoz, and in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. And Hezekiah slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the chiefest of the sepulchres of the sons of David: and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem did him honour at his death. And Manasseh his son reigned in his stead.

2And Hezekiah was glad of them, and shewed them the house of his precious things, the silver, and the gold, and the spices, and the precious ointment, and all the house of his armour, and all that was found in his treasures: there was nothing in his house, nor in all his dominion, that Hezekiah shewed them not.

Hezekiah was delighted that the king of Babylon would send a letter and gifts—so he takes the ambassadors on a personal tour of the palace. Hezekiah had constructed vaults to hold all of his silver and gold and precious stones—display cases for the spices and trophy cases for shields and boxes for jewelry—then he gives them a tour of the place where he had built storage for the grain and the wine cellars and a place to store the olive oil—he gave them a tour of the horse barns and sheep barns and then gave them a tour of the armory.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

2Ch 32:31 Howbeit in the business of the ambassadors of the princes of Babylon, who sent unto him to enquire of the wonder that was done in the land, God left him, to try him, that he might know all that was in his heart.

Pro 4:23 Keep thy heart with all diligence; for out of it are the issues of life.
1Ki 10:10 And she gave the king an hundred and twenty talents of gold, and of spices very great store, and precious stones: there came no more such abundance of spices as these which the queen of Sheba gave to king Solomon.

Then came Isaiah the prophet unto king Hezekiah, and said unto him, What said these men? and from whence came they unto thee? And Hezekiah said, They are come from a far country unto me, even from Babylon.

Isaiah is stunned that the king would be so stupid as to show off all his treasuries to a foreign nation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

2Ki 20:14-15 Then came Isaiah the prophet unto king Hezekiah, and said unto him, What said these men? and from whence came they unto thee? And Hezekiah said, They are come from a far country, even from Babylon. And he said, What have they seen in thine house? And Hezekiah answered, All the things that are in mine house have they seen: there is nothing among my treasures that I have not shewed them.

4Then said he, What have they seen in thine house? And Hezekiah answered, All that is in mine house have they seen: there is nothing among my treasures that I have not shewed them.

Sound familiar—we give our enemies a tour of our nuclear facilities—submarines, aircraft carriers and all our secret places.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Pro 23:5 Wilt thou set thine eyes upon that which is not? for riches certainly make themselves wings; they fly away as an eagle toward heaven. Read: Jos 7:19

5Then said Isaiah to Hezekiah, Hear the word of the LORD of hosts:

God has a word for you—this foolish act will not go unpunished.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

1Sa 13:13-14 And Samuel said to Saul, Thou hast done foolishly: thou hast not kept the commandment of the LORD thy God, which he commanded thee: for now would the LORD have established thy kingdom upon Israel for ever. But now thy kingdom shall not continue: the LORD hath sought him a man after his own heart, and the LORD hath commanded him to be captain over his people, because thou hast not kept that which the LORD commanded thee.

6Behold, the days come, that all that is in thine house, and that which thy fathers have laid up in store until this day, shall be carried to Babylon: nothing shall be left, saith the LORD.

Everything that he and his ancestors had amassed would be seized and carried away to Babylon—nothing left behind.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORESE THE TEXT:

2Ki 24:13 And he carried out thence all the treasures of the house of the LORD, and the treasures of the king’s house, and cut in pieces all the vessels of gold which Solomon king of Israel had made in the temple of the LORD, as the LORD had said. Read: 2Ch 36:18; Jer 27:21-22; Jer 52:17-19; Dan 1:2

7And of thy sons that shall issue from thee, which thou shalt beget, shall they take away; and they shall be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.

Manasseh was dragged through thorn bushes—hand cuffed and hog tied and thrown into a hell hole in Babylon and they castrated the princes so there would be no offspring from their roots and put them to work helping govern the masses.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

2Ch 33:11 Wherefore the LORD brought upon them the captains of the host
of the king of Assyria, which took Manasseh among the thorns, and bound him with fetters, and carried him to Babylon.

2Ki 24:12 And Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he, and his mother, and his servants, and his princes, and his officers: and the king of Babylon took him in the eighth year of his reign.

2Ki 25:6-7 So they took the king, and brought him up to the king of Babylon to Riblah; and they gave judgment upon him. And they slew the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes, and put out the eyes of Zedekiah, and bound him with fetters of brass, and carried him to Babylon.

8Then said Hezekiah to Isaiah, Good is the word of the LORD which thou hast spoken. He said moreover, For there shall be peace and truth in my days.

He was thinking only of himself—his answer to Isaiah was like one who speaks before his brain is engaged.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

1Sa 3:18 And Samuel told him every whit, and hid nothing from him. And he said, It is the LORD: let him do what seemeth him good.

2Sa 15:26 But if he thus say, I have no delight in thee; behold, here am I, let him do to me as seemeth good unto him.

2Ch 34:28 Behold, I will gather thee to thy fathers, and thou shalt be gathered to thy grave in peace, neither shall thine eyes see all the evil that I will bring upon this place, and upon the inhabitants of the same. So they brought the king word again.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 40

These people had lost heart and hope so the prophet laid theunction of expectation on their soul. He tells them all that they are forgiven and had paid their debt twice over and were coming home. First they had to build a road of hope and then build a highway across the land to reach Jerusalem. God tells them that all the world will know that it was by his hand that they were delivered. Their hope was like grass that had been cut and withered—their strength was as fragile as a wild flower. He calls for them to lift up their voice and spread the good news of their return to the homeland. He tells them that God is coming with a strong arm to help them—He will gather them from the four winds and care for them like a shepherd with a flock of sheep. Isaiah lets them know that it is not some idol that will deliver them but the everlasting creator. After a lengthy discourse on the weakness of idols he extols the God who will give those who wait on the Lord super human strength—they will mount up with eagles wings—run and not be weary—walk and not be faint. The prophet removed dark clouds from their skies—restored hope for the future and put a new song in their repertoire.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 40

‘Comfort ye, comfort ye my people, saith your God.

God says, take heart again—they needed to be consoled, so the prophet lays out the plan that will provide this comfort.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

2Co 1:4 Who comforteth us in all our tribulation, that we may be able to comfort them which are in any trouble, by the comfort wherewith we ourselves are comforted of God.
Lewis P. Hussell

2Speak ye comfortably to Jerusalem, and cry unto her, that her warfare is accomplished, that her iniquity is pardoned: for she hath received of the LORD’s hand double for all her sins.

Say kind words—speak soft and tender—cry unto her that her time of service has ended and her guilt is paid off—she has served her sentence—her sin is paid off—it is over and done with. She had paid double for her sin. At the end of 70 years of punishment God gave them amnesty, and forgave all the exiles for their sins and, returned them to their homeland.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Psalm 102:13 Thou shalt arise, and have mercy upon Zion: for the time to favour her, yea, the set time, is come.

Daniel 9:2 In the first year of his reign I Daniel understood by books the number of the years, whereof the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah the prophet, that he would accomplish seventy years in the desolations of Jerusalem. Read: Isaiah 61:7; Jeremiah 33:8-9

3The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the LORD, make straight in the desert a highway for our God.

Listen, I hear someone’s voice saying, clear out the rocks and stumbling blocks—smooth out the surface—make a highroad for God to bring his people home. Like most prophecies, this has a primary and secondary fulfillment. The first fulfillment was accomplished when God gave them a blanket fulfillment of forgiveness and sent them to Persia, where under Ezra and Nehemiah they made all the preparations for the return to Jerusalem. The secondary fulfillment was under the ministry of John the Baptist.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Matthew 3:1-3 In those days came John the Baptist, preaching in the wilderness of Judaea, And saying, Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand. For this is he that was spoken of by the prophet Esaias, saying, The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight. Read: Isaiah 62:10-11; Isaiah 11:16
“Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low: and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough places plain:

Valleys were filled and mountains leveled and hills reshaped—God was preparing a highway from Persia to Jerusalem—in ancient times it was customary in the march of armies to send messengers ahead to proclaim their approach and remove all obstructions. In addition to this, food and water would be provided for the marching soldiers. Isaiah uses languages to describe the exiles returning to Judea—Matthew and Luke uses the secondary fulfillment to describe a messenger by the name of John the Baptist preparing a road to receive the Messiah through the human heart—this road runs through faith and a change in conduct.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 42:11 Let the wilderness and the cities thereof lift up their voice, the villages that Kedar doth inhabit: let the inhabitants of the rock sing, let them shout from the top of the mountains.

Isa 43:19 Behold, I will do a new thing; now it shall spring forth; shall ye not know it? I will even make a way in the wilderness, and rivers in the desert.

Isa 45:2 I will go before thee, and make the crooked places straight: I will break in pieces the gates of brass, and cut in sunder the bars of iron:

“And the glory of the LORD shall be revealed, and all flesh shall see it together: for the mouth of the LORD hath spoken it.

In both fulfillment of this verse the whole world became aware of the arm of God and all nations saw the salvation of our God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 60:1 Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the LORD is risen upon thee.

Isa 52:10 The LORD hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.
Luk 2:32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

6The voice said, Cry. And be said, What shall I cry? All flesh is grass, and all the goodliness thereof is as the flower of the field:

These people were like grass that had been cut and withered— their goodliness was as fragile as a wild flower.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 37:27 Therefore their inhabitants were of small power, they were dismayed and confounded: they were as the grass of the field, and as the green herb, as the grass on the housetops, and as corn blasted before it be grown up.

Psa 90:5 Thou carriest them away as with a flood; they are as a sleep: in the morning they are like grass which groweth up.

7The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: because the spirit of the LORD bloweth upon it: surely the people is grass.

The grass is no doubt people who wither and fade like a flower beneath the breath of God. This describes how fragile man really is.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Psa 90:6 In the morning it flourisheth, and groweth up; in the evening it is cut down, and withereth.

1Pe 1:24 For all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away:

8The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our God shall stand for ever.

Grass withers and wild flowers droops and fades but the word of God is firm and forever.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

**Zec 1:6** But my words and my statutes, which I commanded my servants the prophets, did they not take hold of your fathers? and they returned and said, Like as the LORD of hosts thought to do unto us, according to our ways, and according to our doings, so hath he dealt with us.

**Mar 13:31** Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.

**1Pe 1:25** But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

**9O Zion, that bringest good tidings, get thee up into the high mountain; O Jerusalem, that bringest good tidings, lift up thy voice with strength; lift it up, be not afraid; say unto the cities of Judah, Behold your God!**

Lift up the power of your voice on the highest mountain and spread the good good news—shout without fear and don’t be timid—tell all the cities of Judea, look your God is coming.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

**Ezr 1:1-2** Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the LORD by the mouth of Jeremiah might be fulfilled, the LORD stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying, Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, The LORD God of heaven hath given me all the kingdoms of the earth; and he hath charged me to build him an house at Jerusalem, which is in Judah.

**10Behold, the Lord GOD will come with strong hand, and his arm shall rule for him: behold, his reward is with him, and his work before him.**

God is coming with a strong arm—men and women who had been kept captive by strong men of Babylon will be released and a reward is awaiting them.
Lewis P. Hussell

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Isa 49:25** But thus saith the LORD, Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered: for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

**Isa 62:11** Behold, the LORD hath proclaimed unto the end of the world, Say ye to the daughter of Zion, Behold, thy salvation cometh; behold, his reward is with him, and his work before him.

**11He shall feed his flock like a shepherd: he shall gather the lambs with his arm, and carry them in his bosom, and shall gently lead those that are with young.**

Our God gathered Israel from among all nations like a shepherd rounding up a flock of sheep—carrying some in his arms and others wrapped in a garment and carried next to his chest. He will take extra precaution with the young and tender.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 49:9-10** That thou mayest say to the prisoners, Go forth; to them that are in darkness, Shew yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places. They shall not hunger nor thirst; neither shall the heat nor sun smite them: for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

**12Who hath measured the waters in the hollow of his hand, and meted out heaven with the span, and comprehended the dust of the earth in a measure, and weighed the mountains in scales, and the hills in a balance?**

Israel had to know who it was that calculated the dimensions—measured the correct amount of water—measured the sky and atmosphere and weighed mountains and hills. God has given an atmosphere to the earth, which, possessing a certain degree of gravity perfectly suited to the necessities of all animals, vegetables, and fluids, should be the cause, in His hands, of preserving animal and vegetable life; for by it the blood circulates in the veins.
of animals, and the juices in the tubes of vegetables. Without this atmospheric pressure there could be no respiration; and the elasticity of the particles of air in animal and vegetable bodies, would rupture the vessels in which they are contained, and destroy both kinds of life.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Psa 102:25-26 Of old hast thou laid the foundation of the earth: and the heavens are the work of thy hands. They shall perish, but thou shalt endure: yea, all of them shall wax old like a garment; as a vesture shalt thou change them, and they shall be changed: Read: Job 11:7-9; Isa 48:13

13 Who hath directed the Spirit of the LORD, or being his counsellor hath taught him?

God never went to an expert for advice on anything—never called in a consultant to advise him about creation or salvation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Job 21:22 Shall any teach God knowledge? seeing he judgeth those that are high.

1Co 2:16 For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we have the mind of Christ.

14 With whom took he counsel, and who instructed him, and taught him in the path of judgment, and taught him knowledge, and shewed to him the way of understanding?

No one gave him suggestions—he never consulted the experts—was not enlightened by their advice on what was best or right. What school would God have enrolled in to learn justice—how did he learn how everything works?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Col 2:3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.
Jas 1:17 Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning.

15*Behold, the nations are as a drop of a bucket, and are counted as the small dust of the balance: behold, he taketh up the isles as a very little thing.*

A drop in a bucket of water is extremely small—dust on the scales weighs next to nothing—islands are like atoms only God has a way to measure them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Col 2:3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

Jer 10:10 But the LORD is the true God, he is the living God, and an everlasting king: at his wrath the earth shall tremble, and the nations shall not be able to abide his indignation.

Isa 11:11 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

16*And Lebanon is not sufficient to burn, nor the beasts thereof sufficient for a burnt offering.*

If we clear cut the forest of Lebanon for fuel on a sacrifice, it would be insufficient. If we sacrificed all the animals of the world it would not be enough.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Mic 6:6-7 Wherewith shall I come before the LORD, and bow myself before the high God? shall I come before him with burnt offerings, with calves of a year old? Will the LORD be pleased with thousands of rams, or with ten thousands of rivers of oil? shall I give my firstborn for my transgression, the fruit of my body for the sin of my soul?
17 All nations before him are as nothing; and they are counted to him less than nothing, and vanity.

Sum it up and “less than nothing” is zero with a minus sign.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Psa 62:9 Surely men of low degree are vanity, and men of high degree are a lie: to be laid in the balance, they are altogether lighter than vanity.

Dan 4:35 And all the inhabitants of the earth are reputed as nothing: and he doeth according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth: and none can stay his hand, or say unto him, What doest thou?

18 To whom then will ye liken God? or what likeness will ye compare unto him?

Some refer to God as “The man upstairs” while others compare him to an idol made of wood or metal.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 46:9 Remember the former things of old: for I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me,

Act 17:29 Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man’s device.

19 The workman melteth a graven image, and the goldsmith spreadeth it over with gold, and casteth silver chains.

Mankind will buy an idol that has been carved of wood, overlaid with a thin veneer of gold and decorated with filigree of silver that resembles a chain.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 37:19** And have cast their gods into the fire: for they were no gods, but the work of men’s hands, wood and stone: therefore they have destroyed them.

**Isa 41:7** So the carpenter encouraged the goldsmith, and he that smootheth with the hammer him that smote the anvil, saying, It is ready for the sodering: and he fastened it with nails, that it should not be moved.

**Isa 46:6-7** They lavish gold out of the bag, and weigh silver in the balance, and hire a goldsmith; and he maketh it a god: they fall down, yea, they worship. They bear him upon the shoulder, they carry him, and set him in his place, and he standeth; from his place shall he not remove: yea, one shall cry unto him, yet can he not answer, nor save him out of his trouble.

20He that is so impoverished that he hath no oblation chooseth a tree that will not rot; he seeketh unto him a cunning workman to prepare a graven image, that shall not be moved.

Some poor man will cut himself a tree that doesn’t rot easily and then pays a wood carver to make him a no god that has a base that does not tip over easily.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 44:13-15** The carpenter stretcheth out his rule; he marketh it out with a line; he fitteth it with planes, and he marketh it out with the compass, and maketh it after the figure of a man, according to the beauty of a man; that it may remain in the house. He heweth him down cedars, and taketh the cypress and the oak, which he strengtheneth for himself among the trees of the forest: he planteth an ash, and the rain doth nourish it. Then shall it be for a man to burn: for he will take thereof, and warm himself; yea, he kindleth it, and baketh bread; yea, he maketh a god, and worshippeth it; he maketh it a graven image, and falleth down thereto.

21Have ye not known? have ye not heard? hath it not been told you from the beginning? have ye not understood from the foundations of the earth?
They hadn’t paid attention—not listening—didn’t listen to the stories told to them about creation—listened to the peddlers of the ice age and evolution—never occurred to them to read Genesis.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Rom 1:19-21 Because that which may be known of God is manifest in them; for God hath shewed it unto them. For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse: Because that, when they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened.

It is he that sitteth upon the circle of the earth, and the inhabitants thereof are as grasshoppers; that stretcheth out the heavens as a curtain, and spreadeth them out as a tent to dwell in:

From this verse we can easily see that believers knew that the earth was not flat. In inclement weather the ancients expanded ropes from the house to poles and expanded a curtain like an awning to protect them from the hot sun. In a similar way God stretched out the sky and clouds of the sky to protect us from the scorching rays of the sun.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Job 38:4-9 Where wast thou when I laid the foundations of the earth? declare, if thou hast understanding. Who hath laid the measures thereof, if thou knowest? or who hath stretched the line upon it? Whereupon are the foundations thereof fastened? or who laid the corner stone thereof; When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy? Or who shut up the sea with doors, when it brake forth, as if it had issued out of the womb? When I made the cloud the garment thereof, and thick darkness a swaddlingband for it,

That bringeth the princes to nothing; he maketh the judges of the earth as vanity.
God delivers dignitaries to nothing—judges, nobles, rulers, kings, presidents and potentates. The world news gives us a glimpse of God bringing down the high and mighty.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 19:13-14** The princes of Zoan are become fools, the princes of Noph are deceived; they have also seduced Egypt, even they that are the stay of the tribes thereof. The LORD hath mingled a perverse spirit in the midst thereof: and they have caused Egypt to err in every work thereof, as a drunken man staggereth in his vomit.

**Psa 76:12** He shall cut off the spirit of princes: he is terrible to the kings of the earth.

**Jer 25:18-19** To wit, Jerusalem, and the cities of Judah, and the kings thereof, and the princes thereof, to make them a desolation, an astonishment, an hissing, and a curse; as it is this day; Pharaoh king of Egypt, and his servants, and his princes, and all his people;

24Yea, they shall not be planted; yea, they shall not be sown: yea, their stock shall not take root in the earth: and he shall also blow upon them, and they shall wither, and the whirlwind shall take them away as stubble.

Read the history of the world and you will see that God took care of these tyrants—where are the descendants of Baasha, Ahab, Nero, Hitler, Stalin and those like them?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

**Isa 14:21-22** Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquity of their fathers; that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities. For I will rise up against them, saith the LORD of hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the LORD. Read: **1Ki 21:21-22**

25To whom then will ye liken me, or shall I be equal? saith the Holy One.
No one holds a candle to God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Deu 4:15-18 Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves; for ye saw no manner of similitude on the day that the LORD spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire: Lest ye corrupt yourselves, and make you a graven image, the similitude of any figure, the likeness of male or female, The likeness of any beast that is on the earth, the likeness of any winged fowl that flieth in the air, The likeness of any thing that creepeth on the ground, the likeness of any fish that is in the waters beneath the earth:

26Lift up your eyes on high, and behold who hath created these things, that bringeth out their host by number: he calleth them all by names by the greatness of his might, for that he is strong in power; not one faileth.

We are told in text books that the stars are in the millions. Anyone in their right mind could see that the heavens declare the glory of God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 51:6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath: for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment, and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner: but my salvation shall be for ever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

Job 31:26-28 If I beheld the sun when it shined, or the moon walking in brightness; And my heart hath been secretly enticed, or my mouth hath kissed my hand: This also were an iniquity to be punished by the judge: for I should have denied the God that is above.

Psa 19:1 To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament sheweth his handywork.

27Why sayest thou, O Jacob, and speakest, O Israel, My way is hid from the LORD, and my judgment is passed over from my God?
It seems that Jacob felt that judgment had been passed over and that his cause had been passed over by God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

**Isa 49:14-15** But Zion said, The LORD hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me. Can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee.

**Eze 37:11** Then he said unto me, Son of man, these bones are the whole house of Israel: behold, they say, Our bones are dried, and our hope is lost: we are cut off for our parts.

28Hast thou not known? hast thou not heard, that the everlasting God, the LORD, the Creator of the ends of the earth, fainteth not, neither is weary? there is no searching of his understanding.

Our God is infinite in power—this LORD of ours has fashioned everything, he is the creator of the whole wide world.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

**Jer 4:22** For my people is foolish, they have not known me; they are sottish children, and they have none understanding: they are wise to do evil, but to do good they have no knowledge.

**Mar 8:17** And when Jesus knew it, he saith unto them, Why reason ye, because ye have no bread? perceive ye not yet, neither understand? have ye your heart yet hardened?

**Psa 147:5** Great is our Lord, and of great power: his understanding is infinite.

29He giveth power to the faint; and to them that have no might he increaseth strength.
This God of ours will help you, he will give you strength, he will uphold you.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Isa 41:10** Fear thou not; for I am with thee: be not dismayed; for I am thy God: I will strengthen thee; yea, I will help thee; yea, I will uphold thee with the right hand of my righteousness.

**Deu 33:25** Thy shoes shall be iron and brass; and as thy days, so shall thy strength be.

**Php 4:13** I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me.

**30Even the youths shall faint and be weary, and the young men shall utterly fall:**

Young men stagger and even in their prime they faint and fall. But those who wait upon the LORD—who look for and hope in him will be able to do all things.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 9:17** Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows: for every one is an hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

**Psa 34:10** The young lions do lack, and suffer hunger: but they that seek the LORD shall not want any good thing.

**Ecc 9:11** I returned, and saw under the sun, that the race is not to the swift, nor the battle to the strong, neither yet bread to the wise, nor yet riches to men of understanding, nor yet favour to men of skill; but time and chance happeneth to them all.

**31But they that wait upon the LORD shall renew their strength; they shall**
mount up with wings as eagles; they shall run, and not be weary; and they shall walk, and not faint.

If we expect and wait for God and hope we will win new strength. We will soar on eagles wings—we will run and not be fatigued, we will walk without weariness. We will march and never weaken.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Exo 19:4 Ye have seen what I did unto the Egyptians, and how I bare you on eagles’ wings, and brought you unto myself.

Psa 27:13 I had fainted, unless I had believed to see the goodness of the LORD in the land of the living.

2Co 4:16 For which cause we faint not; but though our outward man perish, yet the inward man is renewed day by day.

Rev 2:3 And hast borne, and hast patience, and for my name’s sake hast laboured, and hast not fainted.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 41

God calls for a champion of justice (Cyrus) and makes him ruler over 49 countries. He pulverizes every enemy and tells Israel this in scripture, 150 years before it takes place. The idol makers are saying “don’t worry, this will never happen to us.” These folks are working overtime in the production of idols and the lies that go with that crowd of heathen priests. God calls Jacob his chosen and his servant and reassures them that he will give them strength. He lets them know who the real losers are. He claims that their enemies will be blown away. He says that he will open up springs on mountain tops and turn dry land into springs of water. He claims that he will plant cedars in the wilderness and olive vineyards. God says that he will replenish the land again. God challenges the idol worshippers to present their case and declare what the future holds. He claims that idols are worthless and know nothing. In the end he reveals that from Media and Persia he will raise up one who would trample down the mighty monarchs. These things saith the first and the last.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 41

1Keep silence before me, O islands; and let the people renew their strength: let them come near; then let them speak: let us come near together to judgment.

Stop clamoring and be quiet—“let us come near together for judgment and decide the point of issue between us concerning the enemy advancing from the east.” AMP

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Isa 49:1 Listen, O isles, unto me; and hearken, ye people, from far; The
LORD hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name. Read: Psa 46:10; Job 38:3; Job 23:3-5

2Who raised up the righteous man from the east, called him to his foot, gave the nations before him, and made him rule over kings? he gave them as the dust to his sword, and as driven stubble to his bow.

This champion of justice (Cyrus)—he has victory wherever he goes—God made him ruler over 49 nations, wherever he went God gave him victory—He scattered them like dust or chaff in a violent windstorm. Cyrus presided over the second one world government.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Isa 45:13 I have raised him up in righteousness, and I will direct all his ways: he shall build my city, and he shall let go my captives, not for price nor reward, saith the LORD of hosts. Read: Isa 46:11; Isa 45:1-6; Ezr 1:2

3He pursued them, and passed safely; even by the way that he had not gone with his feet.

He pulverized nations before him—his advances were unhindered—he routed them so quickly that it appeared as though his feet never touched the ground.

4Who hath wrought and done it, calling the generations from the beginning? I the LORD, the first, and with the last; I am he.

Who is the author to direct such marvelous feats? It is the ever-present, unchanging God who is before all and ending all.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 41:26 Who hath declared from the beginning, that we may know? and beforetime, that we may say, He is righteous? yea, there is none that sheweth, yea, there is none that declareth, yea, there is none that heareth your words. Read: Isa 40:12; Isa 46:10
5The isles saw it, and feared; the ends of the earth were afraid, drew near, and came.

The remotest parts of the world heard of the victories of Cyrus and they trembled and mobilized for war.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Eze 26:15-16 Thus saith the Lord GOD to Tyrus; Shall not the isles shake at the sound of thy fall, when the wounded cry, when the slaughter is made in the midst of thee? Then all the princes of the sea shall come down from their thrones, and lay away their robes, and put off their broidered garments: they shall clothe themselves with trembling; they shall sit upon the ground, and shall tremble at every moment, and be astonished at thee.

6They helped every one his neighbour; and every one said to his brother, Be of good courage.

In their panic they tried to cheer each other—they said don’t worry, Cyrus will never conquer us.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Dan 3:1-7 Nebuchadnezzar the king made an image of gold, whose height was threescore cubits, and the breadth thereof six cubits: he set it up in the plain of Dura, in the province of Babylon. Then Nebuchadnezzar the king sent to gather together the princes, the governors, and the captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, to come to the dedication of the image which Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up. Then the princes, the governors, and captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, were gathered together unto the dedication of the image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up; and they stood before the image that Nebuchadnezzar had set up. Then an herald cried aloud, To you it is commanded, O people, nations, and languages, That at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, ye fall down and worship the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king hath set up: And whoso
falleth not down and worshippeth shall the same hour be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace. Therefore at that time, when all the people heard the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and all kinds of musick, all the people, the nations, and the languages, fell down and worshipped the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.

"So the carpenter encouraged the goldsmith, and he that smootheth with the hammer him that smote the anvil, saying, It is ready for the sodering: and he fastened it with nails, that it should not be moved."

It looks like overtime production in their idol workshop—new designs—new models—these folks were in the “no-god” production. They fastened the base to the floor with nails while they hammered and smoothed the gold and gave it the finishing touches.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 44:13-15** The carpenter stretcheth out his rule; he marketh it out with a line; he fitteth it with planes, and he marketh it out with the compass, and maketh it after the figure of a man, according to the beauty of a man; that it may remain in the house. He heweth him down cedars, and taketh the cypress and the oak, which he strengtheneth for himself among the trees of the forest: he planteth an ash, and the rain doth nourish it. Then shall it be for a man to burn: for he will take thereof, and warm himself; yea, he kindleth it, and baketh bread; yea, he maketh a god, and worshippeth it; he maketh it a graven image, and falleth down thereto. Isa 46:6 They lavish gold out of the bag, and weigh silver in the balance, and hire a goldsmith; and he maketh it a god: they fall down, yea, they worship.

**Isa 46:7** They bear him upon the shoulder, they carry him, and set him in his place, and he standeth; from his place shall he not remove: yea, one shall cry unto him, yet can he not answer, nor save him out of his trouble.

"But thou, Israel, art my servant, Jacob whom I have chosen, the seed of Abraham my friend."

You are my chosen ones—you are my family.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 44:21-22 Remember these, O Jacob and Israel; for thou art my servant: I have formed thee; thou art my servant: O Israel, thou shalt not be forgotten of me. I have blotted out, as a thick cloud, thy transgressions, and, as a cloud, thy sins: return unto me; for I have redeemed thee.

9Thou whom I have taken from the ends of the earth, and called thee from the chief men thereof, and said unto thee, Thou art my servant; I have chosen thee, and not cast thee away.

I called you from the remote area of Er of the Chaldeans—He chose Abraham over the chief men—Terah and Nachor—he wanted them to know that they were still chosen even though they were exiled—he had picked them and hadn’t dropped them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jos 24:2-4 And Joshua said unto all the people, Thus saith the LORD God of Israel, Your fathers dwelt on the other side of the flood in old time, even Terah, the father of Abraham, and the father of Nachor: and they served other gods. And I took your father Abraham from the other side of the flood, and led him throughout all the land of Canaan, and multiplied his seed, and gave him Isaac. And I gave unto Isaac Jacob and Esau: and I gave unto Esau mount Seir, to possess it; but Jacob and his children went down into Egypt.

10Fear thou not; for I am with thee: be not dismayed; for I am thy God: I will strengthen thee; yea, I will help thee; yea, I will uphold thee with the right hand of my righteousness.

Don’t be afraid—don’t be dismayed—I am the one who will give you strength—you are in the grip of my grace.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Psa 27:1 A Psalm of David. The LORD is my light and my salvation; whom shall I fear? the LORD is the strength of my life; of whom shall I be afraid?
Psa 37:24 Though he fall, he shall not be utterly cast down: for the LORD upholdeth him with his hand.

11Behold, all they that were incensed against thee shall be ashamed and confounded: they shall be as nothing; and they that strive with thee shall perish.

Now who are the losers—every nation that despised Israel ended up bending and bowing at their feet and calling Jerusalem the city of the LORD.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ATTEST TO THE TEXT:

Isa 45:24 Surely, shall one say, in the LORD have I righteousness and strength: even to him shall men come; and all that are incensed against him shall be ashamed.

Isa 60:12 For the nation and kingdom that will not serve thee shall perish; yea, those nations shall be utterly wasted. Read: Isa 60:13-14

12Thou shalt seek them, and shalt not find them, even them that contended with thee: they that war against thee shall be as nothing, and as a thing of nought.

The men who contended with them are nowhere to be found—your assailants are all gone—nothing left but the memory.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Psa 37:35-36 I have seen the wicked in great power, and spreading himself like a green bay tree. Yet he passed away, and, lo, he was not: yea, I sought him, but he could not be found. Read: Job 20:7-9

13For I the LORD thy God will hold thy right hand, saying unto thee, Fear not; I will help thee.

God is telling you to not panic—he has a firm grip on your right hand and will not let you go.
**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:**

**Isa 45:1** Thus saith the LORD to his anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have holden, to subdue nations before him; and I will loose the loins of kings, to open before him the two leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut; be.

**Deu 33:26-27** There is none like unto the God of Jeshurun, who rideth upon the heaven in thy help, and in his excellency on the sky. The eternal God is thy refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms: and he shall thrust out the enemy from before thee; and shall say, Destroy them.

**14** Fear not, thou worm Jacob, and ye men of Israel; I will help thee, saith the LORD, and thy redeemer, the Holy One of Israel.

Israel was feeling like a worm—a lowly insect but the one who was buying her back gives her reassurance.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:**

**Job 25:6** How much less man, that is a worm? and the son of man, which is a worm?

**Psa 22:6** But I am a worm, and no man; a reproach of men, and despised of the people.

**15** Behold, I will make thee a new sharp threshing instrument having teeth: thou shalt thresh the mountains, and beat them small, and shalt make the hills as chaff.

Israel is being transformed from a worm into a threshing instrument. When you get threshed it means you were in a fight and lost the battle—in this case Israel was threshing the heathen.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

**Hab 3:12** Thou didst march through the land in indignation, thou didst thresh the heathen in anger.
Mic 4:13 Arise and thresh, O daughter of Zion: for I will make thine horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass: and thou shalt beat in pieces many people: and I will consecrate their gain unto the LORD, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth.

16Thou shalt fan them, and the wind shall carry them away, and the whirlwind shall scatter them: and thou shalt rejoice in the LORD, and shalt glory in the Holy One of Israel.

Winnowing was a process whereby grain was beaten and tossed into the air with a winnowing shovel and the grains which were heavier than the chaff fell back into the hopper and the wind blew the chaff away. The prophet likens the heathen to chaff that was blown away.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Psa 1:4 The ungodly are not so: but are like the chaff which the wind driveth away.

Jer 15:7 And I will fan them with a fan in the gates of the land; I will bereave them of children, I will destroy my people, since they return not from their ways.

Jer 51:2 And will send unto Babylon fanners, that shall fan her, and shall empty her land: for in the day of trouble they shall be against her round about.

Mat 3:12 Whose fan is in his hand, and he will throughly purge his floor, and gather his wheat into the garner; but he will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire.

17When the poor and needy seek water, and there is none, and their tongue faileth for thirst, I the LORD will hear them, I the God of Israel will not forsake them.

The oppressed with parched lips will not seek water in vain. God will not refuse them a hearing nor abandon them.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Psa 72:12-13** For he shall deliver the needy when he crieth; the poor also, and him that hath no helper. He shall spare the poor and needy, and shall save the souls of the needy.

**Isa 55:1** Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price.

**Exo 17:6** Behold, I will stand before thee there upon the rock in Horeb; and thou shalt smite the rock, and there shall come water out of it, that the people may drink. And Moses did so in the sight of the elders of Israel.

18*I will open rivers in high places, and fountains in the midst of the valleys: I will make the wilderness a pool of water, and the dry land springs of water.*

God provided special care for Israel when they escaped from captivity. Take a look at the historical marsh lands close to Babylon and you will see that this once was parched ground.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 30:25** And there shall be upon every high mountain, and upon every high hill, rivers and streams of waters in the day of the great slaughter, when the towers fall.

**Isa 49:9-10** That thou mayest say to the prisoners, Go forth; to them that are in darkness, Shew yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places. They shall not hunger nor thirst; neither shall the heat nor sun smite them: for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

**Psa 107:35** He turneth the wilderness into a standing water, and dry ground into watersprings.

19*I will plant in the wilderness the cedar, the shittah tree, and the myrtle,*
and the oil tree; I will set in the desert the fir tree, and the pine, and the box tree together:

The land had lain idle for seventy years and was nothing but a wilderness inhabited by wild animals. God says that he will once again bless the land and it will be fertile and produce trees and fruit.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Isa 32:15 Until the spirit be poured upon us from on high, and the wilderness be a fruitful field, and the fruitful field be counted for a forest.

Isa 51:3 For the LORD shall comfort Zion: he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the LORD; joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving, and the voice of melody.

Isa 55:13 Instead of the thorn shall come up the fir tree, and instead of the brier shall come up the myrtle tree: and it shall be to the LORD for a name, for an everlasting sign that shall not be cut off.

That they may see, and know, and consider, and understand together, that the hand of the LORD hath done this, and the Holy One of Israel hath created it.

God wanted them to consider and recognize that he was the one who was doing this. The proof that God’s hand was in it was indisputable. It was God who was behind the entire operation of Israel’s release.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Isa 43:7-10 Even every one that is called by my name: for I have created him for my glory, I have formed him; yea, I have made him. Bring forth the blind people that have eyes, and the deaf that have ears. Let all the nations be gathered together, and let the people be assembled: who among them can declare this, and shew us former things? let them bring forth their witnesses, that they may be justified: or let them hear, and say, It is truth. Ye are my witnesses, saith the LORD, and my servant whom I have chosen: that ye may
know and believe me, and understand that I am he: before me there was no
God formed, neither shall there be after me.

21\textbf{Produce your cause, saith the LORD; bring forth your strong reasons,}
\textbf{saith the King of Jacob.}

He challenges the idol worshipers to bring forth their case— show what they
have done, or can do.

\textbf{CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES}
\textbf{THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:}

\textbf{Job 23:3-4} Oh that I knew where I might find him! that I might come
even to his seat! I would order my cause before him, and fill my mouth with
arguments.

\textbf{Job 31:37} I would declare unto him the number of my steps; as a prince would
I go near unto him.

\textbf{Job 38:3} Gird up now thy loins like a man; for I will demand of thee, and
answer thou me.

\textbf{22Let them bring them forth, and shew us what shall happen: let them shew}
\textbf{the former things, what they be, that we may consider them, and know}
\textbf{the latter end of them; or declare us things for to come.}

The challenge is this: what will happen next. Only God can know the future—
the Bible is the only book that reveals the future accurately.

\textbf{CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES}
\textbf{THAT MAKE THE CASE:}

\textbf{Isa 42:9} Behold, the former things are come to pass, and new things do I
declare: before they spring forth I tell you of them.

\textbf{Isa 43:9} Let all the nations be gathered together, and let the people be
assembled: who among them can declare this, and shew us former things? let
them bring forth their witnesses, that they may be justified: or let them hear,
and say, It is truth.
Joh 13:19 Now I tell you before it come, that, when it is come to pass, ye may believe that I am he.

23*Shew the things that are to come hereafter, that we may know that ye are gods: yea, do good, or do evil, that we may be dismayed, and behold it together.*

Get your facts together and present your evidence—explain what your idol gods have done, yes either good or evil. Will we be shocked when we see the evidence?

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**

**THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**Isa 46:10** Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure:

**Act 15:18** Known unto God are all his works from the beginning of the world.

**Isa 45:7** I form the light, and create darkness: I make peace, and create evil: I the LORD do all these things.

24*Behold, ye are of nothing, and your work of nought: an abomination is he that chooseth you.*

These idols were less than nothing. Their work was as empty as air. Anyone who worships an idol is an abomination to God.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**

**THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 41:29** Behold, they are all vanity; their works are nothing; their molten images are wind and confusion.

**Isa 44:9-10** They that make a graven image are all of them vanity; and their delectable things shall not profit; and they are their own witnesses; they see not, nor know; that they may be ashamed. Who hath formed a god, or molten a graven image that is profitable for nothing?
Deu 27:15 Cursed be the man that maketh any graven or molten image, an abomination unto the LORD, the work of the hands of the craftsman, and putteth it in a secret place. And all the people shall answer and say, Amen.

25*I have raised up one from the north, and he shall come: from the rising of the sun shall he call upon my name: and he shall come upon princes as upon morter, and as the potter treadeth clay.*

One hundred and fifty years before God had revealed through Isaiah that Cyrus would trample down the mighty monarchs as mortar, and as the potter trod in clay. The idol gods and their fake priests had never revealed any of the future, nor are they capable. In chapters 49-51 of Jeremiah, there are 95 prophecies of the future and all of them have been fulfilled in every detail. Please note that the scripture says he will come from the north (Media) and east (Persia.) Jehovah here, by the mouth of the prophet, predicts the victories of Cyrus over the Chaldeans and their allies, at least 150 years before the event, as one instance of his foreknowledge and invincible power. Media lay north of Babylon, and Persia eastward; and Cyrus commanded the forces of both these nations; and, by his wonderful success, he trampled down mighty monarchs as mortar, and as the potter treads the clay.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Isa 45:1-5** Thus saith the LORD to his anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have holden, to subdue nations before him; and I will loose the loins of kings, to open before him the two leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut I will go before thee, and make the crooked places straight: I will break in pieces the gates of brass, and cut in sunder the bars of iron And I will give thee the treasures of darkness, and hidden riches of secret places, that thou mayest know that I, the LORD, which call thee by thy name, am the God of Israel. For Jacob my servant’s sake, and Israel mine elect, I have even called thee by thy name: I have surnamed thee, though thou hast not known me. I am the LORD, and there is none else, there is no God beside me: I girded thee, though thou hast not known me:

26*Who hath declared from the beginning, that we may know? and beforetime, that we may say, He is righteous? yea, there is none that sheweth, yea, there is none that declareth, yea, there is none that heareth your words.*
God’s predictions were always told in advance—His forecast for the truth is that no idol ever has or ever will tell the future. They are as dumb as a hammer. Note also that none of the sacred books of the heathen religions have prophecies in them. The Koran has no prophecies in it. If Mohammad were a prophet where are his prophecies?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 45:21 Tell ye, and bring them near; yea, let them take counsel together: who hath declared this from ancient time? who hath told it from that time? have not I the LORD? and there is no God else beside me; a just God and a Saviour; there is none beside me.

Isa 41:23 Shew the things that are to come hereafter, that we may know that ye are gods: yea, do good, or do evil, that we may be dismayed, and behold it together.

27The first shall say to Zion, Behold, behold them: and I will give to Jerusalem one that bringeth good tidings.

Here is the first edition: I will give Jerusalem the news first—the city and temple will be restored and they shall return to their homeland, our God is the first and last and everything in between.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 43:10 Ye are my witnesses, saith the LORD, and my servant whom I have chosen: that ye may know and believe me, and understand that I am he: before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me.

Isa 48:12 Hearken unto me, O Jacob and Israel, my called; I am he; I am the first, I also am the last.

Rev 2:8 And unto the angel of the church in Smyrna write; These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive;

28For I beheld, and there was no man; even among them, and there was no counsellor, that, when I asked of them, could answer a word.
God is saying that when he looked, there was no heathen prophet, no pagan priest that could predict anything—when God asked there was no answer from any of them.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**  
**THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:**

**Dan 2:10-11** The Chaldeans answered before the king, and said, There is not a man upon the earth that can shew the king’s matter: therefore there is no king, lord, nor ruler, that asked such things at any magician, or astrologer, or Chaldean. And it is a rare thing that the king requireth, and there is none other that can shew it before the king, except the gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh.

**Dan 4:7-8** Then came in the magicians, the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers: and I told the dream before them; but they did not make known unto me the interpretation thereof. Then came in all the king’s wise men: but they could not read the writing, nor make known to the king the interpretation thereof.

*29* Behold, they are all vanity; their works are nothing; their molten images are wind and confusion.

The sum of the whole matter is this: their effigies are wind; their metal images are empty and full of confusion. Ask and none of them can tell you what is going on. Their gods are no-gods.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

**Jer 10:2-6** Thus saith the LORD, Learn not the way of the heathen, and be not dismayed at the signs of heaven; for the heathen are dismayed at them. For the customs of the people are vain: for one cutteth a tree out of the forest, the work of the hands of the workman, with the axe. They deck it with silver and with gold; they fasten it with nails and with hammers, that it move not. They are upright as the palm tree, but speak not: they must needs be borne, because they cannot go. Be not afraid of them; for they cannot do evil, neither also is it in them to do good. Forasmuch as there is none like unto thee, O LORD; thou art great, and thy name is great in might.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 42

The Messiah is coming—the spirit of the LORD is on him—he is anointed to preach good tidings, fix peoples broken hearts, release captives and open prison doors. He will not arrive with a gaudy parade or vocal demonstration. He will not turn down people who are crushed and hurting. He will restore the relationship with God by the cross. All of this is by the creator of the heavens. The one who provides all that is vital to life, God assures the Messiah that he will hold his right hand and make him a covenant to the Gentile world. He will open the eyes of the blind and the doors of the prison of unbelief. This chapter sets us up for future prophesy. God claims he knows everything from the beginning to the end and when he reveals the newest prophecy all of the mountains and islands will join in praising him. First he tells us of some of the amazing things he will do in nature and tells us the end result of idols. He reveals that the exiles are to be let out of their prison houses. The main part of the prophecy is reserved for chapter 45.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 42

1Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

My servant, the Messiah, the one I have chosen—he is my heart’s delight. I have bestowed upon him my spirit—justice will shine through him to the Gentiles.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Mat 12:18 Behold my servant, whom I have chosen; my beloved, in whom
my soul is well pleased: I will put my spirit upon him, and he shall shew judgment to the Gentiles.

Eph 3:8 Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ;

2He shall not cry, nor lift up, nor cause his voice to be heard in the street.

He will not scream nor cause a street demonstration. No loud speeches or gaudy parades.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Mat 12:16-20 And charged them that they should not make him known: That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Behold my servant, whom I have chosen; my beloved, in whom my soul is well pleased: I will put my spirit upon him, and he shall shew judgment to the Gentiles. He shall not strive, nor cry; neither shall any man hear his voice in the streets. A bruised reed shall he not break, and smoking flax shall he not quench, till he send forth judgment unto victory.

Luk 17:20 And when he was demanded of the Pharisees, when the kingdom of God should come, he answered them and said, The kingdom of God cometh not with observation:

3A bruised reed shall he not break, and the smoking flax shall he not quench: he shall bring forth judgment unto truth.

A bruised reed is a picture of a person who has a crushed spirit—living in heaviness and hurting on the inside. Smoking flax is a person who is about to give up—little or no hope left in him. The Messiah came to bring forth judgment and set things right.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 61:1-3 The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me; because the LORD hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening
of the prison to them that are bound; To proclaim the acceptable year of the LORD, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn; To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the LORD, that he might be glorified.

Mat 12:20 A bruised reed shall he not break, and smoking flax shall he not quench, till he send forth judgment unto victory.

He shall not fail nor be discouraged, till he have set judgment in the earth: and the isles shall wait for his law.

He won’t give up—tire out—or quit. He will restore man’s relationship with God and the whole world will wait for his law.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Joh 17:4-5 I have glorified thee on the earth: I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do. And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.

Heb 12:2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

Zec 2:11 And many nations shall be joined to the LORD in that day, and shall be my people: and I will dwell in the midst of thee, and thou shalt know that the LORD of hosts hath sent me unto thee.

Thus saith God the LORD, he that created the heavens, and stretched them out; he that spread forth the earth, and that which cometh out of it; he that giveth breath unto the people upon it, and spirit to them that walk therein:

This is our God—creator of heavens—stretched them out till no man can tell how far they reach—spread out the earth with its vegetation—gives us the vital air we breathe and spirit to those who live.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

**Isa 45:12** I have made the earth, and created man upon it: I, even my hands, have stretched out the heavens, and all their host have I commanded.

**Isa 45:18** For thus saith the LORD that created the heavens: God himself that formed the earth and made it; he hath established it, he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited: I am the LORD; and there is none else.

**Psa 24:1-2** A Psalm of David. The earth is the LORD’S, and the fulness thereof; the world, and they that dwell therein. For he hath founded it upon the seas, and established it upon the floods.

**Act 17:25** Neither is worshipped with men’s hands, as though he needed any thing, seeing he giveth to all life, and breath, and all things;

*I the LORD have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles;*

I am God and I have a firm hold on your right hand. You will be my covenant and light to the Gentile world.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Jer 23:5-6** Behold, the days come, saith the LORD, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth. In his days Judah shall be saved, and Israel shall dwell safely: and this is his name whereby he shall be called, THE LORD OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS.

**Rom 3:25-26** Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God; To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus.

**Act 26:23** That Christ should suffer, and that he should be the first that
should rise from the dead, and should shew light unto the people, and to the Gentiles.

7To open the blind eyes, to bring out the prisoners from the prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house.

Literally Jesus opened eyes and from a figurative standpoint we were in darkness and in a prison of unbelief till Jesus set us free.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Joh 9:39 And Jesus said, For judgment I am come into this world, that they which see not might see; and that they which see might be made blind. Read: Isa 42:22; Isa 61:1; 1Pe 2:9

8I am the LORD: that is my name: and my glory will I not give to another, neither my praise to graven images.

God says that he is LORD and that it is his name, therefore we call upon the Lord for help. He further informs us that he will not tolerate giving his praise to graven images.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Exo 20:3-5 Thou shalt have no other gods before me. Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth: Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

9Behold, the former things are come to pass, and new things do I declare: before they spring forth I tell you of them.

Only God can tell things in advance. All of his former predictions have come true, so now he is going to tell the future before it becomes history. God is able to tell the end from the beginning.
Gen 15:12-16 And when the sun was going down, a deep sleep fell upon Abram; and, lo, an horror of great darkness fell upon him. And he said unto Abram, Know of a surety that thy seed shall be a stranger in a land that is not theirs, and shall serve them; and they shall afflict them four hundred years; And also that nation, whom they shall serve, will I judge: and afterward shall they come out with great substance. And thou shalt go to thy fathers in peace; thou shalt be buried in a good old age. But in the fourth generation they shall come hither again: for the iniquity of the Amorites is not yet full.

Isa 46:10 Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure:

2Pe 1:21 For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.

10Sing unto the LORD a new song, and his praise from the end of the earth, ye that go down to the sea, and all that is therein; the isles, and the inhabitants thereof:

Heaven and earth is invited to join in a new song of praise for what is about to be announced.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Isa 44:23 Sing, O ye heavens; for the LORD hath done it: shout, ye lower parts of the earth: break forth into singing, ye mountains, O forest, and every tree therein: for the LORD hath redeemed Jacob, and glorified himself in Israel.

Psa 33:3 Sing unto him a new song; play skilfully with a loud noise.

Rev 5:9 And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation;
11 Let the wilderness and the cities thereof lift up their voice, the villages that Kedar doth inhabit: let the inhabitants of the rock sing, let them shout from the top of the mountains.

From the villages of Kedar to the city of Sela to the highest mountain let the shout of joy be known.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 60:7 All the flocks of Kedar shall be gathered together unto thee, the rams of Nebaioth shall minister unto thee: they shall come up with acceptance on mine altar, and I will glorify thee: house of my glory.

12 Let them give glory unto the LORD, and declare his praise in the islands.

All are giving glory to the LORD for his promised performance, even the islands are praising him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 66:19 And I will set a sign among them, and I will send those that escape of them unto the nations, to Tarshish, Pul, and Lud, that draw the bow, to Tubal, and Javan, to the isles afar off, that have not heard my fame, neither have seen my glory; and they shall declare my glory among the Gentiles.

13 The LORD shall go forth as a mighty man, he shall stir up jealousy like a man of war: he shall cry, yea, roar; he shall prevail against his enemies.

God is not going forth as a weakling but as a warrior taking charge of the situation. He will pounce on the enemy with a cry and a roar.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Isa 59:19 So shall they fear the name of the LORD from the west, and his glory from the rising of the sun. When the enemy shall come in like a flood, the Spirit of the LORD shall lift up a standard against him.
Neither their silver nor their gold shall be able to deliver them in the day of the LORD’S wrath; but the whole land shall be devoured by the fire of his jealousy: for he shall make even a speedy riddance of all them that dwell in the land.

I have long time holden my peace; I have been still, and refrained myself: now will I cry like a travailing woman; I will destroy and devour at once.

God is going to turn loose his wrath of destruction on Babylon. He had held back for 70 years and now like a woman having a baby he will cry out for vengeance.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Jer 44:22 So that the LORD could no longer bear, because of the evil of your doings, and because of the abominations which ye have committed; therefore is your land a desolation, and an astonishment, and a curse, without an inhabitant, as at this day.

2Pe 3:9-10 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance. But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.

I will make waste mountains and hills, and dry up all their herbs; and I will make the rivers islands, and I will dry up the pools.

I will lay waste mountains and hills—he will dry up the green herbage, he will dry up rivers and lakes and turn some into marsh land.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 44:27 That saith to the deep, Be dry, and I will dry up thy rivers:

Isa 50:2 Wherefore, when I came, was there no man? when I called, was there none to answer? Is my hand shortened at all, that it cannot redeem? or
have I no power to deliver? behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make the rivers a wilderness: their fish stinketh, because there is no water, and dieth for thirst.

**Nah 1:4** He rebuketh the sea, and maketh it dry, and drieth up all the rivers: Bashan languisheth, and Carmel, and the flower of Lebanon languisheth.

16**And I will bring the blind by a way that they knew not; I will lead them in paths that they have not known: I will make darkness light before them, and crooked things straight. These things will I do unto them, and not forsake them.**

This people was declared blind in the first chapter of Isaiah—now he is going to take blind Israel out of their captivity along a path that they have never known.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Jer 31:8-9** Behold, I will bring them from the north country, and gather them from the coasts of the earth, and with them the blind and the lame, the woman with child and her that travaileth with child together: a great company shall return thither. They shall come with weeping, and with supplications will I lead them: I will cause them to walk by the rivers of waters in a straight way, wherein they shall not stumble: for I am a father to Israel, and Ephraim is my firstborn.

**Eph 5:8** For ye were sometimes darkness, but now are ye light in the Lord: walk as children of light:

17**They shall be turned back, they shall be greatly ashamed, that trust in graven images, that say to the molten images, Ye are our gods.**

Those who trust in idols will be blushing with shame when they see this prophecy fulfilled.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:**

**Jer 31:8-9** Behold, I will bring them from the north country, and gather
them from the coasts of the earth, and with them the blind and the lame, the woman with child and her that travaileth with child together: a great company shall return thither. They shall come with weeping, and with supplications will I lead them: I will cause them to walk by the rivers of waters in a straight way, wherein they shall not stumble: for I am a father to Israel, and Ephraim is my firstborn.

18Hear, ye deaf; and look, ye blind, that ye may see.

They were blind and deaf toward God, they couldn’t see and wouldn’t listen.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Eph 1:18  The eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that ye may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints,

Exo 4:11  And the LORD said unto him, Who hath made man’s mouth? or who maketh the dumb, or deaf, or the seeing, or the blind? have not I the LORD?

Rev 3:18  I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.

19Who is blind, but my servant? or deaf, as my messenger that I sent? who is blind as he that is perfect, and blind as the LORD’s servant?

Israel was blind as a bat and their spiritual radar was turned off.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 6:9  And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not.

Isa 56:10  His watchmen are blind: they are all ignorant, they are all dumb dogs, they cannot bark; sleeping, lying down, loving to slumber.
Mar 8:17 And when Jesus knew it, he saith unto them, Why reason ye, because ye have no bread? perceive ye not yet, neither understand? have ye your heart yet hardened?

20 Seeing many things, but thou observest not; opening the ears, but he heareth not.

Physically they could see—they had 20/20 vision but they couldn’t see or hear or remember.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Mar 8:18 Having eyes, see ye not? and having ears, hear ye not? and do ye not remember?

21 The LORD is well pleased for his righteousness’ sake; he will magnify the law, and make it honourable.

The LORD has magnified his law, and through it has shown his righteousness.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Psa 40:8 I delight to do thy will, O my God: yea, thy law is within my heart.

Mat 3:15 And Jesus answering said unto him, Suffer it to be so now: for thus it becometh us to fulfil all righteousness. Then he suffered him.

Rom 8:3-4 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

22 But this is a people robbed and spoiled; they are all of them snared in holes, and they are hid in prison houses: they are for a prey, and none delivereth; for a spoil, and none saith, Restore.

This people was like a bunch of chickens stuck in a chicken coup or like a
prisoner hid in the cellar. No one paid any attention and let the thugs do as they pleased.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

**Isa 42:7** To open the blind eyes, to bring out the prisoners from the prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house.

**Jer 52:31** And it came to pass in the seven and thirtieth year of the captivity of Jehoiachin king of Judah, in the twelfth month, in the five and twentieth day of the month, that Evilmerodach king of Babylon in the first year of his reign lifted up the head of Jehoiachin king of Judah, and brought him forth out of prison, Read: **Deu 28:29**

23**Who among you will give ear to this? who will hearken and hear for the time to come?**

Even though their whole world was collapsing around them they didn’t get it. While all this decay was taking place they would not hear the voice of God through the prophets.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:**

**Isa 48:18** O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments! then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea: Read: **Isa 1:18-19**

24**Who gave Jacob for a spoil, and Israel to the robbers? did not the LORD, he against whom we have sinned? for they would not walk in his ways, neither were they obedient unto his law.**

We know that God gave Israel to the plunderers. They refused to walk in God’s ways so they left him no choice. He had to keep his word.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:**

**Isa 47:6** I was wroth with my people, I have polluted mine inheritance, and
given them into thine hand: thou didst shew them no mercy; upon the ancient hast thou very heavily laid thy yoke. Read: Lev 26:40-42

25 Therefore he hath poured upon him the fury of his anger, and the strength of battle: and it hath set him on fire round about, yet he knew not; and it burned him, yet he laid it not to heart.

Read the book of Lamentations and weep. God appointed over them terror, consumption, eye diseases and sorrow of heart. They would flee when none pursued. They were punished seven times for their sins.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Lev 26:15-18 And if ye shall despise my statutes, or if your soul abhor my judgments, so that ye will not do all my commandments, but that ye break my covenant: I also will do this unto you; I will even appoint over you terror, consumption, and the burning ague, that shall consume the eyes, and cause sorrow of heart: and ye shall sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it. And I will set my face against you, and ye shall be slain before your enemies: they that hate you shall reign over you; and ye shall flee when none pursueth you. And if ye will not yet for all this hearken unto me, then I will punish you seven times more for your sins. As silver is melted in the midst of the furnace, so shall ye be melted in the midst thereof; and ye shall know that I the LORD have poured out my fury upon you.
God’s message to Israel is this: fear not for I am behind your cause. I bought you, I called you, and I have named you. I will be with you when you encounter difficulties—I am with you through oppression—when you are between a rock and a hard place I am with you. You are precious to me and I will give anything to get you back. God is going to round up all your children and grand-children from the four corners of the earth. God announces future things and challenges the heathen priests to tell one thing that they had foretold that came true. God calls Israel his witnesses, claims them as his handpicked people, and that there was no other god, and that there never will be. God says that he is sending Cyrus to Babylon and brings down its rulers and gods. Just to remind them that he is the mighty God that led Israel through the Red Sea and had defeated all of Pharaoh’s army. But, don’t dwell too much on the past for God says that he is going to do a new thing. He will defeat their enemies and build a road to their home land including a way through the wilderness and rivers in the desert. Even the beasts will drink to his praise.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 43

1But now thus saith the LORD that created thee, O Jacob, and he that formed thee, O Israel, Fear not: for I have redeemed thee, I have called thee by thy name; thou art mine.

God has a message for Jacob—have no fear for I am the one behind your cause—I bought you—I called you and I have given you a name.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Isa 44:2 Thus saith the LORD that made thee, and formed thee from the
womb, which will help thee; Fear not, O Jacob, my servant; and thou, Jesurun, whom I have chosen.

**Zec 13:9** And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, The LORD is my God.

2When thou passest through the waters, I will be with thee; and through the rivers, they shall not overflow thee: when thou walkest through the fire, thou shalt not be burned; neither shall the flame kindle upon thee.

When you go through great trouble, I will be with you. When you encounter difficulties, I will be with you. When you walk through the fire of oppression, I will be with you. When you go through hell and high water I will be with you. When you are over your head, when you are in rough times, when you are at the end of your rope, when you are between a rock and a hard place, remember God is with thee and will see you through.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:**

**Psa 66:12** Thou hast caused men to ride over our heads; we went through fire and through water: but thou broughtest us out into a wealthy place.

**Isa 41:10** Fear thou not; for I am with thee: be not dismayed; for I am thy God: I will strengthen thee; yea, I will help thee; yea, I will uphold thee with the right hand of my righteousness.

**Zec 13:9** And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, The LORD is my God.

3For I am the LORD thy God, the Holy One of Israel, thy Saviour: I gave Egypt for thy ransom, Ethiopia and Seba for thee.

God paid a huge price for their redemption—Egypt, Ethiopia, and Seba.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Eze 29:19 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will give the land of Egypt unto Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon; and he shall take her multitude, and take her spoil, and take her prey; and it shall be the wages for his army.

Read: Eze 30:21-26

4Since thou wast precious in my sight, thou hast been honourable, and I have loved thee: therefore will I give men for thee, and people for thy life.

God claims that Israel is precious in his sight and that he would give anything to get them back.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Deu 7:6 For thou art an holy people unto the LORD thy God: the LORD thy God hath chosen thee to be a special people unto himself, above all people that are upon the face of the earth. Read: Exo 19:5-6; Hos 11:1; Mal 1:2

5Fear not: for I am with thee: I will bring thy seed from the east, and gather thee from the west;

God is going to round them up like stray animals, every Jew that bears his name will be coming back from the four corners of the world.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 11:11-12 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea. And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

6I will say to the north, Give up; and to the south, Keep not back: bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth;
All the distant lands and islands will surrender the exiles and they will return home.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Deu 30:3 That then the LORD thy God will turn thy captivity, and have compassion upon thee, and will return and gather thee from all the nations, whither the LORD thy God hath scattered thee.

Eze 37:21 And say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will take the children of Israel from among the heathen, whither they be gone, and will gather them on every side, and bring them into their own land:

7Even every one that is called by my name: for I have created him for my glory, I have formed him; yea, I have made him.

Everyone who claims God and is called by his name is created for God’s glory. God formed him in the womb and made him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Rev 3:12 Him that overcometh will I make a pillar in the temple of my God, and he shall go no more out: and I will write upon him the name of my God, and the name of the city of my God, which is new Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven from my God: and I will write upon him my new name. Read: Isa 62:2-3

8Bring forth the blind people that have eyes, and the deaf that have ears.

Bring the blind (those who have eyes but are spiritually blind) and the deaf (those who have ears but cannot hear.)

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 6:9 And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not.
Jer 5:21 Hear now this, O foolish people, and without understanding; which have eyes, and see not; which have ears, and hear not:

2Co 4:3-4 But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost: In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

9Let all the nations be gathered together, and let the people be assembled: who among them can declare this, and shew us former things? let them bring forth their witnesses, that they may be justified: or let them hear, and say, It is truth.

Who among the heathen could tell in advance things that would happen? No heathen priest could tell what would happen in the future. Let them produce their witnesses and if there are no witnesses, then we must confess that only God can know of future things.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 44:7-9 And who, as I, shall call, and shall declare it, and set it in order for me, since I appointed the ancient people? and the things that are coming, and shall come, let them shew unto them. Fear ye not, neither be afraid: have not I told thee from that time, and have declared it? ye are even my witnesses. Is there a God beside me? yea, there is no God; I know not any. They that make a graven image are all of them vanity; and their delectable things shall not profit; and they are their own witnesses; they see not, nor know; that they may be ashamed.

10Ye are my witnesses, saith the LORD, and my servant whom I have chosen: that ye may know and believe me, and understand that I am he: before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me.

There is no other God—never was—never will be. They were the ones that had witnessed Gods mighty works and were handpicked.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

**Isa 44:8** Fear ye not, neither be afraid: have not I told thee from that time, and have declared it? ye are even my witnesses. Is there a God beside me? yea, there is no God; I know not any.

**Joh 1:7-8** The same came for a witness, to bear witness of the Light, that all men through him might believe. He was not that Light, but was sent to bear witness of that Light.

**Isa 46:9** Remember the former things of old: for I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me,

*I, even I, am the LORD; and beside me there is no saviour.*

There never was another God and there never will be.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Isa 43:3** For I am the LORD thy God, the Holy One of Israel, thy Saviour: I gave Egypt for thy ransom, Ethiopia and Seba for thee.

**Isa 12:2** Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the LORD JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also is become my salvation.

*I have declared, and have saved, and I have shewed, when there was no strange god among you: therefore ye are my witnesses, saith the LORD, that I am God.*

Before Israel had any foreign gods among them, God had saved them and showed his power among them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

**Deu 32:12** So the LORD alone did lead him, and there was no strange god with him.
Psalm 81:9-10 There shall no strange god be in thee; neither shalt thou worship any strange god. I am the LORD thy God, which brought thee out of the land of Egypt: open thy mouth wide, and I will fill it.

Yea, before the day was I am he; and there is none that can deliver out of my hand: I will work, and who shall let it?

From the time of the first existence of day, God was and from that time onward God is.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Psalm 90:2 Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever thou hadst formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God.

Mic 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

Thus saith the LORD, your redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; For your sake I have sent to Babylon, and have brought down all their nobles, and the Chaldeans, whose cry is in the ships.

God declares that he is their redeemer and that he has sent to Babylon Cyrus who will bring down all the nobles and the Chaldeans. He will bring down ships and all idols will be destroyed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isaiah 44:24-28 Thus saith the LORD, thy redeemer, and he that formed thee from the womb, I am the LORD that maketh all things; that stretcheth forth the heavens alone; that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself; That frustrateth the tokens of the liars, and maketh diviners mad; that turneth wise men backward, and maketh their knowledge foolish; That confirmeth the word of his servant, and performeth the counsel of his messengers; that saith to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be inhabited; and to the cities of Judah, Ye shall be built, and I will raise up the decayed places thereof: That saith to the deep, Be dry, and I will dry up thy rivers: That saith of Cyrus, He is my shepherd, and shall
perform all my pleasure: even saying to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be built; and to the temple, Thy foundation shall be laid.

15I am the LORD, your Holy One, the creator of Israel, your King.

Just to jog their memory that he was the creator of Israel and still their king.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Jer 51:5 For Israel hath not been forsaken, nor Judah of his God, of the LORD of hosts; though their land was filled with sin against the Holy One of Israel.

16Thus saith the LORD, which maketh a way in the sea, and a path in the mighty waters;

This message is from him that once led Israel through the Red Sea and caused them to cross on dry ground.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 51:15 But I am the LORD thy God, that divided the sea, whose waves roared: The LORD of hosts is his name. Read: Jer 51:5; Isa 63:11-13

17Which bringeth forth the chariot and horse, the army and the power; they shall lie down together, they shall not rise: they are extinct, they are quenched as tow.

God says that he called forth the war chariots and cavalry and extinguished them like putting out a candle.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 14:20-22 Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land, and slain thy people: the seed of evildoers shall never be renowned. Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquity of their fathers;
that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities. For I will rise up against them, saith the LORD of hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the LORD.

18 Remember ye not the former things, neither consider the things of old.

Forget all of the things regarding the past, stop dwelling on them, because that is past history and I am going to do something more marvelous.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Jer 3:16 And it shall come to pass, when ye be multiplied and increased in the land, in those days, saith the LORD, they shall say no more, The ark of the covenant of the LORD: neither shall it come to mind: neither shall they remember it; neither shall they visit it; neither shall that be done any more.

Isa 65:17 For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth: and the former shall not be remembered, nor come into mind. Read: Jer 16:14-15

19 Behold, I will do a new thing; now it shall spring forth; shall ye not know it? I will even make a way in the wilderness, and rivers in the desert.

Stop brooding over the past, and focus on the new thing that I am going to do for you. I will build a road for you to go home on and make a way in the wilderness and create rivers in deserts.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Isa 42:9 Behold, the former things are come to pass, and new things do I declare: before they spring forth I tell you of them. Read: Isa 35:6-10

20 The beast of the field shall honour me, the dragons and the owls: because I give waters in the wilderness, and rivers in the desert, to give drink to my people, my chosen.

Jackals, ostriches, and wild beasts will drink to my honor. All the provisions were planned and prepared for Israel’s return to their homeland.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Jer 31:9 They shall come with weeping, and with supplications will I lead them: I will cause them to walk by the rivers of waters in a straight way, wherein they shall not stumble: for I am a father to Israel, and Ephraim is my firstborn. Read: Joe 3:18

21 This people have I formed for myself; they shall shew forth my praise.

He had fashioned and made Israel a people for himself and they would exhibit his praises when he redeemed them from the Chaldeans.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Psa 102:18 This shall be written for the generation to come: and the people which shall be created shall praise the LORD. Read: Luk 1:74-75; Eph 1:12

22 But thou hast not called upon me, O Jacob; but thou hast been weary of me, O Israel.

They didn’t ask for God’s help—tired of God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 64:7 And there is none that calleth upon thy name, that stirreth up himself to take hold of thee: for thou hast hid thy face from us, and hast consumed us, because of our iniquities. Read: Psa 14:4; Dan 9:13; Isa 64:7; Hos 7:10-14

23 Thou hast not brought me the small cattle of thy burnt offerings; neither hast thou honoured me with thy sacrifices. I have not caused thee to serve with an offering, nor wearied thee with incense.

God had not asked for much—his requests were very few.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORESE THE TEXT:

**Mal 1:13-14** Ye said also, Behold, what a weariness is it! and ye have snuffed at it, saith the LORD of hosts; and ye brought that which was torn, and the lame, and the sick; thus ye brought an offering: should I accept this of your hand? saith the LORD. But cursed be the deceiver, which hath in his flock a male, and voweth, and sacrificeth unto the Lord a corrupt thing: for I am a great King, saith the LORD of hosts, and my name is dreadful among the heathen. Read: **Mal 3:8; Amo 5:21-22**

24 Thou hast bought me no sweet cane with money, neither hast thou filled me with the fat of thy sacrifices: but thou hast made me to serve with thy sins, thou hast wearied me with thine iniquities.

They never brought God incense, nor the fat of sacrifices but were generous with their sins—all this left God fed up with them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Jer 6:20** To what purpose cometh there to me incense from Sheba, and the sweet cane from a far country? your burnt offerings are not acceptable, nor your sacrifices sweet unto me. Read: **Isa 63:10; Eze 6:9**

25 I, even I, am he that blotteth out thy transgressions for mine own sake, and will not remember thy sins.

God says that he is forgiving them of their sins and will never think of them again.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Psa 79:8** O remember not against us former iniquities: let thy tender mercies speedily prevent us: for we are brought very low. Read: **Jer 31:34; Heb 10:17**

26 Put me in remembrance: let us plead together: declare thou, that thou mayest be justified.
Lewis P. Hussell

God says that they needed to talk things over and that they needed to plead their case for his forgiveness.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 1:18** Come now, and let us reason together, saith the LORD: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool. Read: **Isa 43:9**

**27**Thy first father hath sinned, and thy teachers have transgressed against me.

Their ancestors had started this sinning and they had resisted the prophets and the Holy Ghost. Teachers as well as the common people, all had gone astray and were not steadfast with God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

**Mal 3:7** Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me, and I will return unto you, saith the LORD of hosts. But ye said, Wherein shall we return? Read: **Job 40:7-8; Psa 78:8; Jer 3:25**

**28**Therefore I have profaned the princes of the sanctuary, and have given Jacob to the curse, and Israel to reproaches.

God had disqualified the temple leaders, he caused the feasts and Sabbaths to be forgotten, He had brought them down to the ground.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Deu 28:15-20** But it shall come to pass, if thou wilt not hearken unto the voice of the LORD thy God, to observe to do all his commandments and his statutes which I command thee this day; that all these curses shall come upon thee, and overtake thee: Cursed shalt thou be in the city, and cursed shalt thou be in the field. Cursed shall be thy basket and thy store. Cursed shall be the fruit of thy body, and the fruit of thy land, the increase of thy kine, and the
flocks of thy sheep. Cursed shalt thou be when thou comest in, and cursed shalt thou be when thou goest out. The LORD shall send upon thee cursing, vexation, and rebuke, in all that thou settest thine hand unto for to do, until thou be destroyed, and until thou perish quickly; because of the wickedness of thy doings, whereby thou hast forsaken me.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 44

God wants them to know who formed them and tells them that he will bear them. Carry them and deliver them because he had chosen them. He is going to pour out his spirit on them and their offspring. They will spring forth like a garden with a sprinkler system. Israel will once again proudly wear the LORD’s name. God claims that there is no other god and that he is the creator. The prophet launches into a long satire on the folly of idolatry. The idol maker’s labor long hours with axe, hammer, tongs and compass to shape an idol. We were made in the image of God and idols were made in the image of man or beast. Idol worshippers lack understanding—they just can’t bring themselves to see that their fake god is nothing but a block of wood. Finally the prophet pictures heaven and earth and all creation singing because God had taken up the cause of Israel and no idol had lifted a hand to deliver them. God says that he frustrates the omens of soothsayers, foils wizards, turns diviners into fools and makes wise men give wrong decisions. In summation the prophet says that the one and only God will have Cyrus shepherd his flock and give order to rebuild the nation of Israel.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 44

1Yet now hear, O Jacob my servant; and Israel, whom I have chosen:

Listen to me my chosen Israel.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 41:8 But thou, Israel, art my servant, Jacob whom I have chosen, the seed of Abraham my friend.
Jer 30:10 Therefore fear thou not, O my servant Jacob, saith the LORD; neither be dismayed, O Israel: for, lo, I will save thee from afar, and thy seed from the land of their captivity; and Jacob shall return, and shall be in rest, and be quiet, and none shall make him afraid.

2Thus saith the LORD that made thee, and formed thee from the womb, which will help thee; Fear not, O Jacob, my servant; and thou, Jesurun, whom I have chosen.

I made you, I will bear you, I will carry you, and I will deliver you.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 43:1 But now thus saith the LORD that created thee, O Jacob, and he that formed thee, O Israel, Fear not: for I have redeemed thee, I have called thee by thy name; thou art mine. . Read: Isa 46:3; Isa 46:4

3For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry ground: I will pour my spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring:

God is going to give them abundant water and will pour out his spirit upon them and their offspring.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Eze 34:26 And I will make them and the places round about my hill a blessing; and I will cause the shower to come down in his season; there shall be showers of blessing. Read: Psa 78:15-16

4And they shall spring up as among the grass, as willows by the water courses.

God is going to make them like a watered garden with an automatic sprinkler system and whatever they do will prosper and this will cause praise to spring forth from among all nations.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

**Isa 58:11** And the LORD shall guide thee continually, and satisfy thy soul in drought, and make fat thy bones: and thou shalt be like a watered garden, and like a spring of water, whose waters fail not.

**Psa 1:3** And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.

5 One shall say, I am the LORD’s; and another shall call himself by the name of Jacob; and another shall subscribe with his hand unto the LORD, and surname himself by the name of Israel.

They will proudly wear the name of Jacob or write on their hand the name of Jehovah, or lay claim to the name of Israel. All will claim to be God’s property.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

**Deu 26:17-19** Thou hast avouched the LORD this day to be thy God, and to walk in his ways, and to keep his statutes, and his commandments, and his judgments, and to hearken unto his voice: And the LORD hath avouched thee this day to be his peculiar people, as he hath promised thee, and that thou shouldest keep all his commandments; And to make thee high above all nations which he hath made, in praise, and in name, and in honour; and that thou mayest be an holy people unto the LORD thy God, as he hath spoken.

6 Thus saith the LORD the King of Israel, and his redeemer the LORD of hosts; I am the first, and I am the last; and beside me there is no God.

Here is what God says: I am your redeemer and deliverer—I am first, I am last, I am everything in between—I am the only God there is. Only God can create and declare the future.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Deu 32:39** See now that I, even I, am he, and there is no god with me: I kill,
and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither is there any that can deliver out of my hand. Read: Jer 50:34; Rev 1:11

7And who, as I, shall call, and shall declare it, and set it in order for me, since I appointed the ancient people? and the things that are coming, and shall come, let them shew unto them.

God not only made all nations but the languages also, he announces what is coming next—so, if there is any other god let him show us the future.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Gen 17:7-8 And I will establish my covenant between me and thee and thy seed after thee in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God unto thee, and to thy seed after thee. And I will give unto thee, and to thy seed after thee, the land wherein thou art a stranger, all the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession; and I will be their God. Read: Isa 46:9-10

8Fear ye not, neither be afraid: have not I told thee from that time, and have declared it? ye are even my witnesses. Is there a God beside me? yea, there is no God; I know not any.

Do not be alarmed or live in a state of dread, long time ago I told you that you were my witnesses. God doesn’t know any other god—because there are none.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Isa 48:5 I have even from the beginning declared it to thee; before it came to pass I shewed it thee: lest thou shouldest say, Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image, hath commanded them.

Psa 18:31 For who is God save the LORD? or who is a rock save our God?

9They that make a graven image are all of them vanity; and their delectable things shall not profit; and they are their own witnesses; they see not, nor know; that they may be ashamed.
These empty idols which were fashioned out of precious metals that overlaid wood were the productions of their own inventions. They were their own witnesses—silent as a tomb because only sheer ignorant fools could put their trust in them. Verses 19-20 is a satire on the folly of idolatry.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

**Dan 5:23** But hast lifted up thyself against the Lord of heaven; and they have brought the vessels of his house before thee, and thou, and thy lords, thy wives, and thy concubines, have drunk wine in them; and thou hast praised the gods of silver, and gold, of brass, iron, wood, and stone, which see not, nor hear, nor know: and the God in whose hand thy breath is, and whose are all thy ways, hast thou not glorified: Read: **Jer 10:4-8**

10*Who hath formed a god, or molten a graven image that is profitable for nothing?*

Jeroboam had two calves of gold: He invented a political religion, and instituted feasts in his own times, different from those appointed by Jehovah; he pretended to think that it would be both inconvenient and oppressive to them to go up to Jerusalem to worship. These calves were doubtless of the same kind as the calf which was set up by Aaron. Solomon’s idolatry, however, had prepared the people for Jeroboam’s abomination.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

**1Ki 12:28** Whereupon the king took counsel, and made two calves of gold, and said unto them, It is too much for you to go up to Jerusalem: behold thy gods, O Israel, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt. Read: **Dan 3:14; 1Co 8:4**

11*Behold, all his fellows shall be ashamed: and the workmen, they are of men: let them all be gathered together, let them stand up; yet they shall fear, and they shall be ashamed together.*

What fools!! Those who fashioned the idols must have blushed with shame when they witnessed their destruction.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**Isa 1:29** For they shall be ashamed of the oaks which ye have desired, and ye shall be confounded for the gardens that ye have chosen.

**1Sa 5:3** And when they of Ashdod arose early on the morrow, behold, Dagon was fallen upon his face to the earth before the ark of the LORD. And they took Dagon, and set him in his place again.

**Jer 10:15** Hear ye the word which the LORD speaketh unto you, O house of Israel: Thus saith the LORD, Learn not the way of the heathen, and be not dismayed at the signs of heaven; for the heathen are dismayed at them. For the customs of the people are vain: for one cutteth a tree out of the forest, the work of the hands of the workman, with the axe. They deck it with silver and with gold; they fasten it with nails and with hammers, that it move not. They are upright as the palm tree, but speak not: they must needs be borne, because they cannot go. Be not afraid of them; for they cannot do evil, neither also is it in them to do good.

**13** The carpenter stretcheth out his rule; he marketh it out with a line; he fitteth it with planes, and he marketh it out with the compass, and maketh it after the figure of a man, according to the beauty of a man; that it may remain in the house.

The workman draws lines with a pencil on a block of wood and with a compass finishes the outline and then with carving tools, chisels, dividers, and planes he ends up with a human or animal form that sits on a pedestal.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

**Exo 20:4-5** Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth: Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

14 He heweth him down cedars, and taketh the cypress and the oak, which he strengtheneth for himself among the trees of the forest: he planteth an ash, and the rain doth nourish it.

He selects a tree that will lend itself to carving and a tree that will not decay easily. He even plants selective trees for idol makers.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 40:20** He that is so impoverished that he hath no oblation chooseth a tree that will not rot; he seeketh unto him a cunning workman to prepare a graven image, that shall not be moved.

**Hab 2:19** Woe unto him that saith to the wood, Awake; to the dumb stone, Arise, it shall teach! Behold, it is laid over with gold and silver, and there is no breath at all in the midst of it.

15 Then shall it be for a man to burn: for he will take thereof, and warm himself; yea, he kindleth it, and baketh bread; yea, he maketh a god, and worshippeth it; he maketh it a graven image, and falleth down thereto.

Part of the tree was used for fire wood and the main trunk was carved into an idol and he falls down and adores and praises it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**2Ch 25:14-15** Now it came to pass, after that Amaziah was come from the slaughter of the Edomites, that he brought the gods of the children of Seir,
and set them up to be his gods, and bowed down himself before them, and burned incense unto them. Wherefore the anger of the LORD was kindled against Amaziah, and he sent unto him a prophet, which said unto him, Why hast thou sought after the gods of the people, which could not deliver their own people out of thine hand? and with them they do hurt. Read: Jdg 2:19; Rev 9:20

16He burneth part thereof in the fire; with part thereof he eateth flesh; he roasteth roast, and is satisfied: yea, he warmeth himself, and saith, Aha, I am warm, I have seen the fire:

He makes himself a roast and sits around the fire keeping warm—he is satisfied and well-content.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 45:20 Assemble yourselves and come; draw near together, ye that are escaped of the nations: they have no knowledge that set up the wood of their graven image, and pray unto a god that cannot save.

Isa 46:7 They bear him upon the shoulder, they carry him, and set him in his place, and he standeth; from his place shall he not remove: yea, one shall cry unto him, yet can he not answer, nor save him out of his trouble.

17And the residue thereof he maketh a god, even his graven image: he falleth down unto it, and worshippeth it, and prayeth unto it, and saith, Deliver me; for thou art my god.

As he prostrates himself before it, he actually believes that it can rescue him from any perilous situation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Rom 1:21-23 Because that, when they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened. Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools, And changed the glory of the uncorruptible God into an image made
like to corruptible man, and to birds, and fourfooted beasts, and creeping things.

**Psa 81:12** So I gave them up unto their own hearts’ lust: and they walked in their own counsels.

> They have not known nor understood: for he hath shut their eyes, that they cannot see; and their hearts, that they cannot understand.

The idol worshipper is past understanding, past seeing—no knowledge and no intelligence—ignorant, stupid and living with a closed mind.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**

**THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**Mat 13:14-15** And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive: For this people’s heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and should understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

And none considereth in his heart, neither is there knowledge nor understanding to say, I have burned part of it in the fire; yea, also I have baked bread upon the coals thereof; I have roasted flesh, and eaten it: and shall I make the residue thereof an abomination? shall I fall down to the stock of a tree?

They have not reflected or considered that they have used half of the tree to build a fire and with the other half made a god from it—so they worship a log—what an abomination!

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**

**THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:**

**1Ki 11:4-5** For it came to pass, when Solomon was old, that his wives turned away his heart after other gods: and his heart was not perfect with the LORD his God, as was the heart of David his father. For Solomon went after Ashtoreth the goddess of the Zidonians, and after Milcom the abomination of the Ammonites. Read **Deu 27:15; 2Ki 23:13**
20He feedeth on ashes: a deceived heart hath turned him aside, that he cannot deliver his soul, nor say, Is there not a lie in my right hand?

The idol worshipper has a deluded heart and mind—he cannot recollect himself to say that this thing in my right hand is a fake god.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Hos 4:12 My people ask counsel at their stocks, and their staff declareth unto them: for the spirit of whoredoms hath caused them to err, and they have gone a whoring from under their God. Read: Hos 12:1

21Remember these, O Jacob and Israel; for thou art my servant: I have formed thee; thou art my servant: O Israel, thou shalt not be forgotten of me.

God warns Israel to remember that he formed them and that he is the one who cares for and protects them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Deu 31:19-21 Now therefore write ye this song for you, and teach it the children of Israel: put it in their mouths, that this song may be a witness for me against the children of Israel. For when I shall have brought them into the land which I sware unto their fathers, that floweth with milk and honey; and they shall have eaten and filled themselves, and waxen fat; then will they turn unto other gods, and serve them, and provoke me, and break my covenant. And it shall come to pass, when many evils and troubles are befallen them, that this song shall testify against them as a witness; for it shall not be forgotten out of the mouths of their seed: for I know their imagination which they go about, even now, before I have brought them into the land which I sware.

22I have blotted out, as a thick cloud, thy transgressions, and, as a cloud, thy sins: return unto me; for I have redeemed thee.

I swept aside your ill deeds—your sins have vanished like a cloud—your
transgressions have left like the morning fog. Now it’s time for you to return to me.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Lam 3:43-44 Thou hast covered with anger, and persecuted us: thou hast slain, thou hast not pitied. Thou hast covered thyself with a cloud, that our prayer should not pass through.

Psa 109:14 Let the iniquity of his fathers be remembered with the LORD; and let not the sin of his mother be blotted out.

Lam 3:42 We have transgressed and have rebelled: thou hast not pardoned.

Sing, O ye heavens; for the LORD hath done it: shout, ye lower parts of the earth: break forth into singing, ye mountains, O forest, and every tree therein: for the LORD hath redeemed Jacob, and glorified himself in Israel.

God had taken up their cause—heaven and earth was singing—mountains and forest and trees—the author of all things had hammered out their redemption.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Rev 18:20 Rejoice over her, thou heaven, and ye holy apostles and prophets; for God hath avenged you on her.

Psa 69:34 Let the heaven and earth praise him, the seas, and every thing that moveth therein.

Psa 96:11-12 Let the heavens rejoice, and let the earth be glad; let the sea roar, and the fulness thereof. Let the field be joyful, and all that is therein: then shall all the trees of the wood rejoice

Thus saith the LORD, thy redeemer, and he that formed thee from the womb, I am the LORD that maketh all things; that stretcheth forth the heavens alone; that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself;
Lewis P. Hussell

No idol had done this—it was the mighty God who had formed them in the womb—who had spread out heavens canopy and laid the floor of earth.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 43:1 But now thus saith the LORD that created thee, O Jacob, and he that formed thee, O Israel, Fear not: for I have redeemed thee, I have called thee by thy name; thou art mine. Read: Isa 49:1

25That frustrateth the tokens of the liars, and maketh diviners mad; that turneth wise men backward, and maketh their knowledge foolish;

God is the one who frustrates the omens of soothsayers, foils the wizards—makes fools of diviners, turns their wisdom into folly and makes wise men give wrong advice.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 19:11-14 Surely the princes of Zoan are fools, the counsel of the wise counsellors of Pharaoh is become brutish: how say ye unto Pharaoh, I am the son of the wise, the son of ancient kings? Where are they? where are thy wise men? and let them tell thee now, and let them know what the LORD of hosts hath purposed upon Egypt. The princes of Zoan are become fools, the princes of Noph are deceived; they have also seduced Egypt, even they that are the stay of the tribes thereof. The LORD hath mingled a perverse spirit in the midst thereof: and they have caused Egypt to err in every work thereof, as a drunken man staggereth in his vomit.

26That confirmeth the word of his servant, and performeth the counsel of his messengers; that saith to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be inhabited; and to the cities of Judah, Ye shall be built, and I will raise up the decayed places thereof:

God confirms the message of his servants—He makes their prophecies come true, when God said that Jerusalem would be rebuilt and lived in once again it was as good as done.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

1Ki 13:3-5 And he gave a sign the same day, saying, This is the sign which the LORD hath spoken; Behold, the altar shall be rent, and the ashes that are upon it shall be poured out. And it came to pass, when king Jeroboam heard the saying of the man of God, which had cried against the altar in Bethel, that he put forth his hand from the altar, saying, Lay hold on him. And his hand, which he put forth against him, dried up, so that he could not pull it in again to him. The altar also was rent, and the ashes poured out from the altar, according to the sign which the man of God had given by the word of the LORD.

2Pe 1:21 For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.

27 That saith to the deep, Be dry, and I will dry up thy rivers:
When God speaks watch and see it happen.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITATIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Jer 50:38 A drought is upon her waters; and they shall be dried up: for it is the land of graven images, and they are mad upon their idols. Read: Jer 51:31-33

28 That saith of Cyrus, He is my shepherd, and shall perform all my pleasure: even saying to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be built; and to the temple, Thy foundation shall be laid.
God said through the prophet Isaiah 150 years before it happened that Cyrus would be his shepherd to gather his flock and rebuild Jerusalem and lay the foundation of the temple and rebuild it again. The decree of Cyrus is recorded in Ezra 1:2-4: 6:3-5. See my comments in the book of Ezra.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Isa 45:1 Thus saith the LORD to his anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I
have holden, to subdue nations before him; and I will loose the loins of kings, to open before him the two leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut;

Ezr 1:1-3 Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the LORD by the mouth of Jeremiah might be fulfilled, the LORD stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying, Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, The LORD God of heaven hath given me all the kingdoms of the earth; and he hath charged me to build him an house at Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all his people? his God be with him, and let him go up to Jerusalem, which is in Judah, and build the house of the LORD God of Israel, (he is the God,) which is in Jerusalem.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 45

Cyrus is selected for the execution of this important and dangerous enterprise. God says that the gates of the city will be standing open for him. His invading army consisted of one hundred and twenty thousand horse, six thousand chariots of war, and six hundred thousand infantry. God claims that he would punish Bel and bring out of his mouth that which he has swallowed up. God claims that he is taking judgment on the idols of Babylon. So well was the wall and ditch destroyed that those who have made search for it have not found it. Two travelers, Buckingham and Fredrick says: “neither the wall or the ditch has been seen the least vestige by any modern traveler. Within twenty-one miles distance along the Euphrates, and twelve miles across it in breadth, I was unable to perceive anything that could admit of any imagining, that either a wall or ditch had existed within this extensive area. The astonishment that God predicts has been completely fulfilled.”

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 45

1Thus saith the LORD to his anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have holden, to subdue nations before him; and I will loose the loins of kings, to open before him the two leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut;

God anointed Cyrus and took a firm grip on his hand and commissioned him to take the gird from, and loose the loins of kings. When Cyrus arrived the gates were opened for him and his army.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 44:28 That saith of Cyrus, He is my shepherd, and shall perform all my
pleasure: even saying to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be built; and to the temple, Thy foundation shall be laid.

Isa 41:13 For I the LORD thy God will hold thy right hand, saying unto thee, Fear not; I will help thee.

2Ch 36:22-23 Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the LORD spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah might be accomplished, the LORD stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying, Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, All the kingdoms of the earth hath the LORD God of heaven given me; and he hath charged me to build him an house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all his people? The LORD his God be with him, and let him go up.

"I will go before thee, and make the crooked places straight: I will break in pieces the gates of brass, and cut in sunder the bars of iron:

God promises to straighten out the rough and rugged ways before him. He further promises to smash and shatter the gates that would prevent him from entering the city.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 42:16 And I will bring the blind by a way that they knew not; I will lead them in paths that they have not known: I will make darkness light before them, and crooked things straight. These things will I do unto them, and not forsake them.

Psa 107:16 For he hath broken the gates of brass, and cut the bars of iron in sunder.

3And I will give thee the treasures of darkness, and hidden riches of secret places, that thou mayest know that I, the LORD, which call thee by thy name, am the God of Israel.

The hoarded treasures that were garnered from the nation that she had defeated were hidden in dark vaults in secret places. God led Cyrus straight to the treasures and Cyrus knew that it was of God.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Jer 27:5-7 I have made the earth, the man and the beast that are upon the ground, by my great power and by my outstretched arm, and have given it unto whom it seemed meet unto me. And now have I given all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, my servant; and the beasts of the field have I given him also to serve him. And all nations shall serve him, and his son, and his son’s son, until the very time of his land come: and then many nations and great kings shall serve themselves of him. Read: Jer 50:37; Ezr 1:2

For Jacob my servant’s sake, and Israel mine elect, I have even called thee by thy name: I have surnamed thee, though thou hast not known me.

God says he is doing this for the sake of his elect. God called Cyrus and surnamed him 150 years before he was born. The religion of Cyrus was monotheism (belief in one God).

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Job 12:18 He looseth the bond of kings, and girdeth their loins with a girdle. Read: Exo 19:5; Jer 50:17-20

I am the LORD, and there is none else, there is no God beside me: I girded thee, though thou hast not known me:

He wants Cyrus to know that there is no God other than him and that he was going to arm him and make him ready for war.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 46:9 Remember the former things of old: for I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me,

Deu 4:35 Unto thee it was shewed, that thou mightest know that the LORD he is God; there is none else beside him.
6That they may know from the rising of the sun, and from the west, that there is none beside me. I am the LORD, and there is none else.

From the rising to the setting of the sun all over the world there is no God like the God of Abraham.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Mal 1:11 For from the rising of the sun even unto the going down of the same my name shall be great among the Gentiles; and in every place incense shall be offered unto my name, and a pure offering: for my name shall be great among the heathen, saith the LORD of hosts.

7I form the light, and create darkness: I make peace, and create evil: I the LORD do all these things.

God creates light and darkness—prosperity and misfortune—calamity and well-being—good times and bad times.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jer 31:35 Thus saith the LORD, which giveth the sun for a light by day, and the ordinances of the moon and of the stars for a light by night, which divideth the sea when the waves thereof roar; The LORD of hosts is his name:

Exo 10:21 And the LORD said unto Moses, Stretch out thine hand toward heaven, that there may be darkness over the land of Egypt, even darkness which may be felt. Read: Isa 10:5-9

8Drop down, ye heavens, from above, and let the skies pour down righteousness: let the earth open, and let them bring forth salvation, and let righteousness spring up together; I the LORD have created it.

This is a picture of God pouring down his spirit and blessing on our offspring—sending us garments of praise instead of the spirit of heaviness (depression).
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 44:3 For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry ground: I will pour my spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring:

Isa 61:3 To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the LORD, that he might be glorified.

9Woe unto him that striveth with his Maker! Let the potsherd strive with the potsherds of the earth. Shall the clay say to him that fashioneth it, What makest thou? or thy work, He hath no hands?

Woe to you who fight against God. Why be a pot that is at odds with the potter—have you ever seen clay talk back to the potter?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 10:15 Shall the axe boast itself against him that heweth therewith? or shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? as if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself, as if it were no wood.

10Woe unto him that saith unto his father, What begettest thou? or to the woman, What hast thou brought forth?

Picture the sperm saying to the father, “I never gave you permission to impregnate your wife, or the fetus saying to the mother, “why am I cooped up like this?”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Deu 27:16 Cursed be he that setteth light by his father or his mother. And all the people shall say, Amen.
Mal 1:6 A son honoureth his father, and a servant his master: if then I be a father, where is mine honour? and if I be a master, where is my fear? saith the LORD of hosts unto you, O priests, that despise my name. And ye say, Wherein have we despised thy name?


**11**Thus saith the LORD, the Holy One of Israel, and his Maker, Ask me of things to come concerning my sons, and concerning the work of my hands command ye me.

No one tells God what he can or cannot do.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:**

**Jer 33:3** Call unto me, and I will answer thee, and shew thee great and mighty things, which thou knowest not.

**Dan 9:2-3** In the first year of his reign I Daniel understood by books the number of the years, whereof the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah the prophet, that he would accomplish seventy years in the desolations of Jerusalem. And I set my face unto the Lord God, to seek by prayer and supplications, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes:

**Eph 2:10** For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.

**12**I have made the earth, and created man upon it: I, even my hands, have stretched out the heavens, and all their host have I commanded.

God has not only made man but he has handcrafted the heavens. That’s why he is the only one qualified to carry out this mission against Babylon and return the exiles to their homeland.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

**Isa 45:18** For thus saith the LORD that created the heavens; God himself that formed the earth and made it; he hath established it, he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited: I am the LORD; and there is none else.
Isa 40:12 Who hath measured the waters in the hollow of his hand, and meted out heaven with the span, and comprehended the dust of the earth in a measure, and weighed the mountains in scales, and the hills in a balance?

Gen 2:1 Thus the heavens and the earth were finished, and all the host of them.

I have raised him up in righteousness, and I will direct all his ways: he shall build my city, and he shall let go my captives, not for price nor reward, saith the LORD of hosts.

God raised Cyrus up—God is in charge of the operation Cyrus has God holding his hand and has no choice but to let the exiles go. God didn’t hire him—he told him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 48:14-15 All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; which among them hath declared these things? The LORD hath loved him: he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall be on the Chaldeans. I, even I, have spoken; yea, I have called him: I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

Isa 44:28 That saith of Cyrus, He is my shepherd, and shall perform all my pleasure: even saying to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be built; and to the temple, Thy foundation shall be laid.

Isa 52:2-3 Shake thyself from the dust; arise, and sit down, O Jerusalem: loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion. For thus saith the LORD, Ye have sold yourselves for nought; and ye shall be redeemed without money.

Thus saith the LORD, The labour of Egypt, and merchandise of Ethiopia and of the Sabeans, men of stature, shall come over unto thee, and they shall be thine: they shall come after thee; in chains they shall come over, and they shall fall down unto thee, they shall make supplication unto thee, saying, Surely God is in thee; and there is none else, there is no God.

They came over and volunteered their service—they believed that God was in Israel and that his God was the one and only God.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Isa 61:5-6** And strangers shall stand and feed your flocks, and the sons of the alien shall be your plowmen and your vinedressers. But ye shall be named the Priests of the LORD: men shall call you the Ministers of our God: ye shall eat the riches of the Gentiles, and in their glory shall ye boast yourselves. Read: **Isa 19:24-25**

\textit{15} Verily thou art a God that hidest thyself, O God of Israel, the Saviour.

God is a God that works behind the scenes—the entire book of Esther shows the providence of God at work in his people.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 8:17** And I will wait upon the LORD, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

\textit{16} They shall be ashamed, and also confounded, all of them: they shall go to confusion together that are makers of idols.

The idol makers are ashamed, confounded, humiliated, and are now out of work and unemployed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Isa 42:17** They shall be turned back, they shall be greatly ashamed, that trust in graven images, that say to the molten images, Ye are our gods.

**Jer 10:14** Every man is brutish in his knowledge: every founder is confounded by the graven image: for his molten image is falsehood, and there is no breath in them.

**Jer 10:15** They are vanity, and the work of errors: in the time of their visitation they shall perish.
17 *But Israel shall be saved in the LORD with an everlasting salvation: ye shall not be ashamed nor confounded world without end.*

Israel was promised to be saved from their captivity and they were not ashamed or disappointed in their deliverance.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:**

**Rom 11:26** And so all Israel shall be saved: as it is written, There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob:

**Joe 2:26-27** And ye shall eat in plenty, and be satisfied, and praise the name of the LORD your God, that hath dealt wondrously with you: and my people shall never be ashamed. And ye shall know that I am in the midst of Israel, and that I am the LORD your God, and none else: and my people shall never be ashamed.

18 *For thus saith the LORD that created the heavens; God himself that formed the earth and made it; he hath established it, he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited: I am the LORD; and there is none else.*

The constant theme is a reminder of the fact that God is the source of their deliverance. He is the one who built the earth from scratch and didn’t plan on it being empty—(the Holy land was at this time empty).

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:**

**Jer 10:12** He hath made the earth by his power, he hath established the world by his wisdom, and hath stretched out the heavens by his discretion.

**Psa 115:16** The heaven, even the heavens, are the LORD’S: but the earth hath he given to the children of men.

19 *I have not spoken in secret, in a dark place of the earth: I said not unto the seed of Jacob, Seek ye me in vain: I the LORD speak righteousness, I declare things that are right.*
Lewis P. Hussell

God does not speak in a secret or dark place like the mediums or spiritualist do.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Deu 29:29  The secret things belong unto the LORD our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children for ever, that we may do all the words of this law.

Isa 55:6-7  Seek ye the LORD while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near: Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.

20 Assemble yourselves and come; draw near together, ye that are escaped of the nations: they have no knowledge that set up the wood of their graven image, and pray unto a god that cannot save.

These fools walked around carrying an idol and praying to a make-believe god. The pope carries an idol (crucifix) with him when he visits America. Under Pope Stephen III (752 AD) worship of images was forbidden, however in (787 AD) under Pope Stefano III worship of images was restored.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 2:27-28  Saying to a stock, Thou art my father; and to a stone, Thou hast brought me forth: for they have turned their back unto me, and not their face: but in the time of their trouble they will say, Arise, and save us. But where are thy gods that thou hast made thee? let them arise, if they can save thee in the time of thy trouble: for according to the number of thy cities are thy gods, O Judah. Read: Ex. 20:4

21 Tell ye, and bring them near; yea, let them take counsel together: who hath declared this from ancient time? who hath told it from that time? have not I the LORD? and there is no God else beside me; a just God and a Saviour; there is none beside me.
If idol gods know anything about the future they needed to put their heads together and present the evidence.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORESE THE TEXT:

Isa 41:22-23 Let them bring them forth, and shew us what shall happen: let them shew the former things, what they be, that we may consider them, and know the latter end of them; or declare us things for to come. Shew the things that are to come hereafter, that we may know that ye are gods: yea, do good, or do evil, that we may be dismayed, and behold it together.

22 Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I am God, and there is none else.

Jehovah is the only God there is and the only one who saves.

23 I have sworn by myself, the word is gone out of my mouth in righteousness, and shall not return, That unto me every knee shall bow, every tongue shall swear.

God does not go back on his word. His word is backed up with absolute fulfillment and will not be revoked.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Rom 14:10-11 But why dost thou judge thy brother? or why dost thou set at nought thy brother? for we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ. For it is written, As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to me, and every tongue shall confess to God.

24 Surely, shall one say, in the LORD have I righteousness and strength: even to him shall men come; and all that are incensed against him shall be ashamed.

Surely those who are God haters and Christ deniers will be disgraced by their unbelief.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 54:17 No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the LORD, and their righteousness is of me, saith the LORD.

Zec 10:12 And I will strengthen them in the LORD; and they shall walk up and down in his name, saith the LORD.

Isa 60:9 Surely the isles shall wait for me, and the ships of Tarshish first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them, unto the name of the LORD thy God, and to the Holy One of Israel, because he hath glorified thee.

25 In the LORD shall all the seed of Israel be justified, and shall glory.

Everyone connected with the LORD should be living a robust disciplined spirituous life.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 45:17 But Israel shall be saved in the LORD with an everlasting salvation: ye shall not be ashamed nor confounded world without end.

Jer 9:23-24 Thus saith the LORD, Let not the wise man glory in his wisdom, neither let the mighty man glory in his might, let not the rich man glory in his riches: But let him that glorieth glory in this, that he understandeth and knoweth me, that I am the LORD which exercise lovingkindness, judgment, and righteousness, in the earth: for in these things I delight, saith the LORD.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 46

Cyrus, who is so often marked out in the predictions of Scripture, advanced the glory of both nations to its highest pitch. Having long commanded the Median troops of Astyages, his mother’s father, and of Darius her brother and his own father-in-law, against the Chaldeans and others, he became heir to the Persian crown by his father, and to the Median by his wife, Dan. 9:1; 5:31. Under his command the Medo-Persian troops conquered the three powerful kingdoms of Lydia on the north, Babylon in the middle, and Egypt on the south; all to the westward. The multitudes he slew, and the spoils he seized, were astonishing. Most of the captives who had been enslaved by the Chaldeans, he allowed to return and re-people their desolated countries. To the Jews he also restored their sacred vessels; and solemnly encouraged and kindly assisted them to rebuild their temple. He established his empire according to the most just and prudent regulations; but Cambyses, his madly cruel son and successor, almost ruined it by his expedition into Egypt and Ethiopia. Artaxerxes Smerdis, the magian imposter, throughout his reign did nothing more than obstruct the building of the temple. Darius Hystapes, who encouraged the building of it, and who was perhaps the Aharuerus who divorced Vashti, married Esther, advanced and pulled down Haman, and rendered Mordecai his chief minister of state, extended the empire to its utmost greatness. The conquests and government thereof reached into Iberia, Albania, Colchis, and Scythia on the north; into Lesser Asia and the Islands, Syria, and Canaan, on the west; and into Egypt, Ethiopia, part of Arabia, and India, on the south. (Quoted from the New Self Interpreting Bible Library Page 86 Vol. 1, 1917)

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 46

1Bel boweth down, Nebo stoopeth, their idols were upon the beasts, and upon the cattle: your carriages were heavy loaden; they are a burden to the weary beast.
They broke the idols into pieces and loaded them on pack animals and on ox carts and carted them to the dump. Bel, called Belus by the Greek and Roman writers, is the same as Baal; and Nebo is interpreted by Castell and Norberg of Mercury; the two principal idols of Babylon. When that city was taken by the Persians, these images were carried in triumph.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 21:9 And, behold, here cometh a chariot of men, with a couple of horsemen. And he answered and said, Babylon is fallen, is fallen; and all the graven images of her gods he hath broken unto the ground. Read: Jer 51:52; Jer 50:2; Jer 51:44

2They stoop, they bow down together; they could not deliver the burden, but themselves are gone into captivity.

They themselves go into captivity and their gods could do nothing to prevent this.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 36:18 Beware lest Hezekiah persuade you, saying, The LORD will deliver us. Hath any of the gods of the nations delivered his land out of the hand of the king of Assyria? Read: Jdg 18:17-18

3Hearken unto me, O house of Jacob, and all the remnant of the house of Israel, which are borne by me from the belly, which are carried from the womb:

Listen Israel, I have been carrying you since birth and will continue to carry you.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 51:1 Hearken to me, ye that follow after righteousness, ye that seek the LORD: look unto the rock whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit whence ye are digged.
Isa 49:1 Listen, O isles, unto me; and hearken, ye people, from far; The LORD hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

4And even to your old age I am he; and even to hoar hairs will I carry you: I have made, and I will bear; even I will carry, and will deliver you.

I have carried you on my back since birth and I will continue even when your hair turns grey and I will rescue you.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Psa 92:14 They shall still bring forth fruit in old age; they shall be fat and flourishing;

Psa 48:14 For this God is our God for ever and ever: he will be our guide even unto death.

Psa 71:18 Now also when I am old and grayheaded, O God, forsake me not; until I have shewed thy strength unto this generation, and thy power to every one that is to come.

5To whom will ye liken me, and make me equal, and compare me, that we may be like?

There is nothing in heaven or earth to compare God to. How can we compare the incomparable? Will we compare God to the gods that have been smashed and loaded on carts and headed for the trash dump?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 40:18 To whom then will ye liken God? or what likeness will ye compare unto him?

Jer 10:6-7 Forasmuch as there is none like unto thee, O LORD; thou art great, and thy name is great in might. Who would not fear thee, O King of nations? for to thee doth it appertain: forasmuch as among all the wise men of the nations, and in all their kingdoms, there is none like unto thee.
6They lavish gold out of the bag, and weigh silver in the balance, and hire a goldsmith; and he maketh it a god: they fall down, yea, they worship.

These people squander their gold to make an image. They hire a goldsmith to fashion the image and then fall down on their knees to worship it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Exo 32:2-4 And Aaron said unto them, Break off the golden earrings, which are in the ears of your wives, of your sons, and of your daughters, and bring them unto me. And all the people brake off the golden earrings which were in their ears, and brought them unto Aaron. And he received them at their hand, and fashioned it with a graving tool, after he had made it a molten calf: and they said, These be thy gods, O Israel, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt.

7They bear him upon the shoulder, they carry him, and set him in his place, and he standeth; from his place shall he not remove: yea, one shall cry unto him, yet can he not answer, nor save him out of his trouble.

The pope carries an image with him on his holy parade—the crucifix—it never says anything, it never talks back, of course it never does anything either—another form of idolatry. A quick look at image worship in the Catholic church. In 726 A.D. the worship of images was forbidden by the Pope and councils. In 787 A.D. the worship of images was restored. In 820 A.D. the worship of images was forbidden. In 842 A.D. A definite and final decision for the worship of images was made.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

1Sa 5:3 And when they of Ashdod arose early on the morrow, behold, Dagon was fallen upon his face to the earth before the ark of the LORD. And they took Dagon, and set him in his place again.

Dan 3:1 Nebuchadnezzar the king made an image of gold, whose height was threescore cubits, and the breadth thereof six cubits: he set it up in the plain of Dura, in the province of Babylon.
*Remember this, and shew yourselves men: bring it again to mind, O ye transgressors.*

They needed to remind themselves of the things that God told them was going to happen in the future.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:**

**Jer 10:5** They are upright as the palm tree, but speak not: they must needs be borne, because they cannot go. Be not afraid of them; for they cannot do evil, neither also is it in them to do good.

**Isa 45:20** Assemble yourselves and come; draw near together, ye that are escaped of the nations: they have no knowledge that set up the wood of their graven image, and pray unto a god that cannot save.

*Remember the former things of old: for I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me,*

Remember the lessons as taught in the law. (Deut. 28) I have no rival—there is no other rock.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**10** Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure:

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:**

**Deu 32:7** Remember the days of old, consider the years of many generations: ask thy father, and he will shew thee; thy elders, and they will tell thee.

**Isa 45:21** Tell ye, and bring them near; yea, let them take counsel together: who hath declared this from ancient time? who hath told it from that time? have not I the LORD? and there is no God else beside me; a just God and a Saviour; there is none beside me.
11 Calling a ravenous bird from the east, the man that executeth my counsel from a far country: yea, I have spoken it, I will also bring it to pass; I have purposed it, I will also do it.

God calls Cyrus his anointed, his shepherd, his righteous man, a ravenous bird, an executioner, a battle axe and summons the kingdoms of Ararat, Minni, (somewhere in Armenia) and Ashchenaz (Scythians) and the kings of the Medes to destroy the Chaldeans. The ensign of Cyrus was a golden eagle. Under Cyrus there was one world government. He was the ruler of all nations.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Isa 41:2 Who raised up the righteous man from the east, called him to his foot, gave the nations before him, and made him rule over kings? he gave them as the dust to his sword, and as driven stubble to his bow.

Isa 41:25 I have raised up one from the north, and he shall come: from the rising of the sun shall he call upon my name: and he shall come upon princes as upon morter, and as the potter treadeth clay. Read: Jer 51:20-29

12 Hearken unto me, ye stouthearted, that are far from righteousness:

A stouthearted man is one that is hard headed, obstinate, stiff-necked and spoiled—couldn’t find his own hands.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Isa 48:4 Because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

Psa 76:5 The stouthearted are spoiled, they have slept their sleep: and none of the men of might have found their hands.

Zec 7:11-12 But they refused to hearken, and pulled away the shoulder, and stopped their ears, that they should not hear. Yea, they made their hearts as an adamant stone, lest they should hear the law, and the words which the
LORD of hosts hath sent in his spirit by the former prophets: therefore came
a great wrath from the LORD of hosts.

**Act 7:51** Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always
resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers *did*, so *do* ye.

**13 I bring near my righteousness; it shall not be far off, and my salvation
shall not tarry: and I will place salvation in Zion for Israel my glory.**

When God speaks of his righteousness being near he means that Israel’s
deliverance is about to happen. He is going to bring victory, not in the far off
future but now. He is going to grant victory to Zion and restore Jerusalem
and Israel which is his glory.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**Isa 51:5** My righteousness *is* near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arms
shall judge the people; the isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall
they trust.

**Psa 14:7** Oh that the salvation of Israel *were come* out of Zion! when the
LORD bringeth back the captivity of his people, Jacob shall rejoice, *and*
Israel shall be glad.

**1Pe 2:6** Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, Behold, I lay in Sion
a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not
be confounded.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 47

Nebuchadnezzar abandoned himself to idolatry, pride, and other pieties. Out of his immense spoils he formed a monstrous golden image for Bel his principal god, who, he imagined, had rendered him so successful; which, together with its pedestal, was at least 90 feet high and 9 feet in breadth. His subjects were peremptorily commanded to worship it, under pain of being immediately burned. By expending his spoils and employing his captives, in his building of Babylon, he rendered it the wonder of mankind. Its walls were 87 feet broad, 350 feet high, and about 60 miles in circuit; and were fortified with 250 if not 316 towers, at proper distances. His success swelled his pride to an uncommon pitch. To punish it, God, by a kind of delirium, rendered him for seven years like a brute. At last his reason was restored, and he acknowledged God’s dominion over him. He was reinstalled in his throne, and soon after died, A.M. 3443, having reigned two years with his father and forty three by himself. The Chaldeans’ contempt of God; their idolatry, astrology, magic, and sorcery; their carnal security, luxury, and avarice; their barbarous murder and oppression of the Jews and other conquered nations, now began to be punished by God. Notwithstanding the prudent endeavors of Nitocris, his Median queen, Evil-Merodach was noted for nothing but folly and riot. By madly abusing some of the Medes at a hunting match, he laid the foundation of a ruinous war with that nation. In the third year of his reign Neriglissar, his sister’s husband, murdered him and reigned in his stead. Jealous of the growing power of the Medes, he marched against them with a prodigious army of his own troops, besides 150,000 whom he had hired from Lydia, Phrygia, Cappodocia, Arabia, etc. Cyrus the Persian, who commanded the Median troops, routed this huge host with an army scarcely a third part of their number. Neriglissar was slain. Laboroschard, his infant son, who succeeded him, the people murdered, when he had reigned but nine months, noted for nothing but the cruelty of his administrators; and Belshazzar, the son of Evil-Merodach, reigned in his stead. Gobrias and Gadates, two Chaldean lords provoked, the one by the murder of his son, and the other by the castration
of himself, had revolted to Cyrus and drawn the provinces which they
governed along with them. Having in two years subdued the nations which
it was probable would assist the Chaldeans, Cyrus ravaged their country and
marched against Babylon, their capital. Here Belshazzar’s troops had shut
themselves up, having stored the city with provisions sufficient for twenty
years. For two years Cyrus besieged Babylon without any success. At last
in A.M. 3466, informed of the approach of their annual idolatrous revel,
on which Belshazzar profaned the sacred vessels of the Jewish Temple, in
libations to his idols and in ministering to his drunkenness, he broke down
the bank at the head of the new canal which Nitocris had dug for preventing
the Euphrates from overflowing the country. By this means he diverted the
river from its ordinary passage through Babylon. No sooner was the channel
emptied of water than Gobrias and Gadates led part of his troops down,
and other up, the channel into Babylon. The drunken Chaldeans having
left their gates on the river quite open, the Medo-Persian troops rushed in
thereat and opened the other gates to their fellows. While the intoxicated
party lay buried in sleep and vomit, another party ran up and down to
inform the distant corners of the city that the Persians had entered it; while
the merchants, husbandmen, and hired troops labored to escape for their
lives, while every part of the city was filled with consternation, howling,
and desperate sorrow; the Medes, Persians, Phrygians, and others of Cyrus’
army, furiously spread burning and bloodshed on every side. While the
flames of the city ascended to heaven, the streets ran with the blood of
murdered warriors, princes, magicians, and even of innocent babes, dashed
against the stones. Belshazzar and his thousand lords were dispatched in
their drunkenness and sleep. His whole family and friends were miserably
murdered or ignominiously reduced. Many of his subject’s carcasses rotted
above ground, or were devoured by beasts or interred like brutes. Bereaved
of their husbands, the delicate ladies and others were ignominiously ravished
or cruelly murdered. The immense riches of the city became a spoil. The
temples were pillaged. The Idols Bel, Nebo, Merodach, Nergal, Sheshach,
Etc. were broken to pieces, and the metal carried off for a prey. The sacred
vessels of the Jewish temple, which were found in the temple of Bel, were
carefully preserved, and afterwards restored to the Jews. Not a little of the
city being burned, and its high walls broken down, the whole constitution
of the empire was unhinged; and the people who remained alive reduced
to the basest servitude, under the Medes, Persians, Jews, and other nations,
who had lately been their captives.

Recovering themselves under the mild government of Cyrus, encouraged
by the confusions which followed up the death of Cambyses his son, and
provoked that Darius Hstapes had quite deserted their city and fixed his residence at Shushan in Persia, the Babylonians after four years in preparation, in A.M. 3487, made an open revolt. For twenty months Darius in vain besieged them with all his forces. To prevent a surrender through want of provision, the besieged strangled all their unnecessary eaters, old men, children, and most of their women. After fixing the plot with his master Darius, Zopyrus, a Persian general, having fearfully mangled his face, fled over to the Babylonians, pretending that Darius had thus abused his body for his advising him to raise the siege. They readily credited his pretenses, and made him commander of a body of their troops. With these he made several successful sallies upon the retreating besiegers; and his success quickly procured him the command of the whole Babylonian army and of the whole city. He seized the first opportunity to open, for his master’s troops, two of the principal gates. Darius, thus master of the place, impaled 3000 of the principal rebels and pardoned the rest; and from the neighboring provinces supplied them with 50,000 wives. He lowered their walls three fourth-parts of their height. About A.M. 3680, Babylon remained still pretty considerable; and Alexander the Great resolved to restore it to its ancient grandeur; but Seleucus, his Syro-Grecian successor, having drained it of about 500,000 inhabitants to people his new city of Seleucia, in the neighborhood, it quickly dwindled into a mere desert, and the Euphrates, overflowing part of it, turned it into a lake or fen. Before the birth of our Savior, Strabo, and after him Pliny, represent it as utterly desolate, nothing remaining but the walls. About A. D. 400 Jerome represents it as a hunting-park for the Persian Kings. For many ages past no one knows certainly where it stood. The supposed seat of it is haunted with venomous and doleful animals, that it cannot be safely approached but during the winter cold, which renders these creatures torpid or confines them to their holes. (Quoted from the New Self Interpreting Bible Library Page 85, 86 Vol. 1, 1917)

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 47

1 Come down, and sit in the dust, O virgin daughter of Babylon, sit on the ground: there is no throne, O daughter of the Chaldeans: for thou shalt no more be called tender and delicate.

Sitting on the ground was a symbol of being throne less. The prophet pictures her coming down from her seat of power. The party was over for Babylon.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 13:18 Say unto the king and to the queen, Humble yourselves, sit down: for your principalities shall come down, even the crown of your glory.

Psa 137:8 O daughter of Babylon, who art to be destroyed; happy shall he be, that rewardeth thee as thou hast served us.

Jer 50:42 They shall hold the bow and the lance: they are cruel, and will not shew mercy: their voice shall roar like the sea, and they shall ride upon horses, every one put in array, like a man to the battle, against thee, O daughter of Babylon.

2 Take the millstones, and grind meal: uncover thy locks, make bare the leg, uncover the thigh, pass over the rivers.

The poorest of the slaves were used to grind the meal. The high and mighty was told by their captors to strip down to the nude for public display as they marched them through town in triumph.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Lam 5:13 They took the young men to grind, and the children fell under the wood.

Isa 20:4 So shall the king of Assyria lead away the Egyptians prisoners, and the Ethiopians captives, young and old, naked and barefoot, even with their buttocks uncovered, to the shame of Egypt.

3 Thy nakedness shall be uncovered, yea, thy shame shall be seen: I will take vengeance, and I will not meet thee as a man.

Bared to their birthday suit they were shamed as they marched them in chains over the worst of terrain to be used in slave labor, 50,000 women were sold in the sex slave market.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Jer 51:11 Make bright the arrows; gather the shields: the LORD hath raised up the spirit of the kings of the Medes: for his device is against Babylon, to destroy it; because it is the vengeance of the LORD, the vengeance of his temple. Read: Isa 63:4-6; Jer 51:20-24

\[4\text{As for our redeemer, the LORD of hosts is his name, the Holy One of Israel.}\]

They refused to let any of the captives free until God stepped in and redeemed them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Jer 31:11 For the LORD hath redeemed Jacob, and ransomed him from the hand of him that was stronger than he.

Jer 50:33-34 Thus saith the LORD of hosts; The children of Israel and the children of Judah were oppressed together: and all that took them captives held them fast; they refused to let them go. Their Redeemer is strong; the LORD of hosts is his name: he shall throughly plead their cause, that he may give rest to the land, and disquiet the inhabitants of Babylon.

\[5\text{Sit thou silent, and get thee into darkness, O daughter of the Chaldeans: for thou shalt no more be called, The lady of kingdoms.}\]

Babylon sits in silence and obscurity. No one lives there and no one ever will. After Babylon was taken by Cyrus, instead of being “the lady of kingdoms,” the metropolis of a great empire, and mistress of all the East, it became subject to the Persians; and the imperial seat being removed to Susa, instead of having a king, it had only a deputy residing there, who governed it as a province of the Persian empire. The introduction gives you an overview of Babylon.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 13:20 It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from
generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there. Read: Jer 25:10; Lam 1:1

6I was wroth with my people, I have polluted mine inheritance, and given them into thine hand: thou didst shew them no mercy; upon the ancient hast thou very heavily laid thy yoke.

God was angry with his people—He dishonored his land and temple and sold his people unto a people that showed them no mercy.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 42:24-25 Who gave Jacob for a spoil, and Israel to the robbers? did not the LORD, he against whom we have sinned? for they would not walk in his ways, neither were they obedient unto his law. Therefore he hath poured upon him the fury of his anger, and the strength of battle: and it hath set him on fire round about, yet he knew not; and it burned him, yet he laid it not to heart.

7And thou saidst, I shall be a lady for ever: so that thou didst not lay these things to thy heart, neither didst remember the latter end of it.

She thought that she would always remain the queen city of the universe. They never thought or pondered the outcome—they never reckoned that their cruelty would be dealt with by the almighty.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Dan 5:18-23 O thou king, the most high God gave Nebuchadnezzar thy father a kingdom, and majesty, and glory, and honour: And for the majesty that he gave him, all people, nations, and languages, trembled and feared before him: whom he would he slew; and whom he would he kept alive; and whom he would he set up; and whom he would he put down. But when his heart was lifted up, and his mind hardened in pride, he was deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him: And he was driven from the sons of men; and his heart was made like the beasts, and his dwelling was with the wild asses: they fed him with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven; till he knew that the most high God ruled in the kingdom of men, and that he appointeth over it whomsoever he will. And thou his son,
O Belshazzar, hast not humbled thine heart, though thou knewest all this; But hast lifted up thyself against the Lord of heaven; and they have brought the vessels of his house before thee, and thou, and thy lords, thy wives, and thy concubines, have drunk wine in them; and thou hast praised the gods of silver, and gold, of brass, iron, wood, and stone, which see not, nor hear, nor know: and the God in whose hand thy breath is, and whose are all thy ways, hast thou not glorified:

Therefore hear now this, thou that art given to pleasures, that dwellest carelessly, that sayest in thine heart, I am, and none else beside me; I shall not sit as a widow, neither shall I know the loss of children:

They set securely and complacently in their pleasure mad city living in ease—they bragged about being supreme and unrivalled.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Jer 50:11 Because ye were glad, because ye rejoiced, O ye destroyers of mine heritage, because ye are grown fat as the heifer at grass, and bellow as bulls;

Dan 4:30 The king spake, and said, Is not this great Babylon, that I have built for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power, and for the honour of my majesty?

But these two things shall come to thee in a moment in one day, the loss of children, and widowhood: they shall come upon thee in their perfection for the multitude of thy sorceries, and for the great abundance of thine enchantments.

She was the mistress of whoredom and witchcraft and now dooms day had arrived. The full measure had come upon her. Ruin had now arrived, the long list of her sorceries and enchantments had come before heavens court.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 51:18-20 There is none to guide her among all the sons whom she hath brought forth; neither is there any that taketh her by the hand of all the sons that she hath brought up. These two things are come unto thee; who shall be
sorry for thee? desolation, and destruction, and the famine, and the sword: by whom shall I comfort thee? Thy sons have fainted, they lie at the head of all the streets, as a wild bull in a net: they are full of the fury of the LORD, the rebuke of thy God.

Nah 3:4 Because of the multitude of the whoredoms of the wellfavoured harlot, the mistress of witchcrafts, that selleth nations through her whoredoms, and families through her witchcrafts.

10 For thou hast trusted in thy wickedness: thou hast said, None seeth me. Thy wisdom and thy knowledge, it hath perverted thee; and thou hast said in thine heart, I am, and none else beside me.

Secure in their wicked ways—thinking no one sees them—their magic craft had misled them—they bragged about their greatness and that they had no rival. They thought they were number one.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 59:4 None calleth for justice, nor any pleadeth for truth: they trust in vanity, and speak lies; they conceive mischief, and bring forth iniquity.

Psa 52:7 Lo, this is the man that made not God his strength; but trusted in the abundance of his riches, and strengthened himself in his wickedness.

Jer 23:24 Can any hide himself in secret places that I shall not see him? saith the LORD. Do not I fill heaven and earth? saith the LORD.

11 Therefore shall evil come upon thee; thou shalt not know from whence it riseth: and mischief shall fall upon thee; thou shalt not be able to put it off: and desolation shall come upon thee suddenly, which thou shalt not know.

Little did they know that God was at work in Persia—that disaster would come unexpectedly—when it comes you will have no magic spell to prevent it.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Jer 51:39-41 In their heat I will make their feasts, and I will make them
drunken, that they may rejoice, and sleep a perpetual sleep, and not wake, saith the LORD. I will bring them down like lambs to the slaughter, like rams with he goats. How is Sheshach taken! and how is the praise of the whole earth surprised! how is Babylon become an astonishment among the nations! Read: Rev 3:3

12Stand now with thine enchantments, and with the multitude of thy sorceries, wherein thou hast laboured from thy youth; if so be thou shalt be able to profit, if so be thou mayest prevail.

Enchantments, spells, sorceries, incantations and wizards—none of these will save you.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

2Th 2:9-12 Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness. Read: Isa 8:19; Isa 19:3

13Thou art wearied in the multitude of thy counsels. Let now the astrologers, the stargazers, the monthly prognosticators, stand up, and save thee from these things that shall come upon thee.

The fateful night arrived and she sent for her astrologers but they were frustrated. None of her soothsayers could read the handwriting on the wall.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Eze 24:12 She hath wearied herself with lies, and her great scum went not forth out of her: her scum shall be in the fire.

Isa 44:25 That frustrateth the tokens of the liars, and maketh diviners mad; that turneth wise men backward, and maketh their knowledge foolish; Read: Dan 5:7-8
Behold, they shall be as stubble; the fire shall burn them; they shall not deliver themselves from the power of the flame: there shall not be a coal to warm at, nor fire to sit before it.

God tells them that their magician buddies and sorcery friends can’t deliver them. They would not have a coal to warm themselves or a fire to sit around.

Cross Reference Scriptures that give counter-evidence to the text:

Eze 15:7 And I will set my face against them; they shall go out from one fire, and another fire shall devour them; and ye shall know that I am the LORD, when I set my face against them. Read: Mal 4:1; Jer 51:25-26

15 Thus shall they be unto thee with whom thou hast laboured, even thy merchants, from thy youth: they shall wander every one to his quarter; none shall save thee.

At the approach of Cyrus the merchants went to their shops but there was nothing they could do to save themselves. Babylon was replenished from all nations, by a concourse of people, whom Jeremiah calls “the mingled people.” All these, at the approach of Cyrus, sought to escape to their several countries.

Cross Reference Scriptures that confirm the text:

Jer 51:6-9 Flee out of the midst of Babylon, and deliver every man his soul: be not cut off in her iniquity; for this is the time of the LORD’S vengeance; he will render unto her a recompence. Babylon hath been a golden cup in the LORD’S hand, that made all the earth drunken: the nations have drunken of her wine; therefore the nations are mad. Babylon is suddenly fallen and destroyed: howl for her; take balm for her pain, if so be she may be healed. We would have healed Babylon, but she is not healed: forsake her, and let us go every one into his own country: for her judgment reacheth unto heaven, and is lifted up even to the skies. Read: Rev 18:11-19
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 48

Jacob who was surnamed Israel was boasting and proud that they lived in the Holy city and pretended that they were living by the commandments of God all the while it was nothing but a sham. God had declared things in advance but they were too thick-headed to understand. The fact that revelation of things to come was so well established that no one could claim that it was the result of an idol. God promises to do a new thing, something that had never before happened—he will call a heathen king to release the captives and rebuild Jerusalem and the temple. God reminds this bunch of idol addicts that they had been tried in the furnace of affliction—that they were the real cause of God’s name being blasphemed every day. Again he reminds them that he is sending his battle axe (Cyrus) to destroy the Chaldeans. God wants them to know who was “running the show”—the one and only God who made earth and sky. If their parents had obeyed they would have been as numerous as the sands of the seashore. Finally he urges them to flee Babylon with singing and shouting.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 48

1Hear ye this, O house of Jacob, which are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, which swear by the name of the LORD, and make mention of the God of Israel, but not in truth, nor in righteousness.

Jacobs name was changed to Israel and his roots came from Judah (out of the waters of Judah). These people did not fear God and did not walk after his commands or statutes. They swore by the name God but not in good faith—not in honesty or sincerity—they didn’t mean a word of it.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE AUTHORITATIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

**Gen 32:28** And he said, Thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but Israel: for as a prince hast thou power with God and with men, and hast prevailed.

**2Ki 17:34** Unto this day they do after the former manners: they fear not the LORD, neither do they after their statutes, or after their ordinances, or after the law and commandment which the LORD commanded the children of Jacob, whom he named Israel;

**Deu 6:13** Thou shalt fear the LORD thy God, and serve him, and shalt swear by his name.

*For they call themselves of the holy city, and stay themselves upon the God of Israel; The LORD of hosts is his name.*

They boasted of living in the Holy city and pretended to live by the laws of that God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

**Isa 52:1** Awake, awake; put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city: for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

**Psa 87:3** Glorious things are spoken of thee, O city of God. Selah.

*I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I shewed them; I did them suddenly, and they came to pass.*

God had declared things to happen in advance—sometimes things happened as soon as it was spoken. God has short term prophecies and long term prophecies.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**Isa 41:22** Let them bring them forth, and shew us what shall happen: let them
shew the former things, what they be, that we may consider them, and know the latter end of them; or declare us things for to come.

4Because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

Gods people of that generation had a face as hard as stone—stiff-necked (couldn’t turn and go the right way)—obstinate with a thick head (bird brained) hard heads and flint-faced.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 5:3 O LORD, are not thine eyes upon the truth? thou hast stricken them, but they have not grieved; thou hast consumed them, but they have refused to receive correction: they have made their faces harder than a rock; they have refused to return.

Eze 3:7 But the house of Israel will not hearken unto thee; for they will not hearken unto me: for all the house of Israel are impudent and hardhearted.

Exo 32:9 And the LORD said unto Moses, I have seen this people, and, behold, it is a stiffnecked people:

2Ki 17:14 Notwithstanding they would not hear, but hardened their necks, like to the neck of their fathers, that did not believe in the LORD their God.

5I have even from the beginning declared it to thee; before it came to pass I shewed it thee: lest thou shouldest say, Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image, hath commanded them.

God revealed things before hand and they were witnesses of it so that these bird brained folks couldn’t go around saying that this was a result of their devotion to some dumb idol.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Isa 48:3 I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went
forth out of my mouth, and I shewed them; I did them suddenly, and they came to pass.

**Isa 46:10** Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure: Read: **Jer 44:17-18**

6*Thou hast heard, see all this; and will not ye declare it? I have shewed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.*

He showed them—fulfilled before their very eyes—and they still didn’t get it.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Isa 43:8-10** Bring forth the blind people that have eyes, and the deaf that have ears. Let all the nations be gathered together, and let the people be assembled: who among them can declare this, and shew us former things? let them bring forth their witnesses, that they may be justified: or let them hear, and say, It is truth. Ye are my witnesses, saith the LORD, and my servant whom I have chosen: that ye may know and believe me, and understand that I am he: before me there was no God

7*They are created now, and not from the beginning; even before the day when thou hearest them not; lest thou shouldst say, Behold, I knew them.*

God says that he is going to do a new thing—not the same old thing or a variation of the same old thing. He wanted to make sure that they couldn’t say “I know all this.”

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 6:9-10** And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not. Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with
their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.

8Yea, thou hearest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time that thine ear was not opened: for I knew that thou wouldest deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

They never heard (their ears were closed)—you never knew (closed mind)—God knew the kind of people that he was dealing with. He knew they were transgressors from the womb. These people were not good listeners—they had a history of ignoring God. Their tract record proved them to be transgressors.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Exo 32:7-10 And the LORD said unto Moses, Go, get thee down; for thy people, which thou broughtest out of the land of Egypt, have corrupted themselves: They have turned aside quickly out of the way which I commanded them: they have made them a molten calf, and have worshipped it, and have sacrificed thereunto, and said, These be thy gods, O Israel, which have brought thee up out of the land of Egypt. And the LORD said unto Moses, I have seen this people, and, behold, it is a stiffnecked people: Now therefore let me alone, that my wrath may wax hot against them, and that I may consume them: and I will make of thee a great nation. Read: Isa 29:10-11; Hos 1:9

9For my name’s sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain for thee, that I cut thee not off.

For the sake of God’s name and his honor he held his anger and didn’t wash his hands of them or wipe them out.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT
ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 37:35 For I will defend this city to save it for mine own sake, and for my servant David’s sake.

Eze 36:22 Therefore say unto the house of Israel, Thus saith the Lord GOD;
I do not *this* for your sakes, O house of Israel, but for mine holy name’s sake, which ye have profaned among the heathen, whither ye went.

10 *Behold, I have refined thee, but not with silver; I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.*

I have tested you and tried you in the furnace of affliction. God says it looks like I am playing second fiddle to a bunch of idol-god addicts.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Job 23:10** But he knoweth the way that I take: *when* he hath tried me, I shall come forth as gold.

**Mal 3:2-3** But who may abide the day of his coming? and who shall stand when he appeareth? for he *is* like a refiner’s fire, and like fullers’ soap: And he shall sit *as* a refiner and purifier of silver: and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the LORD an offering in righteousness.

11 *For mine own sake, even for mine own sake, will I do it: for how should my name be polluted? and I will not give my glory unto another.*

If God permitted the heathen to destroy Jacob then his name would be forever blasphemed but God was not about to give his glory to the idol worshipers.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

**Isa 52:5** Now therefore, what have I here, saith the LORD, that my people is taken away for nought? they that rule over them make them to howl, saith the LORD; and my name continually every day *is* blasphemed.

**Eze 20:39** As for you, O house of Israel, thus saith the Lord GOD; Go ye, serve ye every one his idols, and hereafter *also*, if ye will not hearken unto me: but pollute ye my holy name no more with your gifts, and with your idols.

12 *Hearken unto me, O Jacob and Israel, my called; I am he; I am the first, I also am the last.*
I am still the same God—first, last, and always.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

**Isa 55:3** Incline your ear, and come unto me: hear, and your soul shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David.

> Mine hand also hath laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens: when I call unto them, they stand up together.

God laid the foundation of the earth and when he formed the expanse of the skies he summoned them to their proper place.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

**Isa 42:5** Thus saith God the LORD, he that created the heavens, and tretched them out; he that spread forth the earth, and that which cometh out of it; he that giveth breath unto the people upon it, and spirit to them that walk therein:

> All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; which among them hath declared these things? The LORD hath loved him: he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall be on the Chaldeans.

God is going to send his battle axe to do his pleasure on Babylon—God’s arm will be against the Babylonians.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

**Isa 45:20-21** Assemble yourselves and come; draw near together, ye that are escaped of the nations: they have no knowledge that set up the wood of their graven image, and pray unto a god that cannot save. Tell ye, and bring them near; yea, let them take counsel together: who hath declared this from ancient time? who hath told it from that time? have not I the LORD? and there is no God else beside me; a just God and a Saviour; there is none beside me.
15I, even I, have spoken; yea, I have called him: I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

He had called Cyrus to do his work against the people who blasphemed his name every day.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Jos 1:8 This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but hou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success.

16Come ye near unto me, hear ye this; I have not spoken in secret from the beginning; from the time that it was, there am I: and now the Lord GOD, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

The books of the law were replete with scriptures that foretold what would take place if Israel turned from the LORD to idols—this had not been kept secret but was on the lips of the prophets—so the decision to take down Babylon, free the exiles, rebuild Jerusalem and the temple was not a spur of the moment decision.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 48:3-6 I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I shewed them; I did them suddenly, and they came to pass. Because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass I have even from the beginning declared it to thee; before it came to pass I shewed it thee: lest thou shouldst say, Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image, hath commanded them. Thou hast heard, see all this; and will not ye declare it? I have shewed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.

17Thus saith the LORD, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I am the LORD thy God which teacheth thee to profit, which leadeth thee by the way that thou shouldst go.
The majestic one who takes up your cause will guide you in the way you should go—he would lead them to springs of water.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 43:14** Thus saith the LORD, your redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; For your sake I have sent to Babylon, and have brought down all their nobles, and the Chaldeans, whose cry is in the ships.

**Deu 8:17-18** And thou say in thine heart, My power and the might of mine hand hath gotten me this wealth. But thou shalt remember the LORD thy God: for it is he that giveth thee power to get wealth, that he may establish his covenant which he sware unto thy fathers, as it is this day.

18*O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments! then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea:*

If they had kept the commandments then the blessings of Deut. 28 would have come upon them—their children would have been blessed and they would have had the finest of everything—abundance of food and honey out of the rock. Prosperity would have flowed like a river.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Psa 81:13-16** Oh that my people had hearkened unto me, and Israel had walked in my ways! I should soon have subdued their enemies, and turned my hand against their adversaries. The haters of the LORD should have submitted themselves unto him: but their time should have endured for ever. He should have fed them also with the finest of the wheat: and with honey out of the rock should I have satisfied thee.

19*Thy seed also had been as the sand, and the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.*

Their descendants would have been like the sand on the seashore—but their rebellion led to their getting cut off head and tail, branch and rush in one day.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE AUTHORITIVE DATA TO THE TEXT:

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

20Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter it even to the end of the earth; say ye, The LORD hath redeemed his servant Jacob.

They were to flee Babylon with a triumphant voice—with a shout of joy—with a loud song “the LORD has redeemed his servant Jacob!”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Jer 50:8 Remove out of the midst of Babylon, and go forth out of the land of the Chaldeans, and be as the he goats before the flocks.

Zec 2:6-7 Ho, ho, come forth, and flee from the land of the north, saith the LORD: for I have spread you abroad as the four winds of the heaven, saith the LORD. Deliver thyself, O Zion, that dwellest with the daughter of Babylon.

21And they thirsted not when he led them through the deserts: he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them: he clave the rock also, and the waters gushed out.

Like the people who left Egypt with Moses these people will experience the leadership of God through deserts and across mountains.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 30:25 And there shall be upon every high mountain, and upon every high hill, rivers and streams of waters in the day of the great slaughter, when the towers fall.

22There is no peace, saith the LORD, unto the wicked.
The wicked have no future—it is all hidden from them—when sudden calamities come crushing down on them there is no divine help.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Job 15:20-23 The wicked man travaileth with pain all his days, and the number of years is hidden to the oppressor. A dreadful sound is in his ears: in prosperity the destroyer shall come upon him. He believeth not that he shall return out of darkness, and he is waited for of the sword. He wandereth abroad for bread, saying, Where is it? he knoweth that the day of darkness is ready at his hand.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 49

God had called Cyrus before his birth and made him sharp as a sword. His words penetrated from mainland to islands. His commission was to restore the exile—yes even more he would be a light to the nations of the world. He tells him that kings will stand at attention when he passes by. God says “I am sending you to re-establish Israel and bring the prisoners out of the dungeons. God says he will provide the pasture for his sheep, water for the thirsty, level the road ahead and gather the remnant from the north, west, and south. East was not mentioned because they were in the East. The prisoners were told to shout and sing and that even the mountains would reverberate with songs. God lets them know that he had not deserted or forgotten them—he had their name embossed on his hand and a picture of Zion’s walls in ruins ever before him. God says that even the abandoned land will again be fertile and soon overcrowded as they repopulate. Finally he pictures for them kings and queens returning the orphaned children—tyrants are tamed and captives freed.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 49

1Listen, O isles, unto me; and hearken, ye people, from far; The LORD hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

The coastlands and islands were to pay heed to this message. God had called Cyrus from before he was born and had given him a name. Notice that in verse 5 the servant has a mission for Israel.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Isa 60:9 Surely the isles shall wait for me, and the ships of Tarshish first,
to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them, unto the name of the LORD thy God, and to the Holy One of Israel, because he hath glorified thee.

**Isa 66:19** And I will set a sign among them, and I will send those that escape of them unto the nations, to Tarshish, Pul, and Lud, that draw the bow, to Tubal, and Javan, to the isles afar off, that have not heard my fame, neither have seen my glory; and they shall declare my glory among the Gentiles.

And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;

God used Cyrus’s words like a sharp sword to slay people. The word of God is sharper than a two edged blade. His speech would cut and penetrate. He made him like an arrow with a polished shaft. The doctrine of the gospel pierced the hearts of its hearers, “bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ.”

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Isa 50:4** The Lord GOD hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season to him that is weary: he wakeneth morning by morning, he wakeneth mine ear to hear as the learned.

**Hos 6:5** Therefore have I hewed them by the prophets; I have slain them by the words of my mouth: and thy judgments are as the light that goeth forth.

And said unto me, Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

Israel was God’s servant and was destined to bring glory to God.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 43:21** This people have I formed for myself; they shall shew forth my praise.

**Isa 53:10** Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him; he hath put him to grief:
when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand.

4Then I said, I have laboured in vain, I have spent my strength for nought, and in vain: yet surely my judgment is with the LORD, and my work with my God.

Israel had labored in vain—spent their strength on idols and heathen religion so their judgment was of the LORD.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 65:2 I have spread out my hands all the day unto a rebellious people, which walketh in a way that was not good, after their own thoughts;

Mat 23:37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!

5And now, saith the LORD that formed me from the womb to be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him, Though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the LORD, and my God shall be my strength.

The servant was to gather the outcast of Jacob and to bring them back in the fold.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 56:8 The Lord GOD which gathereth the outcasts of Israel saith, Yet will I gather others to him, beside those that are gathered unto him.

Rom 15:8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers:

6And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also
Lewis P. Hussell

give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

This servant was to raise up the tribes and restore the Jews to their homeland and to enlighten the Gentiles.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

 Isa 42:6 I the LORD have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles;

 Isa 11:10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

 Luk 2:32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

7Thus saith the LORD, the Redeemer of Israel, and his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nation abhorreth, to a servant of rulers, Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the LORD that is faithful, and the Holy One of Israel, and he shall choose thee.

When he appeared kings got to their feet and fell in homage to him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

 Isa 60:3 And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising.

 Psa 72:10-11 The kings of Tarshish and of the isles shall bring presents: the kings of Sheba and Seba shall offer gifts. Yea, all kings shall fall down before him: all nations shall serve him.

8Thus saith the LORD, In an acceptable time have I heard thee, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee: and I will preserve thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;
At the right time I will help you and will preserve you to bring my people home and inherit the desolate heritages.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

**Psa 69:13** But as for me, my prayer is unto thee, O LORD, in an acceptable time: O God, in the multitude of thy mercy hear me, in the truth of thy salvation. Read: **2Co 6:2; 2Co 6:2; Heb 8:6; Heb 12:24**

9That thou mayest say to the prisoners, Go forth; to them that are in darkness, Shew yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.

The jail bars were broken and the prisoners were freed to return to their home place—the Gentile nations supplied them with food as they crossed the mountains.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

**Isa 61:1** The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me; because the LORD hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound; Read: **Psa 107:10-16; Col 1:13; 1Pe 2:9**

10They shall not hunger nor thirst; neither shall the heat nor sun smite them: for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

This is a poetical way of saying that all their food supplies would be taken care of as they made the long journey to the homeland.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

**Mat 5:6** Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled. Read: **Joh 6:35; Rev 7:16-17; Psa 121:5-6; Eze 34:23**
11 And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.

They will find shade from the sun and shelter from the cold—he sent road workers’ ahead to prepare for the wagons and pack animals to pass easily.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 35:8-10 And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein. No lion shall be there, nor any ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk there: And the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away. Read: Luk 3:4-6

12 Behold, these shall come from far: and, lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

The exiles flowed in from the four corners—north, south, east and west.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 11:10-11 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious. And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea. Read: Isa 66:12; Mic 4:2

13 Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; and break forth into singing, O mountains: for the LORD hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.

They left singing and shouting and the hills and mountains reverberated with the songs.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 52:9 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem: for the LORD hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem. For ye shall go out with joy, and be led forth with peace: the mountains and the hills shall break forth before you into singing, and all the trees of the field shall clap their hands. Read: Rev 5:8-12

14 But Zion said, The LORD hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me.

But Zion said, “We have been forgotten.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:


15 Can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee.

Under normal circumstances a woman will not forget her baby but if she does the LORD will never forget you.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Mal 3:17 And they shall be mine, saith the LORD of hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them, as a man spareth his own son that serveth him. Read: Deu 28:56-57

16 Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.

God says I can’t possibly forget you—your name is on my hands and my eyes constantly survey your walls.
**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**Exo 13:9** And it shall be for a sign unto thee upon thine hand, and for a memorial between thine eyes, that the LORD’S law may be in thy mouth: for with a strong hand hath the LORD brought thee out of Egypt.

**Isa 54:12** And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

17 _Thy children shall make haste; thy destroyers and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee._

They were working fast—the builders were more numerous than the demolition crews.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**Ezr 1:5** Then rose up the chief of the fathers of Judah and Benjamin, and the priests, and the Levites, with all _them_ whose spirit God had raised, to go up to build the house of the LORD which _is_ in Jerusalem.

**Neh 2:17** Then said I unto them, Ye see the distress that we _are_ in, how Jerusalem _lieth_ waste, and the gates thereof are burned with fire: come, and let us build up the wall of Jerusalem, that we be no more a reproach.

18 _Lift up thine eyes round about, and behold: all these gather themselves together, and come to thee. As I live, saith the LORD, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on thee, as a bride doeth._

Take a look—they are coming to you from all quarters.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 60:4** Lift up thine eyes round about, and see: all they gather themselves together, they come to thee: thy sons shall come from far, and thy daughters shall be nursed at _thy_ side. Read: **Isa 43:5-6**

526
19 For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants, and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.

The land that had lain 70 years as a waste land was filling up with more people than they could handle.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Eze 36:9-11 For, behold, I am for you, and I will turn unto you, and ye shall be tilled and sown: And I will multiply men upon you, all the house of Israel, even all of it: and the cities shall be inhabited, and the wastes shall be builded: And I will multiply upon you man and beast; and they shall increase and bring fruit: and I will settle you after your old estates, and will do better unto you than at your beginnings: and ye shall know that I am the LORD.

20 The children which thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the other, shall say again in thine ears, The place is too strait for me: give place to me that I may dwell.

The generations born in exile and lost in family separations were being reunited and were now saying we need more room.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 60:4 Lift up thine eyes round about, and see: all they gather themselves together, they come to thee: thy sons shall come from far, and thy daughters shall be nursed at thy side.

2Ki 6:1 And the sons of the prophets said unto Elisha, Behold now, the place where we dwell with thee is too strait for us.

21 Then shalt thou say in thine heart, Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? and who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where had they been?

Where did all these people come from? Families had been displaced and
sent to foreign lands and now were coming home—they hadn’t seen their grandchildren and great grandchildren and didn’t know if they were alive.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Jer 31:15-17 Thus saith the LORD; A voice was heard in Ramah, lamentation, and bitter weeping; Rahel weeping for her children refused to be comforted for her children, because they were not. Thus saith the LORD; Refrain thy voice from weeping, and thine eyes from tears: for thy work shall be rewarded, saith the LORD; and they shall come again from the land of the enemy. And there is hope in thine end, saith the LORD, that thy children shall come again to their own border. Read: Isa 62:4

22 Thus saith the Lord GOD, Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

Here they come with babies in their arms—little girls on their shoulders—boys walking beside their previous captors—nurse maids and baby sitters bringing the exile children to Zion.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 54:3-8 For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left; and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles, and make the desolate cities to be inhabited. Fear not; for thou shalt not be ashamed: neither be thou confounded; for thou shalt not be put to shame: for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more. For thy Maker is thine husband; the LORD of hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The God of the whole earth shall he be called. For the LORD hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God. For a small moment have I forsaken thee; but with great mercies will I gather thee. In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment; but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the LORD thy Redeemer.

23 And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers: they shall bow down to thee with their face toward the earth,
and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the LORD: for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

The high and mighty will offer to do your work—you will leave them in the dust”—when this takes place you will know I am God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 60:3-5 And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising. Lift up thine eyes round about, and see: all they gather themselves together, they come to thee: thy sons shall come from far, and thy daughters shall be nursed at thy side. Then thou shalt see, and flow together, and thine heart shall fear, and be enlarged; because the abundance of the sea shall be converted unto thee, the forces of the Gentiles shall come unto thee. Read Isa 60:6-11

24Shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

Try demanding a tyrant to give up his captives.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Psa 124:6-7 Blessed be the LORD, who hath not given us as a prey to their teeth. Our soul is escaped as a bird out of the snare of the fowlers: the snare is broken, and we are escaped.

25But thus saith the LORD, Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered: for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

No matter how terrible the people are that are holding your seed. I (God) will fight the battle for you and save your children.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 52:2-5 Shake thyself from the dust; arise, and sit down, O Jerusalem: loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion. For
thus saith the LORD, Ye have sold yourselves for nought; and ye shall be redeemed without money. For thus saith the Lord GOD, My people went down aforetime into Egypt to sojourn there; and the Assyrian oppressed them without cause. Now therefore, what have I here, saith the LORD, that my people is taken away for nought? they that rule over them make them to howl, saith the LORD; and my name continually every day is blasphemed.

26And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood, as with sweet wine: and all flesh shall know that I the LORD am thy Saviour and thy Redeemer, the mighty One of Jacob.

Your enemies will turn on each other in riots and civil wars—they will be drunk on their own blood—and all the world will know that I am the redeemer of Jacob.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Rev 16:6 For they have shed the blood of saints and prophets, and thou hast given them blood to drink; for they are worthy. Read: Jer 51:35-36
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 50

God had not divorced Israel, she had left God by her misconduct. God had not sold Israel, she sold herself to sin. God had called but there was no answer—God lets them know that his hand was not too short to reach down and release them—He tells them that he is able to turn out the lights and pull a dark drape over the skies. God’s servant never flinched at the whipping post—they yanked out his heart and spit in his face, he was untouched by their insults because God was with him. He set his face like a flint and confronted his enemies. All of Gods enemies will be like moth eaten garments.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 50

‘Thus saith the LORD, Where is the bill of your mother’s divorcement, whom I have put away? or which of my creditors is it to whom I have sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.

Is your mother gone because I divorced her? Have you seen a copy of the divorce papers? It was your mother’s misconduct that put her away. When did I sell you to some creditor? Have you seen the bill of sale? No, you sold yourself by your wrong doing. Husbands often sent bills of divorcement to their wives on slight occasions; and fathers, oppressed with debt, sold their children till the year of release. But this, saith God, cannot be my case: I am not governed by any such motives, nor am I urged by any such necessity. Your captivity and afflictions are the fruits of your own folly and wickedness.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Deu 24:1-4 When a man hath taken a wife, and married her, and it come
to pass that she find no favour in his eyes, because he hath found some uncleanness in her: then let him write her a bill of divorcement, and give it in her hand, and send her out of his house. And when she is departed out of his house, she may go and be another man's wife. And if the latter husband hate her, and write her a bill of divorcement, and giveth it in her hand, and sendeth her out of his house; or if the latter husband die, which took her to be his wife; Her former husband, which sent her away, may not take her again to be his wife, after that she is defiled; for that is abomination before the LORD: and thou shalt not cause the land to sin, which the LORD thy God giveth thee for an inheritance. Read: Jer 3:8; 2Ki 4:1; Neh 5:5; Mat 18:25

2 Wherefore, when I came, was there no man? when I called, was there none to answer? Is my hand shortened at all, that it cannot redeem? or have I no power to deliver? behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make the rivers a wilderness: their fish stinketh, because there is no water, and dieth for thirst.

When I called no answer came—Do you think my hand is too weak to redeem you from captivity? Think again, I can dry up the sea and make rivers dry beds.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 66:4 I also will choose their delusions, and will bring their fears upon them; because when I called, none did answer; when I spake, they did not hear: but they did evil before mine eyes, and chose that in which I delighted not. Read: Exo 14:29; Psa 107:33

3 I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

No, I am as powerful as ever. I can turn the lights out in the heavens and close the drapes.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Exo 10:21 And the LORD said unto Moses, Stretch out thine hand toward heaven, that there may be darkness over the land of Egypt, even darkness which may be felt.
Rev 6:12 And I beheld when he had opened the sixth seal, and, lo, there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became as blood;

4The Lord GOD hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season to him that is weary: he wakeneth morning by morning, he wakeneth mine ear to hear as the learned.

A word fitly spoken is like apples of gold in a silver basket. God had endowed the prophet with timely words to encourage tired people—he wakes up early in the morning alert and responsive to the will of God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Exo 4:11-12 And the LORD said unto him, Who hath made man's mouth? or who maketh the dumb, or deaf, or the seeing, or the blind? have not I the LORD? Now therefore go, and I will be with thy mouth, and teach thee what thou shalt say. Read: Luk 21:15 Joh 7:15-17

5The Lord GOD hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.

When God spoke, he never turned a deaf ear—he didn’t stick his head in the sand.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Isa 48:8 Yea, thou hearest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time that thine ear was not opened: for I knew that thou wouldest deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

6I gave my back to the smiters, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair: I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

He followed orders and removed his shirt and bent down to the whipping post—they pulled out my beard by the roots and spit in my face. The eastern people always held the beard in great veneration; and to pluck a man’s beard is one of the grossest indignities that can be offered.
Lewis P. Hussell

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Lam 3:30 He giveth his cheek to him that smiteth him: he is filled full with reproach.

Mic 5:1 Now gather thyself in troops, O daughter of troops: he hath laid siege against us: they shall smite the judge of Israel with a rod upon the cheek. Read: Mat 5:39; Mar 14:65; Luk 22:63-64

“For the Lord GOD will help me; therefore shall I not be confounded: therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

Because God stood by him he was not confounded—he was untouched by their insults—sticks and stones may break his bones but words will never hurt him—he was not dismayed or ashamed—he set his face like flint and never once weakened from his determination.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 1:18-19 For, behold, I have made thee this day a defenced city, and an iron pillar, and brasen walls against the whole land, against the kings of Judah, against the princes thereof, against the priests thereof, and against the people of the land. And they shall fight against thee; but they shall not prevail against thee; for I am with thee, saith the LORD, to deliver thee.

Eze 3:8-9 Behold, I have made thy face strong against their faces, and thy forehead strong against their foreheads. As an adamant harder than flint have I made thy forehead: fear them not, neither be dismayed at their looks, though they be a rebellious house.

“He is near that justifieth me; who will contend with me? let us stand together: who is mine adversary? let him come near to me.

God the vindicator was standing by for him. Let us stand together and confront one another—let my opponent come forward and state his case.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Rom 8:32-34 He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things? Who shall lay any thing to the charge of God’s elect? It is God that justifieth. Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.

9 Behold, the Lord GOD will help me; who is he that shall condemn me? lo, they all shall wax old as a garment; the moth shall eat them up.

The LORD was standing by him like the day that Stephen was stoned—all his enemies would be like a moth eaten garment.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Isa 51:6-8 Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath: for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment, and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner: but my salvation shall be for ever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished. Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart is my law; fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings. For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool: but my righteousness shall be for ever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

10 Who is among you that feareth the LORD, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness, and hath no light? let him trust in the name of the LORD, and stay upon his God.

If a person fears the LORD and obeys the word of his servant even though he has no light to walk in let him trust God and lean upon him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Psa 25:12 What man is he that feareth the LORD? him shall he teach in the way that he shall choose.
Lewis P. Hussell

**Isa 9:2** The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

**Mic 7:7-9** Therefore I will look unto the LORD; I will wait for the God of my salvation: my God will hear me. Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy: when I fall, I shall arise; when I sit in darkness, the LORD shall be a light unto me. I will bear the indignation of the LORD, because I have sinned against him, until he plead my cause, and execute judgment for me: he will bring me forth to the light, and I shall behold his righteousness.

11Behold, all ye that kindle a fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks: walk in the light of your fire, and in the sparks that ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand; ye shall lie down in sorrow.

Many are walking in the light of their own fire and warm themselves from its flames—these people never rely upon the hand of God and so they live among sorrows.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Joh 9:39** And Jesus said, For judgment I am come into this world, that they which see not might see; and that they which see might be made blind.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 51

They were quarried from the Rock—God. They are told to reflect upon their roots—Abraham and Sarah—no children but God made their offspring as numerous as the stars in multitude. God will once again bless Zion—this forsaken place will look like the garden of Eden, and as a bonus joy and gladness and singing and shouting will again spring from these ashes. His word will flow like a river—salvation will be on schedule and islands will be waiting for his justice. The new order will be like the discarding of old moth eaten garments. They were to hold the teachings of the LORD inside them and not be afraid. They were to awake and put on the strength of the LORD because they were serving a God strong enough to destroy the crocodile of the Nile. Happy day! They have arrived home from exile, sorrow and sadness have vanished like smoke. He further assures them that those in jail and prisons would be freed and not be left behind to starve. The captives had been smitten with madness and astonishment of heart—God gave them to drink the wine of his fury. They lived for 70 years on this wine. As the time of the exile comes to an end the cup of fury is transferred from the exiles to the captors.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 51

1Hearken to me, ye that follow after righteousness, ye that seek the LORD: look unto the rock whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit whence ye are digged.

They are to look to the rock from where they had been quarried.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 46:3-4 Hearken unto me, O house of Jacob, and all the remnant of the
Lewis P. Hussell

house of Israel, which are borne by me from the belly, which are carried from the womb: And even to your old age I am he; and even to hoar hairs will I carry you: I have made, and I will bear; even I will carry, and will deliver you.
Read: Pro 15:9; Mat 5:6

2Look unto Abraham your father, and unto Sarah that bare you: for I called him alone, and blessed him, and increased him.

They were to think about their ancestors—Abraham and Sarah—once Abraham was just one, he and Sarah had no children when God called him, but God blessed him and made him into a multitude.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Gen 12:1-3 Now the LORD had said unto Abram, Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house, unto a land that I will shew thee: And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing: And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed.

3For the LORD shall comfort Zion: he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the LORD; joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving, and the voice of melody.

God will once again comfort Zion. All her piled up ruins and rubble will look like Eden—her deserted places will look like a lush garden—Joy and gladness, thanksgiving and singing and melody will be found in Zion. He will give them beauty where now is ashes and joy where now is depression.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 61:1-5 The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me; because the LORD hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound To proclaim the acceptable year of the LORD, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn; To appoint
unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the LORD, that he might be glorified. And they shall build the old wastes, they shall raise up the former desolations, and they shall repair the waste cities, the desolations of many generations. And strangers shall stand and feed your flocks, and the sons of the alien shall be your plowmen and your vinedressers.

4 Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation: for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light of the people.

When God brings deliverance to Zion his revelation will flow like a river and judgment will rest upon them and his decisions will light up the world.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 2:3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem. Read: Rom 8:2-4

5 My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arms shall judge the people; the isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.

Gods salvation arrived just on schedule—far away islands were waiting for his justice—his arm would bring uprightness.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 60:9 Surely the isles shall wait for me, and the ships of Tarshish first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them, unto the name of the LORD thy God, and to the Holy One of Israel, because he hath glorified thee. Read Rom 1:16-17

6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath: for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like
a garment, and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner: but my salvation shall be for ever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

When God sets things aright he compares it to discarding your old work clothes—the skies above vanishing like smoke—but his righteousness lasting forever. God setting-things-right will never be obsolete.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

**Deu 4:19**  And lest thou lift up thine eyes unto heaven, and when thou seest the sun, and the moon, and the stars, even all the host of heaven, shouldest be driven to worship them, and serve them, which the LORD thy God hath divided unto all nations under the whole heaven. Read: **Isa 34:4**

7Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart is my law; fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

If you hold the teachings of the LORD inside you—don’t be afraid of scorn, reviling, taunts or insults—don’t let it get you down—do not be afraid of their words, nor dismayed at their looks.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

**Psa 37:31**  The law of his God is in his heart; none of his steps shall slide.

**Eze 2:6**  And thou, son of man, be not afraid of them, neither be afraid of their words, though briers and thorns be with thee, and thou dost dwell among scorpions: be not afraid of their words, nor be dismayed at their looks, though they be a rebellious house.

8For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool: but my righteousness shall be for ever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

They will be gone like a moth eaten garment is discarded or like a termite eaten board is burned. Gods triumph and saving power is to all generations.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

**Job 13:28** And he, as a rotten thing, consumeth, as a garment that is moth eaten. Read: **Isa 46:13; Luk 1:50**

"Awake, awake, put on strength, O arm of the LORD; awake, as in the ancient days, in the generations of old. Art thou not it that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?"

They are told to awake and put on strength—didn’t you once destroy Rahab (Egypt) and didn’t you once pierce the dragon (symbol of Egypt). Pharaoh was the crocodile of the Nile.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Eze 29:3** Speak, and say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I am against thee, Pharaoh king of Egypt, the great dragon that lieth in the midst of his rivers, which hath said, My river is mine own, and I have made it for myself. Read: **Isa 59:17; Isa 27:1**

"Art thou not it which hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?"

Wasn’t it the God who lives within you—who guides you, that turned the red sea into a highway for the passing of the redeemed?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 63:11** Then he remembered the days of old, Moses, and his people, saying, Where is he that brought them up out of the sea with the shepherd of his flock? where is he that put his holy Spirit within him?

"Therefore the redeemed of the LORD shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy shall be upon their head: they shall obtain gladness and joy; and sorrow and mourning shall flee away."

Happy day! The redeemed have arrived home from Babylon and are filled
with joy and singing. Sorrow and sighing have fled away they are crowned with gladness.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Jer 31:11-12** For the LORD hath redeemed Jacob, and ransomed him from the hand of him that was stronger than he. Therefore they shall come and sing in the height of Zion, and shall flow together to the goodness of the LORD, for wheat, and for wine, and for oil, and for the young of the flock and of the herd: and their soul shall be as a watered garden; and they shall not sorrow any more at all.

**12 I, even I, am he that comforteth you: who art thou, that thou shouldest be afraid of a man that shall die, and of the son of man which shall be made as grass;**

I am your consoler, how can you be afraid of mortal man who is like grass?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

**Isa 57:15** For thus saith the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity, whose name is Holy; I dwell in the high and holy place, with him also that is of a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite ones.

**13 And forgettest the LORD thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth; and hast feared continually every day because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? and where is the fury of the oppressor?**

They had forgotten God their maker—the one who spread the stars across the skies—they feared the oppressor every day as if he was going to destroy them. They shook like a leaf in the wind at the tantrums of this tyrant.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**Deu 32:18** Of the Rock that begat thee thou art unmindful, and hast forgotten God that formed thee. Read: **Isa 8:12-13**
The captive exile hasteneth that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

These captives are going to be set free and will not be left behind to starve or rot in some prison.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Zec 9:11 As for thee also, by the blood of thy covenant I have sent forth thy prisoners out of the pit wherein is no water. Read: Lam 3:53-54; Isa 52:2

But I am the LORD thy God, that divided the sea, whose waves roared: The LORD of hosts is his name.

More assurance that the LORD of hosts who divided the Red Sea will come to their rescue.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Jer 31:35 Thus saith the LORD, which giveth the sun for a light by day, and the ordinances of the moon and of the stars for a light by night, which divideth the sea when the waves thereof roar; The LORD of hosts is his name:

And I have put my words in thy mouth, and I have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens, and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion, Thou art my people.

God put his word in their mouth—protected them from their enemy—in the shadow of his hand (you have to be close to be in the presence of his shadow.)

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 48:13 Mine hand also hath laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens: when I call unto them, they stand up together. Read: Isa 59:21
Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the LORD the cup of his fury; thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling, and wrung them out.

God had smitten them with madness, blindness, and astonishment of heart—they had drunk the dregs of trembling. They had not only drunk the cup but had wrung every last drop from the dregs in the bottom of the cup. They had been drinking this chalice of stupor for 70 years.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Psalm 60:3 Thou hast shewed thy people hard things: thou hast made us to drink the wine of astonishment. Read Psalm 75:10; Job 8:20

There is none to guide her among all the sons whom she hath brought forth; neither is there any that taketh her by the hand of all the sons that she hath brought up.

They had a double dose of trouble—no one to guide (give her advice) none to take her by the hand (no living children to come and assist her).

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isaiah 3:4-5 And I will give children to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them. And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbour: the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honourable.

These two things are come unto thee; who shall be sorry for thee? desolation, and destruction, and the famine, and the sword: by whom shall I comfort thee?

Double calamities—famine, desolation, destruction, and sword.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Ezekiel 14:21 For thus saith the Lord GOD; How much more when I send my
four sore judgments upon Jerusalem, the sword, and the famine, and the noisome beast, and the pestilence, to cut off from it man and beast?

20 *Thy sons have fainted, they lie at the head of all the streets, as a wild bull in a net: they are full of the fury of the LORD, the rebuke of thy God.*

Everyone is fainthearted—drunk and passed out on the street—the LORD has poured out his fury on them.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

**Lam 1:15** The Lord hath trodden under foot all my mighty men in the midst of me: he hath called an assembly against me to crush my young men: the Lord hath trodden the virgin, the daughter of Judah, as in a winepress. Read: **Jer 14:18**

21 *Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, but not with wine:*

They are in a stupor but it’s not from strong drink—it is from the fury of the LORD. Read Deut. 28.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:**

**Deu 28:65** And among these nations shalt thou find no ease, neither shall the sole of thy foot have rest: but the LORD shall give thee there a trembling heart, and failing of eyes, and sorrow of mind:

22 *Thus saith thy Lord the LORD, and thy God that pleadeth the cause of his people, Behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, even the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again:*

Enough is enough—God says he has taken the dregs of the cup of fury from them.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:**

**1Sa 25:39** And when David heard that Nabal was dead, he said, Blessed be
the LORD, that hath pleaded the cause of my reproach from the hand of Nabal, and hath kept his servant from evil: for the LORD hath returned the wickedness of Nabal upon his own head. And David sent and communed with Abigail, to take her to him to wife. Read: **Eze 39:29**

\[23\text{But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; which have said to thy soul, Bow down, that we may go over: and thou hast laid thy body as the ground, and as the street, to them that went over.}\]

God delivers his people from the aforementioned troubles and transfers the same troubles on those who afflicted them. They made you lay on the ground and they walked and drove their carts over you—now the tables have turned.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:**

**Pro 11:8** The righteous is delivered out of trouble, and the wicked cometh in his stead. Read: **Jer 25:17-29**
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 52

God tells the exiles to put on the garment of praise and strength—remove the fetters and the metal band that encircled the neck—they were no longer prisoners. They had sold themselves and now God was reclaiming them without paying anything. When deliverance came God put his spirit in them and brought them home with super divine power. Heralds came across mountains and stopped at every village to announce the news of Cyrus’s victory over Babylon and all the prisoners released. God rolled up his sleeves and flexed his muscles and showed them who ruled heaven and earth. Finally God says get out of Babylon—I will go with you as your guide and rear guard. Verses 13, 14, and 15 belong with the next chapter.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 52

Awake, awake; put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city: for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

They were to clothe themselves with the garment of strength and praise. No more were the heathen and pagans to come into Jerusalem and destroy the city and its temple.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Isa 61:10 I will greatly rejoice in the LORD, my soul shall be joyful in my God; for he hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels. Read: Isa 61:3; Eph 4:24
2Shake thyself from the dust; arise, and sit down, O Jerusalem: loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

They were to remove the fetters, and the band that encircled the neck that had a ring attached, so that a chain could pass through the eye-ring and allow their captive to chain them up like fastening a dog. When moving slaves from one place to another, they would chain them all together so that none could escape.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 51:14 The captive exile hasteneth that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail. Read: Isa 51:23; Isa 61:1

3For thus saith the LORD, Ye have sold yourselves for nought; and ye shall be redeemed without money.

They had sold themselves for nothing and now they will be redeemed without price.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 45:13 I have raised him up in righteousness, and I will direct all his ways: he shall build my city, and he shall let go my captives, not for price nor reward, saith the LORD of hosts. Read: 1Pe 1:18-19

4For thus saith the Lord GOD, My people went down aforetime into Egypt to sojourn there; and the Assyrian oppressed them without cause.

Both Egypt and Assyria had oppressed God’s people.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 14:25 That I will break the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.
5Now therefore, what have I here, saith the LORD, that my people is taken away for nought? they that rule over them make them to howl, saith the LORD; and my name continually every day is blasphemed.

Now they are chained together and marched off to Babylon and these tyrants are terrorizing them; and every day they mock and scoff at the God that Israel serves.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Jer 50:17 Israel is a scattered sheep; the lions have driven him away: first the king of Assyria hath devoured him; and last this Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon hath broken his bones. Read: Psa 74:18

6Therefore my people shall know my name: therefore they shall know in that day that I am he that doth speak: behold, it is I.

When deliverance came and God had put his spirit in them and brought them out of the prisons and restored them to their heritage they knew it was the super power of God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Eze 37:13-14 And ye shall know that I am the LORD, when I have opened your graves, O my people, and brought you up out of your graves, And shall put my spirit in you, and ye shall live, and I shall place you in your own land: then shall ye know that I the LORD have spoken it, and performed it, saith the LORD.

7How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth!

Finally a news herald came across the mountains and at every village announced the release and return of the exiles.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Nah 1:15 Behold upon the mountains the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace! O Judah, keep thy solemn feasts, perform thy vows: for the wicked shall no more pass through thee; he is utterly cut off. Read: Act 10:36-38

8Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing: for they shall see eye to eye, when the LORD shall bring again Zion.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Eze 3:17 Son of man, I have made thee a watchman unto the house of Israel: therefore hear the word at my mouth, and give them warning from me. Read: Isa 40:9

9Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem: for the LORD hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

Guards in the towers on top of the walls will join in shouting to the townspeople that Babylon had fallen. The eternal has freed his people and now the most remote villages have heard the news.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Isa 14:7 The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet: they break forth into singing. Read: Isa 44:26

10The LORD hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

God has rolled up his sleeves and shown his muscle as he brings Babylon down and returns the exiles.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Luk 3:6 And all flesh shall see the salvation of God. Read: Act 13:47

11Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch no unclean thing; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean, that bear the vessels of the LORD.

Get out of here—leave this place—don’t look back—just keep moving—leave the plunder because God has better things in store for you. The crew that carried the sacred temple vessels were to be clean (holy, sanctified and honest.)

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Jer 51:6 Flee out of the midst of Babylon, and deliver every man his soul: be not cut off in her iniquity; for this is the time of the LORD’S vengeance; he will render unto her a recompence. Read: Isa 48:20

12For ye shall not go out with haste, nor go by flight: for the LORD will go before you; and the God of Israel will be your reward.

They were not to leave like a mob or a riot but in a peaceful procession—don’t worry for God is out front as your guide and is at the rear as your guard.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 45:2 I will go before thee, and make the crooked places straight: I will break in pieces the gates of brass, and cut in sunder the bars of iron:

13Behold, my servant shall deal prudently, he shall be exalted and extolled, and be very high.

My servant must refer to Jesus our Messiah—he is head and shoulders above all—exalted.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT
ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

**Isa 42:1** Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, *in whom* my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles. Read: **Jer 23:5**

14 *As many were astonied at thee; his visage was so marred more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men:*

They ruined his face and left him disfigured. The crowd was appalled at the inhumane treatment.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT
PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Isa 50:6** I gave my back to the smiters, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair: I hid not my face from shame and spitting. Read: **Isa 53:2-5; Psa 22:15**

15 *So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him: for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider*

He will sprinkle many nations—under the old economy the blood of bulls and goats were sprinkled for the process of sanctifying.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

**Heb 9:13-14** For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh:

14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? Read: **Heb 10:22; Heb 12:24; Psa 72:9-11**
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 53

This chapter takes us from the crib to the cross to the crown. When God came in human flesh no one believed the report—he grew up as a root out of dry ground—the first 30 years of his life is shrouded in mystery. He wasn’t the most handsome man in Galilee yet he had a moral beauty that was indescribable. This chapter describes the contempt in which the leaders held him. They beat him within an inch of his life and finally nailed him to the cross. Israel’s supreme-court denied him justice and so the trial was a miscarriage. As the drama plays out he is crucified between two convicted felons and ends up being buried in a rich man’s tomb. The prophet conceals the final outcome under an enigma till the resurrection finally happens. This chapter ends with a bright side by telling us that the spoils of the victor (Christ) will be divided among the great ones.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 53

1Who hath believed our report? and to whom is the arm of the LORD revealed?

Jesus was rejected at the hands of the Jews. Paul applies this passage to them in Romans 10:16.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Joh 12:38 That the saying of Esaias the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spake, Lord, who hath believed our report? and to whom hath the arm of the Lord been revealed? Read: Joh 10:26; Rom 10:16-17

2For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of a
dry ground: he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him, there is no beauty that we should desire him.

A metaphor—referring to Jesus as a tender plant, and a root out of dry ground. Jesus was a branch from the root of Jesse. He was a root out of dry ground. Jesse had been dead for over 1,000 years and the last king to reign from that dynasty was Coniah which was 600 years before Jesus. It had been a long dry season since a king ruled over Israel. There was no beauty that they should desire him—the pictures that we have of Jesus were painted by Michelangelo 1475-1564. But to us Jesus was attractive in another way—his moral beauty—his holiness and benevolence, his gentleness and interest in the unworthy, his stainless purity of life. His forgiveness, rest to the spiritual weary, his unfailing friendship to the troubled and lonely, he was to us altogether lovely and beautiful.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Zec 6:12 And speak unto him, saying, Thus speaketh the LORD of hosts, saying, Behold the man whose name is The BRANCH; and he shall grow up out of his place, and he shall build the temple of the LORD: Read: Isa 11:1; Jer 23:5

3He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief: and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

This describes the contempt in which men hold Jesus. They did not appreciate his worth. Some hid their faces as he walked by—others spurned him—they held him in low esteem.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Isa 50:6 I gave my back to the smiters, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair: I hid not my face from shame and spitting. Read: Psa 22:6-8; Zec 11:12-13

4Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.
The door of prophecy opened wide for him to pass through but they treated him as an imposter.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Mat 8:17 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Himself took our infirmities, and bare our sicknesses. Read: Gal 3:13; Heb 9:28; 1Pe 3:18; 1Jn 2:2

5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

He bore our sins and became our sacrifice. It was our rebellion that caused him to be crushed. He was lashed—the blows that landed on him healed us.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Dan 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.

Zec 13:7 Awake, O sword, against my shepherd, and against the man that is my fellow, saith the LORD of hosts: smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered: and I will turn mine hand upon the little ones.

Rom 4:25 Who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.

Heb 10:14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

1Pe 3:18 For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit:
All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

We were the ones that had wondered away—we left the right path and chose the path of least resistance.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Psa 119:176 I have gone astray like a lost sheep; seek thy servant; for I do not forget thy commandments.

1Pe 2:25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.

Eze 34:11-12 For thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I, even I, will both search my sheep, and seek them out.

12 As a shepherd seeketh out his flock in the day that he is among his sheep that are scattered; so will I seek out my sheep, and will deliver them out of all places where they have been scattered in the cloudy and dark day.

He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

He was beaten, tortured—treated violently—but never opened his mouth.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Mat 26:63 But Jesus held his peace. And the high priest answered and said unto him, I adjure thee by the living God, that thou tell us whether thou be the Christ, the Son of God.

Mat 27:12-14 And when he was accused of the chief priests and elders, he answered nothing. Then said Pilate unto him, Hearest thou not how many things they witness against thee? And he answered him to never a word; insomuch that the governor marvelled greatly.
1Pe 2:23 Who, when he was reviled, reviled not again; when he suffered, he threatened not; but committed himself to him that judgeth righteously:

Act 8:32-33 The place of the scripture which he read was this, He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth: In his humiliation his judgment was taken away: and who shall declare his generation? for his life is taken from the earth.

*He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.*

Justice miscarried—no one seemed to know what was happening and didn’t care. By force and without protection he was accused, tried, judged and illegally condemned. Yet paying the price on demand, without a proper trial, nor defense, nor witness on his behalf, for crimes not his own—but ours. His best friends feared to declare his innocence.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:**

Mat 26:65-66 Then the high priest rent his clothes, saying, He hath spoken blasphemy; what further need have we of witnesses? behold, now ye have heard his blasphemy. What think ye? They answered and said, He is guilty of death.

Joh 19:7 The Jews answered him, We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because he made himself the Son of God.

*And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.*

He was buried as a criminal in a rich man’s grave. He died with the vilest and was buried with the richest.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

Mat 27:57-60 When the even was come, there came a rich man of Arimathaea, named Joseph, who also himself was Jesus’ disciple: He went to Pilate, and
begged the body of Jesus. Then Pilate commanded the body to be delivered. And when Joseph had taken the body, he wrapped it in a clean linen cloth, and laid it in his own new tomb, which he had hewn out in the rock: and he rolled a great stone to the door of the sepulchre, and departed.

1Co 15:4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

10 Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand.

The atonement always contemplated an offering for sins. Under the Jewish economy the high priest entered the Holy of Holies with the blood of an animal to atone for himself and his congregation (Lev. 16:2, 3.) Jesus our high priest entered heaven—the corresponding Holy of Holies “with his own blood to atone once for the sins of the world.” Heb. 9:24. He would see his seed—the resurrection meets the difficulty and solves the riddle of this difficult verse. (Rev. 1:18)

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles.

Dan 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy. Read: 2Co 5:21; Joh 12:24; Isa 9:7; Psa 16:9-11

11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

It pleased the LORD to bring men from darkness to light. The knowledge which saves the soul is the gospel which is the power of God unto salvation.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

**Luk 22:44** And being in an agony he prayed more earnestly: and his sweat was as it were great drops of blood falling down to the ground.

**Joh 12:27-32** Now is my soul troubled; and what shall I say? Father, save me from this hour: but for this cause came I unto this hour. Father, glorify thy name. Then came there a voice from heaven, saying, I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again. The people therefore, that stood by, and heard it, said that it thundered: others said, An angel spake to him. Jesus answered and said, This voice came not because of me, but for your sakes. Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out. And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all men unto me. Read: **Heb 12:2; Heb 9:28**

**12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.**

When kings returned from a victorious battle they divided the spoils among their people. Jesus likewise was victorious over hell and the grave and he has divided the spoils with his ransomed ones. Christ the King has blessed us with all spiritual blessing—chosen us, adopted us, accepted us, redeemed us, revealed his will to us, gave us an inheritance, sealed us with his Holy Spirit and gave us wisdom and revelation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Psa 2:8** Ask of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession.

**Dan 2:45** Forasmuch as thou sawest that the stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it brake in pieces the iron, the brass, the clay, the silver, and the gold; the great God hath made known to the king what shall come to pass hereafter: and the dream is certain, and the interpretation thereof sure.
Mar 15:28 And the scripture was fulfilled, which saith, And he was numbered with the transgressors.

Heb 9:28 So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.

Heb 7:25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 54

This chapter deals with the future glory of Zion. (Future from Isaiah’s
day but fulfilled when the exiles returned.) The prophet speaks of
enlarging their tent and that there would be a population explosion.
New towns would sprang up and devastated places re-inhabited. He encourages
them and tells them that they will never be ashamed. In this chapter God
likens Israel to an embittered woman cast off by her husband and now recalled
to the marriage bond. God tells Israel that the chance of him casting her off
was as likely as day and night ceasing. Hills and mountains may disappear but
his love for Israel would never cease. When they return he will have judges and
shepherds who will teach their children. Righteousness will be the norm in
this new society—their motto will be, “The LORD bless thee, O habitation
of justice, and mountain of holiness.” God says that her enemies will fall for
her sake. No weapon turned against them shall succeed—this is God’s decree
and Israel’s heritage. God’s vindication will bring Israel triumph.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 54

Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and
cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child: for more are the children
of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the LORD.

Israel would be restored both physically and spiritually. This verse is applied
by Paul in Gal. 3:27 to Sarah. God wanted them to know that the children of
Sarah would return and multiply and be more than the children of Hagar.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 62:4 Thou shalt no more be termed Forsaken; neither shall thy land any
more be termed Desolate: but thou shalt be called Hephzibah, and thy land Beulah: for the LORD delighteth in thee, and thy land shall be married.

Gal 4:27 For it is written, Rejoice, thou barren that bearest not; break forth and cry, thou that travailest not: for the desolate hath many more children than she which hath an husband. Read: Isa 55:12-13; Heb 11:11-12

2Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thine habitations: spare not, lengthen thy cords, and strengthen thy stakes;

Enlarge the place of thy tent was like saying “buy a larger house with more bed rooms.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 33:20 Look upon Zion, the city of our solemnities: thine eyes shall see Jerusalem a quiet habitation, a tabernacle that shall not be taken down; not one of the stakes thereof shall ever be removed, neither shall any of the cords thereof be broken.

Jer 10:20 My tabernacle is spoiled, and all my cords are broken: my children are gone forth of me, and they are not: there is none to stretch forth my tent any more, and to set up my curtains. Read: Isa 49:19-20

3For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left; and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles, and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.

Waste towns would soon be boom towns—soon there would be a shortage of farm land.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 60:3-6 And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising. Lift up thine eyes round about, and see: all they gather themselves together, they come to thee: thy sons shall come from far, and thy daughters shall be nursed at thy side. Then thou shalt see, and flow together, and thine heart shall fear, and be enlarged; because the abundance of
the sea shall be converted unto thee, the forces of the Gentiles shall come unto thee. The multitude of camels shall cover thee, the dromedaries of Midian and Ephah; all they from Sheba shall come: they shall bring gold and incense; and they shall shew forth the praises of the LORD.

**Eze 36:35-36** And they shall say, This land that was desolate is become like the garden of Eden; and the waste and desolate and ruined cities are become fenced, and are inhabited. Then the heathen that are left round about you shall know that I the LORD build the ruined places, and plant that that was desolate: I the LORD have spoken it, and I will do it.

*Fear not; for thou shalt not be ashamed: neither be thou confounded; for thou shalt not be put to shame: for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.*

He tells them that they need not fear and that they will never be put to shame.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

**Eze 16:22** And in all thine abominations and thy whoredoms thou hast not remembered the days of thy youth, when thou wast naked and bare, and wast polluted in thy blood.

**Hos 3:1-5** Then said the LORD unto me, Go yet, love a woman beloved of her friend, yet an adulteress, according to the love of the LORD toward the children of Israel, who look to other gods, and love flagons of wine. So I bought her to me for fifteen pieces of silver, and for an homer of barley, and an half homer of barley: And I said unto her, Thou shalt abide for me many days; thou shalt not play the harlot, and thou shalt not be for another man: so will I also be for thee. For the children of Israel shall abide many days without a king, and without a prince, and without a sacrifice, and without an image, and without an ephod, and without teraphim: Afterward shall the children of Israel return, and seek the LORD their God, and David their king; and shall fear the LORD and his goodness in the latter days.

*For thy Maker is thine husband; the LORD of hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The God of the whole earth shall he be called.*
Lewis P. Hussell

With God as Israel’s husband—the God of the whole earth—they will no longer live in constant fear.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

**Jer 3:14** Turn, O backsliding children, saith the LORD; for I am married unto you: and I will take you one of a city, and two of a family, and I will bring you to Zion:

**2Co 11:2** For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

**Rom 3:29-30** Is he the God of the Jews only? is he not also of the Gentiles? Yes, of the Gentiles also: Seeing it is one God, which shall justify the circumcision by faith, and uncircumcision through faith.

6*For the LORD hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.*

God likens Israel to an embittered woman who had been cast off by her husband but was once again recalled.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

**Isa 49:14** But Zion said, The LORD hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me.

**Mal 2:14** Yet ye say, Wherefore? Because the LORD hath been witness between thee and the wife of thy youth, against whom thou hast dealt treacherously: yet is she thy companion, and the wife of thy covenant.

7*For a small moment have I forsaken thee; but with great mercies will I gather thee.*

God says he only left her for a moment and now is recalling her with tender mercies.
Psa 30:5 For his anger endureth but a moment; in his favour is life: weeping may endure for a night, but joy cometh in the morning.

Isa 11:11 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

In his anger God had forsaken Israel—but it was only momentarily—but now reassures them that he will recall them with mercy and everlasting kindness.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Isa 8:17 And I will wait upon the LORD, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

Psa 103:17 But the mercy of the LORD is from everlasting to everlasting upon them that fear him, and his righteousness unto children’s children;

For this is as the waters of Noah unto me: for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth; so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee, nor rebuke thee.

God assures them that he would not cast away Israel’s seed or have a ruler from the house of David was as sure as day and night.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 12:1 And in that day thou shalt say, O LORD, I will praise thee: though thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.
Gen 9:11 And I will establish my covenant with you; neither shall all flesh be cut off any more by the waters of a flood; neither shall there any more be a flood to destroy the earth.

Jer 33:20-22 Thus saith the LORD; If ye can break my covenant of the day, and my covenant of the night, and that there should not be day and night in their season; Then may also my covenant be broken with David my servant, that he should not have a son to reign upon his throne; and with the Levites the priests, my ministers. As the host of heaven cannot be numbered, neither the sand of the sea measured: so will I multiply the seed of David my servant, and the Levites that minister unto me.

_for the mountains shall depart, and the hills be removed; but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the LORD that hath mercy on thee._

Hills and mountains may disappear but my love for Israel will never depart.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

_Psa 46:2_ Therefore will not we fear, though the earth be removed, and though the mountains be carried into the midst of the sea;

_2Sa 23:5_ Although my house be not so with God; yet he hath made with me an everlasting covenant, ordered in all _things_, and sure: for _this is_ all my salvation, and all _my_ desire, although he make _it_ not to grow.

_11O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted, behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colours, and lay thy foundations with sapphires._

God assures the exiles who had been afflicted and troubled that he will build them again with stones of turquoise and foundations of sapphires.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

_Isa 51:17-19_ Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the LORD the cup of his fury; thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling, _and_ wrung _them_ out. _There is_ none to guide her among all
the sons *whom* she hath brought forth; neither *is there any* that taketh her by the hand of all the sons *that* she hath brought up. These two *things* are come unto thee; who shall be sorry for thee? desolation, and destruction, and the famine, and the sword: by whom shall I comfort thee?

12 And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

A figurative description of their windows, gates and borders is that everything will be high dollar and best quality.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:**

**Isa 32:15-18** Until the spirit be poured upon us from on high, and the wilderness be a fruitful field, and the fruitful field be counted for a forest. Then judgment shall dwell in the wilderness, and righteousness remain in the fruitful field. And the work of righteousness shall be peace; and the effect of righteousness quietness and assurance for ever. And my people shall dwell in a peaceable habitation, and in sure dwellings, and in quiet resting places;

13 And all thy children shall be taught of the LORD; and great shall be the peace of thy children.

A new group of judges and councilors, shepherds and instructors will arise and her children will be taught and nurtured by them.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:**

**Isa 1:26** And I will restore thy judges as at the first, and thy counsellors as at the beginning: afterward thou shalt be called, The city of righteousness, the faithful city.

14 In righteousness shalt thou be established: thou shalt be far from oppression; for thou shalt not fear: and from terror; for it shall not come near thee.

Righteousness will be the foundation of the new community of exiles when they return and fear and terror shall be absent from them. Their motto
shall be: “The LORD bless thee, O habitation of justice, and mountain of holiness.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 23:3-4 And I will gather the remnant of my flock out of all countries whither I have driven them, and will bring them again to their folds; and they shall be fruitful and increase. And I will set up shepherds over them which shall feed them: and they shall fear no more, nor be dismayed, neither shall they be lacking, saith the LORD.

15Behold, they shall surely gather together, but not by me: whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

God says, “Whosoever shall gather against thee shall fall for thy sake.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Psa 37:12-13 The wicked plotteth against the just, and gnasheth upon him with his teeth. The Lord shall laugh at him: for he seeth that his day is coming.

Zec 2:8 For thus saith the LORD of hosts; After the glory hath he sent me unto the nations which spoiled you: for he that toucheth you toucheth the apple of his eye.

Zec 12:9 And it shall come to pass in that day, that I will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem.

16Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

God created the factory (blacksmith shop) that makes the weapons for his work and the smith who forges the weapon— but no weapons that is formed against thee shall prosper.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Isa 10:5-6 O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is mine indignation. I will send him against an hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge, to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

Isa 37:26 Hast thou not heard long ago, how I have done it; and of ancient times, that I have formed it? now have I brought it to pass, that thou shouldest be to lay waste defenced cities into ruinous heaps.

Isa 46:11 Calling a ravenous bird from the east, the man that executeth my counsel from a far country: yea, I have spoken it, I will also bring it to pass; I have purposed it, I will also do it.

Exo 9:16 And in very deed for this cause have I raised thee up, for to shew in thee my power; and that my name may be declared throughout all the earth.

\[17\text{No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the LORD, and their righteousness is of me, saith the LORD.}\]

No weapon turned against thee shall succeed—no tongue shall rise against thee—God’s decree is that this is their heritage. When God vindicates he brings triumph.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Psa 2:1-6 Why do the heathen rage, and the people imagine a vain thing? The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against the LORD, and against his anointed, saying, Let us break their bands asunder, and cast away their cords from us. He that sitteth in the heavens shall laugh: the Lord shall have them in derision. Then shall he speak unto them in his wrath, and vex them in his sore displeasure. Yet have I set my king upon my holy hill of Zion.
Free! God spread a banquet for the exiles—He provided the nourishment for their physical needs and their soul food. All of this was provided by abundant harvests—ample rains and fertile fields. He renewed the Davidistic covenant and made them a witness for all nations. Israel became a model for the Gentile countries and the Gentiles flowed into Israel. The prophet tells them that all who seek God will find him, he is near to all who call upon him. He calls for the lawless and wicked to cast off their wicked ways and obtain a full pardon. The plan was not devised by puny man but the Creator. It was enriched with wisdom and knowledge past finding out. As rain and snow provide ample moisture for all plant life so the word of God provides the seeker the spiritual food for his soul. The exiles left Babylon with joy and gladness—he pictures a people whose sadness had turned to joy, of depression and prison with praise—a people filled with the spirit of God, sanctified and justified—of wolf and lambs, leopards and goats, lions and calves lying together. The crocodile of the Nile and the serpent of the Euphrates had been destroyed. See chapter 65 for a full description of these animals lying down together.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 55

1Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price.

It’s free! Great religious experiences are compared to a banquet—wine and milk symbolizes abundance and this could be purchased without cash, credit card or check.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Rev 21:6** And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely.

**1Co 3:2** I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto ye were not able to bear it, neither yet now are ye able.

**1Pe 2:2** As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby: Read: **Pro 1:21-23**

2Wherefore do ye spend money for that which is not bread? and your labour for that which satisfieth not? hearken diligently unto me, and eat ye that which is good, and let your soul delight itself in fatness.

Let your soul delight in the rich nourishment of bread, wine, and milk. God is bringing the exiles back and is providing verdant fields, ample rains, watered gardens, seed time and harvest and soul food.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

**Psa 36:8** They shall be abundantly satisfied with the fatness of thy house; and thou shalt make them drink of the river of thy pleasures. Read: **Jer 2:13; Hos 8:7; Hos 12:1**

3Incline your ear, and come unto me: hear, and your soul shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David.

Take note and pay attention—open your ears wide—I am renewing the everlasting covenant that I made with David.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT
ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

**Eze 37:24-25** And David my servant shall be king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe
my statutes, and do them. And they shall dwell in the land that I have given unto Jacob my servant, wherein your fathers have dwelt; and they shall dwell therein, even they, and their children, and their children’s children for ever: and my servant David shall be their prince for ever.

**Act 13:34** And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, now no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, I will give you the sure mercies of David. Read: **Pro 4:20; Joh 7:37-38**

"Behold, I have given him for a witness to the people, a leader and commander to the people."

God had set David up as a witness to the nations and now he was doing the same for them.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

**Joh 18:37** Pilate therefore said unto him, Art thou a king then? Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice.

**Rev 3:14** And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write; These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God;

"Behold, thou shalt call a nation that thou knowest not, and nations that knew not thee shall run unto thee because of the LORD thy God, and for the Holy One of Israel; for he hath glorified thee."

Nations that Israel knew not would come seeking the God of Jacob—Isaiah said, “All nations shall flow unto it.” (Isa. 2:2)

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:**

**Isa 11:10** And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.
Eph 2:11 Wherefore remember, that ye being in time past Gentiles in the flesh, who are called Uncircumcision by that which is called the Circumcision in the flesh made by hands;

"Seek ye the LORD while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near:

God will be found by all who seek him—he is near to all who call upon him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

1Ch 28:9 And thou, Solomon my son, know thou the God of thy father, and serve him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind: for the LORD searcheth all hearts, and understandeth all the imaginations of the thoughts: if thou seek him, he will be found of thee; but if thou forsake him, he will cast thee off for ever.

Psa 145:18 The LORD is nigh unto all them that call upon him, to all that call upon him in truth.

"Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.

If the lawless, wicked and guilty cast off their evil deeds, and turn back to God he will have pity on them and restore them with a full pardon.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

2Ch 7:14 If my people, which are called by my name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land.

Jer 4:14 O Jerusalem, wash thine heart from wickedness, that thou mayest be saved. How long shall thy vain thoughts lodge within thee?

Eze 18:30 Therefore I will judge you, O house of Israel, every one according
to his ways, saith the Lord GOD. Repent, and turn yourselves from all your transgressions; so iniquity shall not be your ruin.

8*For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the LORD.*

God’s plan was not a mere plan of man—the just walk in his plan but the wicked stumble over the stumbling stone.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**

**THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

Hos 14:9 Who is wise, and he shall understand these things? prudent, and he shall know them? for the ways of the LORD are right, and the just shall walk in them: but the transgressors shall fall therein.

9*For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts.*

After a reading of the scriptures and comparing it to all the other religious writings of poets and secular books there is no comparison. The depth of the riches both of wisdom and knowledge is past finding out.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**

**THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:**

Psa 103:11 For as the heaven is high above the earth, so great is his mercy toward them that fear him.

Mat 11:25 At that time Jesus answered and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes.

Rom 11:31-36 Even so have these also now not believed, that through your mercy they also may obtain mercy. For God hath concluded them all in unbelief, that he might have mercy upon all. O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! how unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out! For who hath known the mind of the Lord? or who hath been his counsellor? Or who hath first given to him, and it shall be
recompensed unto him again? For of him, and through him, and to him, are all things: to whom be glory for ever. Amen.

10 For as the rain cometh down, and the snow from heaven, and returneth not thither, but watereth the earth, and maketh it bring forth and bud, that it may give seed to the sower, and bread to the eater:

Rain and snow accomplish their job by providing what is necessary for the growing season—not only providing seed but food for the hungry.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Isa 5:6 And I will lay it waste: it shall not be pruned, nor digged; but there shall come up briers and thorns: I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

Deu 32:2 My doctrine shall drop as the rain, my speech shall distil as the dew, as the small rain upon the tender herb, and as the showers upon the grass:

11 So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it.

The rain and snow make the land fertile and fruitful so the word that passes the lips of God carries out its purpose. His powerful word is sharper than a surgeon’s scalpel, it cuts and penetrates through ones doubts and fears—no one can escape the power of God’s word.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Mat 24:35 Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.

Luk 8:11 Now the parable is this: The seed is the word of God.

Joh 6:63 It is the spirit that quickeneth; the flesh profiteth nothing: the words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life.
1Th 2:13 For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because, when ye received the word of God which ye heard of us, ye received it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe.

1Pe 1:23 Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever.

For ye shall go out with joy, and be led forth with peace: the mountains and the hills shall break forth before you into singing, and all the trees of the field shall clap their hands.

The exiles left Babylon with joy and gladness, sorrow and sadness had all passed away.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Isa 35:10 And the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

Rom 15:13 Now the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, that ye may abound in hope, through the power of the Holy Ghost.

Instead of the thorn shall come up the fir tree, and instead of the brier shall come up the myrtle tree: and it shall be to the LORD for a name, for an everlasting sign that shall not be cut off.

The prophet paints a picture of a people whose sadness had turned to joy—of depression replaced with praise—of knowledge replacing ignorance, of a people filled with the spirit of God, sanctified and justified—of wolf and lambs, leopards and goats, lions and calves lying together. See Isa.65:25 for a detailed explanation of wolves and lambs lying together.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 11:6-9 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together;
and a little child shall lead them. And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice’ den. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea.
God calls for his people to be fair and just, for he was coming to rescue them. The people who observe the Sabbath and stays out of trouble are happy. God says that Gentiles and eunuchs are not going to be second-class-citizens and they must not think of themselves as a dried up tree. He promises them full participation and privileges in the new order. They will be given a new name. Gentiles flocked to Jerusalem to offer sacrifices and God’s temple was called the House of Prayer. The leaders were pinheads—never warning of impending danger—they were greedy looking after their own interest. They only thought about a six pack, partying and another repeat tomorrow. God will send people who act like animals to devour them. The commentary section will provide further insight.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 56

1Thus saith the LORD, Keep ye judgment, and do justice: for my salvation is near to come, and my righteousness to be revealed.

The LORD says: Observe justice and execute righteousness for his salvation was close at hand and victory over their enemy (Babylon) was about to be revealed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 1:16-20 Wash you, make you clean; put away the evil of your doings from before mine eyes; cease to do evil; Learn to do well; seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow. Come now, and let us reason together, saith the LORD: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool. If ye be willing and obedient, ye shall eat the good of the land: But if ye refuse
and rebel, ye shall be devoured with the sword: for the mouth of the LORD hath spoken it.

2Blessed is the man that doeth this, and the son of man that layeth hold on it; that keepeth the sabbath from polluting it, and keepeth his hand from doing any evil.

The man or woman who does this is happy—the person who observes the Sabbath and does not engage in evil deeds.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Psa 1:1-3 Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful. But his delight is in the law of the LORD; and in his law doth he meditate day and night. And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper. Read: Exo 31:13

3Neither let the son of the stranger, that hath joined himself to the LORD, speak, saying, The LORD hath utterly separated me from his people: neither let the eunuch say, Behold, I am a dry tree.

Gentiles—foreigners—eunuch—need not think of themselves as a dried-up tree. They will not be regarded as second class citizens but accepted on equal terms with the Jews.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Zec 8:20-23 Thus saith the LORD of hosts; It shall yet come to pass, that there shall come people, and the inhabitants of many cities: And the inhabitants of one city shall go to another, saying, Let us go speedily to pray before the LORD, and to seek the LORD of hosts: I will go also. Yea, many people and strong nations shall come to seek the LORD of hosts in Jerusalem, and to pray before the LORD. Thus saith the LORD of hosts; In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you: for we have heard that God is with you.
4For thus saith the LORD unto the eunuchs that keep my sabbaths, and choose the things that please me, and take hold of my covenant;

The eunuchs (the Babylonians had castrated many of the Jews) who chose the word of God and keep the Sabbath and clung to the precepts would enjoy all the benefits afforded to them in the covenant.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Act 8:27 And he arose and went: and, behold, a man of Ethiopia, an eunuch of great authority under Candace queen of the Ethiopians, who had the charge of all her treasure, and had come to Jerusalem for to worship,

5Even unto them will I give in mine house and within my walls a place and a name better than of sons and of daughters: I will give them an everlasting name, that shall not be cut off.

God promises them in the temple and inside Jerusalem’s walls a memorial—yes a name better than if they had been sons and daughters. The Ethiopian eunuch is forever remembered as we read Acts 8.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 62:12 And they shall call them, The holy people, The redeemed of the LORD: and thou shalt be called, Sought out, A city not forsaken. Read: Rev 3:12

6Also the sons of the stranger, that join themselves to the LORD, to serve him, and to love the name of the LORD, to be his servants, every one that keepeth the sabbath from polluting it, and taketh hold of my covenant;

Many foreigners joined with the Jews and inquired the way to Zion—they loved the LORD, keep the Sabbath and clung to the covenant.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Jer 50:5 They shall ask the way to Zion with their faces thitherward, saying,
Come, and let us join ourselves to the LORD in a perpetual covenant that shall not be forgotten. Read: Isa 58:13

7 Even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer: their burnt offerings and their sacrifices shall be accepted upon mine altar; for mine house shall be called an house of prayer for all people.

They will come to Jerusalem and worship the same as “insiders.” They will burn incense and often animal sacrifices and the temple will be known as a House of Prayer for all people.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Mal 1:11 For from the rising of the sun even unto the going down of the same my name shall be great among the Gentiles; and in every place incense shall be offered unto my name, and a pure offering: for my name shall be great among the heathen, saith the LORD of hosts. Read: Isa 66:19-20

8 The Lord GOD, which gathereth the outcasts of Israel saith, Yet will I gather others to him, beside those that are gathered unto him.

God gathered the outcasts from Spain, Africa, Turkey and Greece and besides this the Gentiles came to the light and kings to the brightness of his rising.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Isa 60:3 And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising. Read: Psa 106:47

9 All ye beasts of the field, come to devour, yea, all ye beasts in the forest.

The wild animals (heathen savages) were invited to come and gorge themselves on the sheep—devour the blind shearphers.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Deu 28:26 And thy carcase shall be meat unto all fowls of the air, and unto
the beasts of the earth, and no man shall fray them away. Read: Rev 19:17-18

**10** His watchmen are blind: they are all ignorant, they are all dumb dogs, they cannot bark; sleeping, lying down, loving to slumber.

These dumb dogs were blind and ignorant—they never barked when danger was staring them in the face—they just lay down with their beer and wine and partied while the country was on the brink of ruin.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:**

Jer 14:14 Then the LORD said unto me, The prophets prophesy lies in my name: I sent them not, neither have I commanded them, neither spake unto them: they prophesy unto you a false vision and divination, and a thing of nought, and the deceit of their heart. Read: Mat 23:16; Nah 3:18

**11** Yea, they are greedy dogs which can never have enough, and they are shepherds that cannot understand: they all look to their own way, every one for his gain, from his quarter.

These dogs (leaders, shepherds) were greedy as a dog—they had a voracious appetite. They were interested only in their own gain; each was pursuing his own purpose.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

1Sa 2:12-17 Now the sons of Eli were sons of Belial; they knew not the LORD. And the priests’ custom with the people was, that, when any man offered sacrifice, the priest’s servant came, while the flesh was in seething, with a fleshhook of three teeth in his hand; And he struck it into the pan, or kettle, or caldron, or pot; all that the fleshhook brought up the priest took for himself. So they did in Shiloh unto all the Israelites that came thither. Also before they burnt the fat, the priest’s servant came, and said to the man that sacrificed, Give flesh to roast for the priest; for he will not have sodden flesh of thee, but raw. And if any man said unto him, Let them not fail to burn the fat presently, and then take as much as thy soul desireth; then he would answer him, Nay; but thou shalt give it me now: and if not, I will take it by
force. Wherefore the sin of the young men was very great before the LORD: for men abhorred the offering of the LORD.

12Come ye, say they, I will fetch wine, and we will fill ourselves with strong drink; and to morrow shall be as this day, and much more abundant.

Let’s get drunk and tomorrow will be as wonderful as today, maybe even better. Wine, beer, partying, feasting, dumb dogs that would soon be devoured by the savage heathen. Their motto, “Live it up!”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

 Isa 28:7 But they also have erred through wine, and through strong drink are out of the way; the priest and the prophet have erred through strong drink, they are swallowed up of wine, they are out of the way through strong drink; they err in vision, they stumble in judgment.

 1Co 15:32 If after the manner of men I have fought with beasts at Ephesus, what advantageth it me, if the dead rise not? let us eat and drink; for to morrow we die.
Righteous men are perishing and nobody seems to care—they find rest and escape the calamity to come. An evil brood had been spawned—born of sluts, witches, sorceresses and adulterers—this worthless race—this brood of rebels—this bunch of God-haters were senseless, heartless and ruthless. They sought to satisfy their lusts in any shaded area—fornicating at a whim—having children out of wedlock and slaying them under rock cliffs, all in the name of Molech, their heathen god. They sought to appease their no-god with drink offerings, prayers and child sacrifice. They had made their own bed! They bargained and embraced and enlarged their whoredom. They slept with anyone in a one-night stand. This whorish religion and sex shrines lured young men into the sex crime—all the while they were living it up. They went to hell and back to satisfy their lust. They felt no sense of guilt over their acts of perversion. They didn’t want God and so they lived with their depraved mind. When God chastened them they went right on doing their heart content. They paraded their Sodom like ways and were proud of it. God says he will heal, and restore this hell bent bunch however; it will take a 70 year prison term to break them of their idolatry. Some were incorrigible and never changed; he compares them to ocean waves churning up mire and scum. There is no peace says my God for them.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 57

The righteous perisheth, and no man layeth it to heart: and merciful men are taken away, none considering that the righteous is taken away from the evil to come.

Good men are perishing and no one cares or even gives it a second thought. In the meantime righteous people are carried away and no one notices. However, these just and holy people are being spared the calamity to come.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

2Ki 22:20 Behold therefore, I will gather thee unto thy fathers, and thou shalt be gathered into thy grave in peace; and thine eyes shall not see all the evil which I will bring upon this place. And they brought the king word again. Read: Nah 3:18; Mal 2:2; 2Ch 35:24

2He shall enter into peace: they shall rest in their beds, each one walking in his uprightness.

Evil people had killed off good people but they were spared all the evil that was to come upon that generation.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Ecc 12:7 Then shall the dust return to the earth as it was: and the spirit shall return unto God who gave it.

Luk 16:22 And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried;

3But draw near hither, ye sons of the sorceress, the seed of the adulterer and the whore.

These people had been born of sluts, witches, sorceresses, and adulterers. They are summons to come and answer for themselves.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Hos 1:2 The beginning of the word of the LORD by Hosea. And the LORD said to Hosea, Go, take unto thee a wife of whoresoms and children of whoredoms: for the land hath committed great whoredom, departing from the LORD.

Rev 17:1-2 And there came one of the seven angels which had the seven vials, and talked with me, saying unto me, Come hither; I will shew unto thee the judgment of the great whore that sitteth upon many waters: With whom the
kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication.

Against whom do ye sport yourselves? against whom make ye a wide mouth, and draw out the tongue? are ye not children of transgression, a seed of falsehood.

This worthless race are sneering and jeering and sticking out their tongue—this evil brood was mocking the righteous and had gone away backward.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Psalm 35:21 Yea, they opened their mouth wide against me, and said, Aha, aha, our eye hath seen it.

Isaiah 1:4 Ah sinful nation, a people laden with iniquity, a seed of evildoers, children that are corrupters: they have forsaken the LORD, they have provoked the Holy One of Israel unto anger, they are gone away backward.

Enflaming yourselves with idols under every green tree, slaying the children in the valleys under the clifts of the rocks?

They seek to satisfy their lust in city parks and public grounds—they fornicate at a whim and the children born to them are sacrificed to a heathen god. Very little has changed in our day—their passion is as hot as an oven and the children are killed at the abortion clinic and the secularist (heathen) call it women’s rights—or women’s health. This nation will surely face the same angry God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Hosea 4:11-13 Whoredom and wine and new wine take away the heart. My people ask counsel at their stocks, and their staff declareth unto them: for the spirit of whoredoms hath caused them to err, and they have gone a whoring from under their God. They sacrifice upon the tops of the mountains, and burn incense upon the hills, under oaks and poplars and elms, because the shadow thereof is good: therefore your daughters shall commit whoredom, and your spouses shall commit adultery.
Hos 7:7 They are all hot as an oven, and have devoured their judges; all their kings are fallen: there is none among them that calleth unto me.

Jer 7:31 And they have built the high places of Tophet, which is in the valley of the son of Hinnom, to burn their sons and their daughters in the fire; which I commanded them not, neither came it into my heart.

"Among the smooth stones of the stream is thy portion; they, they are thy lot: even to them hast thou poured a drink offering, thou hast offered a meat offering. Should I receive comfort in these?

They sought to appease their idols with drink offerings and burned their children in the fire. They had satisfied their lust any place they could find and when the child was born they would go to some cave or crevice and murder the child. They took stones from the creek and made themselves a sex and religion shrine—they were extremely religious.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Jer 3:9 And it came to pass through the lightness of her whoredom, that she defiled the land, and committed adultery with stones and with stocks.

Hab 2:19 Woe unto him that saith to the wood, Awake; to the dumb stone, Arise, it shall teach! Behold, it is laid over with gold and silver, and there is no breath at all in the midst of it.

"Upon a lofty and high mountain hast thou set thy bed: even thither wentest thou up to offer sacrifice.

Thou hast set thy bed—they chose their own fate—they climbed the mountain and performed the ritual of sex and death religion.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Jer 3:2 Lift up thine eyes unto the high places, and see where thou hast not been lien with. In the ways hast thou sat for them, as the Arabian in the wilderness; and thou hast polluted the land with thy whoredoms and with thy wickedness.
Eze 23:17 And the Babylonians came to her into the bed of love, and they defiled her with their whoredom, and she was polluted with them, and her mind was alienated from them.

*B*Behind the doors also and the posts hast thou set up thy remembrance: for thou hast discovered thyself to another than me, and art gone up; thou hast enlarged thy bed, and made thee a covenant with them; thou lovedst their bed where thou sawest it.*

They stripped and hired themselves in prostitution—they bargained and embraced others as they enlarged their whoredom—they enlarged their bed as they slept with others and engaged in their whoredom. This whorish religion lured young men and the sex traffic was a lucrative trade and they were enjoying every minute of it.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

Eze 8:8-9 Then said he unto me, Son of man, dig now in the wall: and when I had digged in the wall, behold a door. And he said unto me, Go in, and behold the wicked abominations that they do here. Read: Eze 16:30-39

*And thou wentest to the king with ointment, and didst increase thy perfumes, and didst send thy messengers far off, and didst debase thyself even unto hell.*

They went to hell and back to find new ways to commit their whoredom. They portrayed every sex act on the walls of their heathen temples’, (pornography) and gathered to engage in the same. Even the king was up to his eye balls in this sex and religion.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:**

Hos 12:1 Ephraim feedeth on wind, and followeth after the east wind: he daily increaseth lies and desolation; and they do make a covenant with the Assyrians, and oil is carried into Egypt. Read: 2Ki 16:7-11

*Thou art wearied in the greatness of thy way; yet saidst thou not, There*
is no hope: thou hast found the life of thine hand; therefore thou wast not grieved.

You wearied yourself in search of new ways to satisfy your lust—you never gave up—they wore themselves out seeking new and different ways to commit lewd acts. They earned their livelihood in prostitution. (Call girls—escort service—adult only places) They were not grieved with their acts of perversion. They didn’t want God in their knowledge and so lived with a depraved mind.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 47:13 Thou art wearied in the multitude of thy counsels. Let now the astrologers, the stargazers, the monthly prognosticators, stand up, and save thee from these things that shall come upon thee.

Eze 24:12 She hath wearied herself with lies, and her great scum went not forth out of her: her scum shall be in the fire.

2Ch 28:22 -23 And in the time of his distress did he trespass yet more against the LORD: this is that king Ahaz. For he sacrificed unto the gods of Damascus, which smote him: and he said, Because the gods of the kings of Syria help them, therefore will I sacrifice to them, that they may help me. But they were the ruin of him, and of all Israel.

“...And of whom hast thou been afraid or feared, that thou hast lied, and hast not remembered me, nor laid it to thy heart? have not I held my peace even of old, and thou fearest me not?

God wants to know why they were more afraid of no-gods than of him. They never gave God a second thought. God wants to know if it was because he was too gentle with them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 59:3-5 For your hands are defiled with blood, and your fingers with iniquity; your lips have spoken lies, your tongue hath muttered perverseness. None calleth for justice, nor any pleadeth for truth: they trust in vanity,
and speak lies; they conceive mischief, and bring forth iniquity. They hatch cockatrice’ eggs, and weave the spider’s web: he that eateth of their eggs dieth, and that which is crushed breaketh out into a viper.

12I will declare thy righteousness, and thy works; for they shall not profit thee.

God says he is going to expose their works and righteousness detail by detail.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Isa 58:2-6 Yet they seek me daily, and delight to know my ways, as a nation that did righteousness, and forsook not the ordinance of their God: they ask of me the ordinances of justice; they take delight in approaching to God. Wherefore have we fasted, say they, and thou seest not? wherefore have we afflicted our soul, and thou takest no knowledge? Behold, in the day of your fast ye find pleasure, and exact all your labours. Behold, ye fast for strife and debate, and to smite with the fist of wickedness: ye shall not fast as ye do this day, to make your voice to be heard on high. Is it such a fast that I have chosen? a day for a man to afflict his soul? is it to bow down his head as a bulrush, and to spread sackcloth and ashes under him? wilt thou call this a fast, and an acceptable day to the LORD? Is not this the fast that I have chosen? to loose the bands of wickedness, to undo the heavy burdens, and to let the oppressed go free, and that ye break every yoke?

13When thou criest, let thy companies deliver thee; but the wind shall carry them all away; vanity shall take them: but he that putteth his trust in me shall possess the land, and shall inherit my holy mountain;

God says this whole stock of idols are nothing but vanity and nonsense and that they will be blown away by the wind; but he that trusteth in the LORD will inherit the land.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 40:24 Yea, they shall not be planted; yea, they shall not be sown: yea, their
stock shall not take root in the earth: and he shall also blow upon them, and they shall wither, and the whirlwind shall take them away as stubble.

**Psa 1:4** The ungodly are not so: but are like the chaff which the wind driveth away.

14 And shall say, Cast ye up, cast ye up, prepare the way, take up the stumblingblock out of the way of my people.

God is going to prepare a glorious highway for his people to return to his glorious mountain.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:**

**Isa 62:10** Go through, go through the gates; prepare ye the way of the people; cast up, cast up the highway; gather out the stones; lift up a standard for the people.

**Rom 14:13** Let us not therefore judge one another any more: but judge this rather, that no man put a stumblingblock or an occasion to fall in his brother’s way.

15 For thus saith the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity, whose name is Holy; I dwell in the high and holy place, with him also that is of a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite ones.

The high and holy one who inhabits eternity says: to the down-and-out, to the crushed ones—to the people with a broken spirit—I will give you a new spirit—I will put heart into you—I will cheer you up and revive the courage of the broken.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**2Ch 33:12-13** And when he was in affliction, he besought the LORD his God, and humbled himself greatly before the God of his fathers, And prayed unto him: and he was intreated of him, and heard his supplication, and
brought him again to Jerusalem into his kingdom. Then Manasseh knew that
the LORD he was God. Read: **Dan 4:24-25**

16*For I will not contend for ever, neither will I be always wroth: for the
spirit should fail before me, and the souls which I have made.*

God says that he is not always going to be angry; if he was then every soul
that he had made would perish.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:**

**Psa 78:38-39** But he, **being** full of compassion, forgave **their** iniquity, and
destroyed **them** not: yea, many a time turned he his anger away, and did not
stir up all his wrath. For he remembered that they **were but** flesh; a wind that
passeth away, and cometh not again.

**Job 34:14-15** If he set his heart upon man, if he gather unto himself his spirit
and his breath; All flesh shall perish together, and man shall turn again unto
dust.

17*For the iniquity of his covetousness was I wroth, and smote him: I hid
me, and was wroth, and he went on frowardly in the way of his heart.*

When God smote them for their greedy hearts they went straight on doing
their hearts content.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:**

**Jer 6:13** For from the least of them even unto the greatest of them every one
is given to covetousness; and from the prophet even unto the priest every one
dealeth falsely.

18*I have seen his ways, and will heal him: I will lead him also, and restore
comforts unto him and to his mourners.*

Even though they went hell bent God says that he is going to heal, restore,
and lead him. It took a 70 year prison term in Babylon to bring them to their
knees.
Jer 31:18-20 I have surely heard Ephraim bemoaning himself thus; Thou hast chastised me, and I was chastised, as a bullock unaccustomed to the yoke: turn thou me, and I shall be turned; for thou art the LORD my God. Surely after that I was turned, I repented; and after that I was instructed, I smote upon my thigh: I was ashamed, yea, even confounded, because I did bear the reproach of my youth. Is Ephraim my dear son? is he a pleasant child? for since I spake against him, I do earnestly remember him still: therefore my bowels are troubled for him; I will surely have mercy upon him, saith the LORD.

I create the fruit of the lips; Peace, peace to him that is far off, and to him that is near, saith the LORD; and I will heal him.

I create the fruit of the lips: God heals, comforts and restores—there is a harvest of praise to those who have accepted the remedy.

Hos 14:2 Take with you words, and turn to the LORD: say unto him, Take away all iniquity, and receive us graciously: so will we render the calves of our lips.

Luk 21:15 For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist.

But the wicked are like the troubled sea, when it cannot rest, whose waters cast up mire and dirt.

People with rebellious hearts are like the ocean waves—churning up mire and scum.

Job 18:5 Yea, the light of the wicked shall be put out, and the spark of his fire shall not shine.
Pro 4:16-17 For they sleep not, except they have done mischief; and their sleep is taken away, unless they cause some to fall. For they eat the bread of wickedness, and drink the wine of violence.

Jud 1:12 These are spots in your feasts of charity, when they feast with you, feeding themselves without fear: clouds they are without water, carried about of winds; trees whose fruit withereth, without fruit, twice dead, plucked up by the roots;

There is no peace, saith my God, to the wicked.

There is no peace—no well being to the wicked.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 3:11 Woe unto the wicked! it shall be ill with him: for the reward of his hands shall be given him.

2Ki 9:22 And it came to pass, when Joram saw Jehu, that he said, Is it peace, Jehu? And he answered, What peace, so long as the whoredoms of thy mother Jezebel and her witchcrafts are so many?

Rom 3:16-17 Destruction and misery are in their ways: And the way of peace have they not known:
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 58

Shout it out! Show my people what is wrong with their lives. These pious snobs pretended to enjoy Bible reading and temple services, but their mind and heart was empty. They folded their hands in prayer and bent the knee—but their hands were stained with blood. This people fasted, prayed and pretended. All they wanted was the almighty dollar. Their leaders judged for bribes—priests taught for cold cash—prophets predicted for pay—they abhorred judgment and perverted equity. On fast days they gathered to quarrel, they squabbled and wrangled till it broke out into a fist fight. This was not the kind of fast that God wanted—he wanted broken hearts and broken lives mended—but instead they put on a gunny sack and marked themselves with ashes. These people were out to skin anyone and everyone. They were vultures waiting for someone to default on a note so they could repossess their home and farms and sell their children as slaves. If they got their act straight God would light their morning with sunshine—restore their health and be their guide and rearward and then when they prayed God would answer. God would reveal to them where to go and they would be like a well watered garden. You will build homes on old foundations. From the past life you will build a new righteous life. You will be able to fix anything and everything—restore, renovate, and rebuild. Finally you will find your happiness in the LORD—you will ride on high and soar like an eagle and you will eat the heritage of Jacob.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 58

1 Cry aloud, spare not, lift up thy voice like a trumpet, and shew my people their transgression, and the house of Jacob their sins.

Shout the message at the top of your lungs. Show my people what is wrong with their lives.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Jer 1:17-19 Thou therefore gird up thy loins, and arise, and speak unto them all that I command thee: be not dismayed at their faces, lest I confound thee before them. For, behold, I have made thee this day a defenced city, and an iron pillar, and brasen walls against the whole land, against the kings of Judah, against the princes thereof, against the priests thereof, and against the people of the land. And they shall fight against thee; but they shall not prevail against thee; for I am with thee, saith the LORD, to deliver thee. Read Isa 56:10

Yet they seek me daily, and delight to know my ways, as a nation that did righteousness, and forsook not the ordinance of their God: they ask of me the ordinances of justice; they take delight in approaching to God.

These people showed up for temple service and pretended to love the reading of the law but all the while in their heart they despised the commandments of the law. Their piety was as artificial as saccharine. They prayed but their hands were full of blood.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 1:11-15 To what purpose is the multitude of your sacrifices unto me? saith the LORD: I am full of the burnt offerings of rams, and the fat of fed beasts; and I delight not in the blood of bullocks, or of lambs, or of he goats. When ye come to appear before me, who hath required this at your hand, to tread my courts? Bring no more vain oblations; incense is an abomination unto me; the new moons and sabbaths, the calling of assemblies, I cannot away with; it is iniquity, even the solemn meeting. Your new moons and your appointed feasts my soul hateth: they are a trouble unto me; I am weary to bear them. And when ye spread forth your hands, I will hide mine eyes from you: yea, when ye make many prayers, I will not hear: your hands are full of blood.

Wherefore have we fasted, say they, and thou seest not? wherefore have we afflicted our soul, and thou takest no knowledge? Behold, in the day of your fast ye find pleasure, and exact all your labours.

Why wasn’t God impressed with these folks? They fasted, prayed and pretended. They used the fast days to do business as usual— oppress the
workers, and exploit people. Leaders were judging for rewards—priests were teaching for money—prophets divine for money—they abhorred judgment and perverted equity.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Jer 34:9-12** That every man should let his manservant, and every man his maidservant, being an Hebrew or an Hebrewess, go free; that none should serve himself of them, to wit, of a Jew his brother. Now when all the princes, and all the people, which had entered into the covenant, heard that every one should let his manservant, and every one his maidservant, go free, that none should serve themselves of them any more, then they obeyed, and let them go. But afterward they turned, and caused the servants and the handmaids, whom they had let go free, to return, and brought them into subjection for servants and for handmaids. Therefore the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah from the LORD, saying, Read: **Jer 34:13-17**

> *Behold, ye fast for strife and debate, and to smite with the fist of wickedness: ye shall not fast as ye do this day, to make your voice to be heard on high.*

When they fasted they became quarrelsome, they squabbled and wrangled till they got into a fist fight.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

**Pro 21:27** The sacrifice of the wicked is abomination: how much more, when he bringeth it with a wicked mind? Read: **1Ki 21:9-13**

> *Is it such a fast that I have chosen? a day for a man to afflict his soul? is it to bow down his head as a bulrush, and to spread sackcloth and ashes under him? wilt thou call this a fast, and an acceptable day to the LORD?*

Can this be the kind of a fast that I called for? Is this what God wants—bowing ones head like a weeping cherry tree—putting on an old gunny sack and marking oneself with ashes? Is that what God wants to see?
Ezr 10:6 Then Ezra rose up from before the house of God, and went into the chamber of Johanan the son of Eliashib: and when he came thither, he did eat no bread, nor drink water: for he mourned because of the transgression of them that had been carried away.

Neh 9:1-2 Now in the twenty and fourth day of this month the children of Israel were assembled with fasting, and with sackclothes, and earth upon them. And the seed of Israel separated themselves from all strangers, and stood and confessed their sins, and the iniquities of their fathers.

6Is not this the fast that I have chosen? to loose the bands of wickedness, to undo the heavy burdens, and to let the oppressed go free, and that ye break every yoke?

These people were picking peoples flesh to the bone and skinning everyone they could—they were charging a high rate of interest—they were vultures waiting for their brethren to default on their notes so they could take their homes, vineyards, and farms and sell their sons and daughters.

Neh 5:10-12 I likewise, and my brethren, and my servants, might exact of them money and corn: I pray you, let us leave off this usury. Restore, I pray you, their lands, their vineyards, their oliveyards, and their houses, also the hundredth part of the money, and of the corn, the wine, and the oil, that ye exact of them. Then said they, We will restore them, and will require nothing of them; so will we do as thou sayest. Then I called the priests, and took an oath of them, that they should do according to this promise.

Mic 3:2-4 Who hate the good, and love the evil; who pluck off their skin from off them, and their flesh from off their bones; Who also eat the flesh of my people, and flay their skin from off them; and they break their bones, and chop them in pieces, as for the pot, and as flesh within the caldron. Then shall they cry unto the LORD, but he will not hear them: he will even hide his face from them at that time, as they have behaved themselves ill in their doings.
Is it not to deal thy bread to the hungry, and that thou bring the poor that are cast out to thy house? when thou seest the naked, that thou cover him; and that thou hide not thyself from thine own flesh?

They were evading the simple duties and in doing so violated the second commandment with promise. They should have provided the wanderer with shelter—clothed the naked—(they would sell ones shirt of his back) they pretended that they didn’t know what was going on.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Job 22:7 Thou hast not given water to the weary to drink, and thou hast withheld bread from the hungry.

Pro 28:27 He that giveth unto the poor shall not lack: but he that hideth his eyes shall have many a curse.

Dan 4:27 Wherefore, O king, let my counsel be acceptable unto thee, and break off thy sins by righteousness, and thine iniquities by shewing mercy to the poor; if it may be a lengthening of thy tranquillity.

Then shall thy light break forth as the morning, and thine health shall spring forth speedily: and thy righteousness shall go before thee; the glory of the LORD shall be thy reward.

If they would do this their light would spring forth like morning sunshine—you will recover from your health problem—your own righteousness will go before you and God will bring up your rearward.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Psa 97:11 Light is sown for the righteous, and gladness for the upright in heart.

Psa 112:4 Unto the upright there ariseth light in the darkness: he is gracious, and full of compassion, and righteous.
Joh 12:46 I am come a light into the world, that whosoever believeth on me should not abide in darkness.

9Then shalt thou call, and the LORD shall answer; thou shalt cry, and he shall say, Here I am. If thou take away from the midst of thee the yoke, the putting forth of the finger, and speaking vanity;

And then when you pray God will answer you! All you need to do is straighten up—stop unfair practices—quit gossiping—be generous with the hungry—cease perverting justice and then you will glow in the dark—you will have a new light to walk in.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 65:24 And it shall come to pass, that before they call, I will answer; and while they are yet speaking, I will hear.

Psa 91:15 He shall call upon me, and I will answer him: I will be with him in trouble; I will deliver him, and honour him.

10And if thou draw out thy soul to the hungry, and satisfy the afflicted soul; then shall thy light rise in obscurity, and thy darkness be as the noon day:

If you open your heart to the hungry—it will be like thick darkness suddenly exposed to the bright sun at noon time.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Deu 15:7-10 If there be among you a poor man of one of thy brethren within any of thy gates in thy land which the LORD thy God giveth thee, thou shalt not harden thine heart, nor shut thine hand from thy poor brother: But thou shalt open thine hand wide unto him, and shalt surely lend him sufficient for his need, in that which he wanteth. Beware that there be not a thought in thy wicked heart, saying, The seventh year, the year of release, is at hand; and thine eye be evil against thy poor brother, and thou givest him nought; and he cry unto the LORD against thee, and it be sin unto thee. Thou shalt surely give him, and thine heart shall not be grieved when thou givest unto
A Commentary on Isaiah

him: because that for this thing the LORD thy God shall bless thee in all thy works, and in all that thou puttest thine hand unto.

Psa 37:6 And he shall bring forth thy righteousness as the light, and thy judgment as the noonday.

And the LORD shall guide thee continually, and satisfy thy soul in drought, and make fat thy bones: and thou shalt be like a watered garden, and like a spring of water, whose waters fail not.

The LORD will show you where to go. He will prepare a table before you. You will be like a garden with automatic sprinklers—like and ever flowing spring, even in time of draught.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Isa 49:10 They shall not hunger nor thirst; neither shall the heat nor sun smite them: for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

Job 5:20 In famine he shall redeem thee from death: and in war from the power of the sword.

Jer 31:9 They shall come with weeping, and with supplications will I lead them: I will cause them to walk by the rivers of waters in a straight way, wherein they shall not stumble: for I am a father to Israel, and Ephraim is my firstborn.

And they that shall be of thee shall build the old waste places: thou shalt raise up the foundations of many generations; and thou shalt be called, The repairer of the breach, The restorer of paths to dwell in.

You will take old foundations and build new homes. You will raise up the foundation of many generations—from the past life you will build a new righteous life. You will be able to fix anything—restore old things—rebuild and renovate—this place will be livable again.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

**Isa 61:4** And they shall build the old wastes, they shall raise up the former desolations, and they shall repair the waste cities, the desolations of many generations.

**Neh 2:5** And I said unto the king, If it please the king, and if thy servant have found favour in thy sight, that thou wouldest send me unto Judah, unto the city of my fathers’ sepulchres, that I may build it.

**Neh 6:1** Now it came to pass, when Sanballat, and Tobiah, and Geshem the Arabian, and the rest of our enemies, heard that I had builded the wall, and that there was no breach left therein; (though at that time I had not set up the doors upon the gates;)

13*If thou turn away thy foot from the sabbath, from doing thy pleasure on my holy day; and call the sabbath a delight, the holy of the LORD, honourable; and shalt honour him, not doing thine own ways, nor finding thine own pleasure, nor speaking thine own words:*

God calls on his people to not use the Sabbath for personal advantage—celebrate God’s holy day and not use it for business as usual. Use the Sabbath as a day of joy for the LORD.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**Exo 20:8-10** Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy. Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work: But the seventh day is the sabbath of the LORD thy God: in it thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates:

14*Then shalt thou delight thyself in the LORD; and I will cause thee to ride upon the high places of the earth, and feed thee with the heritage of Jacob thy father: for the mouth of the LORD hath spoken it.*

Then you will find your happiness in the LORD. You will ride high and soar like an eagle. You will eat the heritage of Jacob—see I God have spoken it.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Job 22:26 For then shalt thou have thy delight in the Almighty, and shalt lift up thy face unto God.

Isa 33:16 He shall dwell on high: his place of defence shall be the munitions of rocks: bread shall be given him; his waters shall be sure.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 59

God’s hand was not too short nor was he hard of hearing. They had shut God out of their life and their sins had separated them from God. Their hands were dripping with blood. Their tongue was coated with lies and obscenities. They were foul mouthed and their evil deeds were like sparks that set the straw on fire. In the courts a fair trial was impossible—they bred harm and gave birth to misery. The prophet likens them to hatching snake eggs and weaving cobwebs of rottenness. They spun their evil plans like weaving a garment—theirs was a fabric of iniquity and violence. Ruin and destruction was their trademark. The leaders had wrecked and ruined their country. Their behavior was as twisted as a barbed wire fence. In their oppression they were growling like a bear and moaning like a dove—expecting justice and judgment, and redress, in the courts was as elusive as a flea on a dog’s back. Guilt was high as a mountain from this seed of evildoers. Treachery, revolt, lies, oppression was the norm. Truth was stumbling in the market place and honesty was kept out of the courts. No truth, no honesty, no mercy, and no knowledge of God in the land—the prophets had said that an honest person couldn’t be found. Evil had arose on the horizon like a raging storm and none of the leaders had intervened—so God stepped in and intervened. He put on his suit of armor—put salvation on his head—wrapped himself in jealous anger, and takes on this miserable group of sinners. Raging with fury and wreaking with anger our high God takes on the renegades. God anointed Cyrus and commissioned him to destroy Babylon. When they returned from captivity God’s spirit was with them—he put his word in their minds—it was a lamp to their feet, and a light to their path—it was to remain with them and their seed forever.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 59

1 Behold, the LORD’s hand is not shortened, that it cannot save; neither his ear heavy, that it cannot hear:
God’s hand is not too short to reach out and save you. His ear is not filled with wax—he can still hear.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 50:2 Wherefore, when I came, was there no man? when I called, was there none to answer? Is my hand shortened at all, that it cannot redeem? or have I no power to deliver? behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make the rivers a wilderness: their fish stinketh, because there is no water, and dieth for thirst.
Read: Num 11:23; Jer 32:17

Israel had turned to other gods and their sins had caused God to turn from them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Deu 31:17-18 Then my anger shall be kindled against them in that day, and I will forsake them, and I will hide my face from them, and they shall be devoured, and many evils and troubles shall befall them; so that they will say in that day, Are not these evils come upon us, because our God is not among us? And I will surely hide my face in that day for all the evils which they shall have wrought, in that they are turned unto other gods.

Their hands were dripping with blood, and their fingers were filthy with guilt. Their tongue was smeared with lies and obscenities.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 1:15 And when ye spread forth your hands, I will hide mine eyes from you: yea, when ye make many prayers, I will not hear: your hands are full of blood.
Jer 9:3-5 And they bend their tongues like their bow for lies; but they are not valiant for the truth upon the earth; for they proceed from evil to evil, and they know not me, saith the LORD. Take ye heed every one of his neighbour, and trust ye not in any brother: for every brother will utterly supplant, and every neighbour will walk with slanders. And they will deceive every one his neighbour, and will not speak the truth: they have taught their tongue to speak lies, and weary themselves to commit iniquity.

4 None calleth for justice, nor any pleadeth for truth: they trust in vanity, and speak lies; they conceive mischief, and bring forth iniquity.

A fair trial was impossible—lawsuits based on lies. They spent their time on plotting evil deeds—they bred harm and gave birth to misery.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Eze 22:29-31 The people of the land have used oppression, and exercised robbery, and have vexed the poor and needy: yea, they have oppressed the stranger wrongfully. And I sought for a man among them, that should make up the hedge, and stand in the gap before me for the land, that I should not destroy it: but I found none. Therefore have I poured out mine indignation upon them; I have consumed them with the fire of my wrath: their own way have I recompensed upon their heads, saith the Lord GOD.

Psa 62:4 They only consult to cast him down from his excellency: they delight in lies: they bless with their mouth, but they curse inwardly. Selah.

5 They hatch cockatrice’ eggs, and weave the spider’s web: he that eateth of their eggs dieth, and that which is crushed breaketh out into a viper.

They hatch snake eggs and weave cobwebs. They were rotten eggs and brought forth only rottenness. They spin evil plans that span deadly actions.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 14:29 Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken: for out of the serpent’s root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.
Mat 3:7 But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees come to his baptism, he said unto them, O generation of vipers, who hath warned you to flee from the wrath to come?

Mat 12:34 O generation of vipers, how can ye, being evil, speak good things? for out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh.

6Their webs shall not become garments, neither shall they cover themselves with their works: their works are works of iniquity, and the act of violence is in their hands.

They spent their time figuring out how to short change someone—they spun evil plans like a garment—the fabric they wore was the fabric of inequity—their hands were busy with deeds of violence—they had spider webs of plots to catch innocent victims.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Job 8:14 Whose hope shall be cut off, and whose trust shall be a spider’s web.

Isa 64:6 But we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags; and we all do fade as a leaf; and our iniquities, like the wind, have taken us away.

Gen 6:11 The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence.

7Their feet run to evil, and they make haste to shed innocent blood: their thoughts are thoughts of iniquity; wasting and destruction are in their paths.

Everything they did left a trail of blood and violence—ruin and destruction was their trademark.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Pro 1:16 For their feet run to evil, and make haste to shed blood.
Eze 9:9 Then said he unto me, The iniquity of the house of Israel and Judah is exceeding great, and the land is full of blood, and the city full of perverseness: for they say, The LORD hath forsaken the earth, and the LORD seeth not.

Eze 22:6 Behold, the princes of Israel, every one were in thee to their power to shed blood.

8 The way of peace they know not; and there is no judgment in their goings: they have made them crooked paths: whosoever goeth therein shall not know peace.

They run headlong into crime—they were a wreck and ruin crew. Their track record was ruin-ruin-ruin. Anyone who follows their example won’t experience peace either. Their behavior was as twisted as the coils of a bed spring.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Pro 3:17 Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace.

Jer 5:1 Run ye to and fro through the streets of Jerusalem, and see now, and know, and seek in the broad places thereof, if ye can find a man, if there be any that executeth judgment, that seeketh the truth; and I will pardon it.

Isa 48:22 There is no peace, saith the LORD, unto the wicked.

9 Therefore is judgment far from us, neither doth justice overtake us: we wait for light, but behold obscurity; for brightness, but we walk in darkness.

No wonder they waited for light but found only darkness. They walked only in gloom—wrongs were never righted—no redress at the courts, because justice was hiding in the shadows.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Lam 5:16-17 The crown is fallen from our head: woe unto us, that we have sinned!
17 For this our heart is faint; for these things our eyes are dim.

Jer 14:19 Hast thou utterly rejected Judah? hath thy soul loathed Zion? why hast thou smitten us, and there is no healing for us? we looked for peace, and there is no good; and for the time of healing, and behold trouble!

10 We grope for the wall like the blind, and we grope as if we had no eyes: we stumble at noon day as in the night; we are in desolate places as dead men.

Groping like a blind man with a cane dragging along the wall—stumbling at midday like it was midnight. You act like a corpse instead of vigorous young men. They were living in a dark hole of injustice.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES 
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Deu 28:29 And thou shalt grope at noonday, as the blind groppeth in darkness, and thou shalt not prosper in thy ways: and thou shalt be only oppressed and spoiled evermore, and no man shall save thee.

Lam 3:6 He hath set me in dark places, as they that be dead of old.

11 We roar all like bears, and mourn sore like doves: we look for judgment, but there is none; for salvation, but it is far off from us.

In their oppression they growled like bears, and moaned like doves; expecting justice and judgment—hoping somehow to be righted but it was all in vain—we look for redress but it remains as elusive as a flea on a dog’s back.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES 
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Hos 7:14 And they have not cried unto me with their heart, when they howled upon their beds: they assemble themselves for corn and wine, and they rebel against me.

Isa 38:14 Like a crane or a swallow, so did I chatter: I did mourn as a dove: mine eyes fail with looking upward: O LORD, I am oppressed; undertake for me.
Oh that my head were waters, and mine eyes a fountain of tears, that I might weep day and night for the slain of the daughter of my people!

For our transgressions are multiplied before thee, and our sins testify against us: for our transgressions are with us; and as for our iniquities, we know them;

They knew that their sins had come before God and were multiplied—these acts of rebellion were beyond counting—guilt kept mounting and shame was on every side. Isaiah calls them “the seed of evildoers.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

We have sinned, and have committed iniquity, and have done wickedly, and have rebelled, even by departing from thy precepts and from thy judgments: Neither have we hearkened unto thy servants the prophets, which spake in thy name to our kings, our princes, and our fathers, and to all the people of the land. O Lord, righteousness belongeth unto thee, but unto us confusion of faces, as at this day; to the men of Judah, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and unto all Israel, that are near, and that are far off, through all the countries whither thou hast driven them, because of their trespass that they have trespassed against thee. O Lord, to us belongeth confusion of face, to our kings, to our princes, and to our fathers, because we have sinned against thee.

In transgressing and lying against the LORD, and departing away from our God, speaking oppression and revolt, conceiving and uttering from the heart words of falsehood.

They had denied the LORD their God and were guilty of rebellion, treachery, revolt, and oppression. They conceived lies in their hearts.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

For the vile person will speak villany, and his heart will work iniquity, to practise hypocrisy, and to utter error against the LORD, to make empty the soul of the hungry, and he will cause the drink of the thirsty to fail.
Nevertheless they did flatter him with their mouth, and they lied unto him with their tongues.

And they will deceive every one his neighbour, and will not speak the truth: they have taught their tongue to speak lies, and weary themselves to commit iniquity.

The wise man Solomon tells what he seen in the courts of his kingdom, “I saw under the sun the place of judgment that wickedness was there. And the place of righteousness that iniquity was there.” Ecc. 3:16. Justice was rebuffed and flouted—truth was stumbling in the market place—honesty was kept out of the courts. The place where one would expect righteousness was outlawed—equity was dead in the streets. Honesty was sidelined and good was missing in action—if you opposed the leaders you would be beaten and robbed.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Which justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

How long will ye judge unjustly, and accept the persons of the wicked? Selah. Defend the poor and fatherless: do justice to the afflicted and needy. Deliver the poor and needy: rid them out of the hand of the wicked. They know not, neither will they understand; they walk on in darkness: all the foundations of the earth are out of course.

And moreover I saw under the sun the place of judgment, that wickedness was there; and the place of righteousness, that iniquity was there.

Yea, truth faileth; and he that departeth from evil maketh himself a prey: and the LORD saw it, and it displeased him that there was no judgment.

No truth, no honesty, no mercy, no knowledge of God in the land. Perhaps the prophet Jeremiah says it best, “if you can find a man, if there be any that
executeth judgment, that seeketh the truth; and I will pardon it.” God seen that there was no steps being taken to correct this injustice.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Jer 5:1 Run ye to and fro through the streets of Jerusalem, and see now, and know, and seek in the broad places thereof, if ye can find a man, if there be any that executeth judgment, that seeketh the truth; and I will pardon it.

Hos 4:1 Hear the word of the LORD, ye children of Israel: for the LORD hath a controversy with the inhabitants of the land, because there is no truth, nor mercy, nor knowledge of God in the land.

16 And he saw that there was no man, and wondered that there was no intercessor: therefore his arm brought salvation unto him; and his righteousness, it sustained him.

Evil had arose on the horizon like a raging storm and not a soul around to correct the condition. God saw that no one intervened—no one stepped up to the plate. The situation was appalling yet no one intervened. So, God stepped in and intervened.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Isa 64:7 And there is none that calleth upon thy name, that stirreth up himself to take hold of thee: for thou hast hid thy face from us, and hast consumed us, because of our iniquities.

Eze 22:30 And I sought for a man among them, that should make up the hedge, and stand in the gap before me for the land, that I should not destroy it: but I found none.

17 For he put on righteousness as a breastplate, and an helmet of salvation upon his head; and he put on the garments of vengeance for clothing, and was clad with zeal as a cloak.

God put on his best suit and took on the fight. He put on righteousness like a suit of armor—he wrapped himself in jealous anger—and put a wrap of
passion on his shoulders and in his mighty power he takes on this miserable group of sinners.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Isa 11:5** And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

**Job 29:14** I put on righteousness, and it clothed me: my judgment was as a robe and a diadem.

**Joh 2:17** And his disciples remembered that it was written, The zeal of thine house hath eaten me up.

18**According to their deeds, accordingly he will repay, fury to his adversaries, recompence to his enemies; to the islands he will repay recompence.**

Raging in his fury God is going to repay his adversaries. He is reeking with anger and reprisals are in the works. This high God of ours is going to bring retribution to his enemies—no one will be too far off to avoid his due.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 63:6** And I will tread down the people in mine anger, and make them drunk in my fury, and I will bring down their strength to the earth.

**Isa 49:26** And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood, as with sweet wine: and all flesh shall know that I the LORD am thy Saviour and thy Redeemer, the mighty One of Jacob.

**Lam 4:11** The LORD hath accomplished his fury; he hath poured out his fierce anger, and hath kindled a fire in Zion, and it hath devoured the foundations thereof.

19**So shall they fear the name of the LORD from the west, and his glory from the rising of the sun. When the enemy shall come in like a flood, the Spirit of the LORD shall lift up a standard against him.**
When God sent Cyrus and knocked off Babylon it sent shock waves to all the nations—Cyrus came like a raging floodtide—the spirit of the LORD was in Cyrus and spurred him on like a Texas tornado.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

*Isa 49:12* Behold, these shall come from far: and, lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim. Read: *Isa 66:18-20*

> *And the Redeemer shall come to Zion, and unto them that turn from transgression in Jacob, saith the LORD.*

God says that he is coming to Zion and all who turn from their transgressions will be delivered by their redeemer.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:**

*Oba 1:17-21* But upon mount Zion shall be deliverance, and there shall be holiness; and the house of Jacob shall possess their possessions. And the house of Jacob shall be a fire, and the house of Joseph a flame, and the house of Esau for stubble, and they shall kindle in them, and devour them; and there shall not be any remaining of the house of Esau; for the LORD hath spoken it. And they of the south shall possess the mount of Esau; and they of the plain the Philistines: and they shall possess the fields of Ephraim, and the fields of Samaria: and Benjamin shall possess Gilead. And the captivity of this host of the children of Israel shall possess that of the Canaanites, even unto Zarephath; and the captivity of Jerusalem, which is in Sepharad, shall possess the cities of the south. And saviours shall come up on mount Zion to judge the mount of Esau; and the kingdom shall be the LORD’S.

> *As for me, this is my covenant with them, saith the LORD; My spirit that is upon thee, and my words which I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed’s seed, saith the LORD, from henceforth and for ever.*

When they returned from captivity God’s spirit was upon them—he put his word in their mouth—this word was a lamp to their feet and a light to their
path. They were to live by every word that came from the mouth of God—it was to remain with them and their seed forever.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

**Eze 37:24-26** And David my servant *shall be* king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them. And they shall dwell in the land that I have given unto Jacob my servant, wherein your fathers have dwelt; and they shall dwell therein, *even* they, and their children, and their children’s children for ever: and my servant David *shall be* their prince for ever. Moreover I will make a covenant of peace with them; it shall be an everlasting covenant with them: and I will place them, and multiply them, and will set my sanctuary in the midst of them for evermore.
ISAIAH CHAPTER 60

INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 60

Israel was to rise, shine in splendor. Darkness as black as night was to cover the rest of the world. Their hearts and minds were darkened because of blindness. From Zion rays of light flowed to other nations. Their sons and grandchildren were brought back by their captors. Merchants from around the world would be trading with Israel. Caravans and traders from Sheba and Midian came with their wares for trade, tribal leaders from Kedar brought sacrifices to Jerusalem. Ships sail into the ports like clouds—vessels from the islands, and ships from Spain are bringing their sons and daughters home with a cargo of trade. Foreigners will help in their building projects. Israel’s gates were open for tourists and trade. The gates shall be open continually means that they were closed at night for protection and opened in the day for visitors and trade. See the books of Nehemiah and Ezra for the building of these gates and how they were guarded. Cyrus, king of Persia, made a decree that bullocks, rams, lambs, wheat, salt, wine, oil, and tribute be brought to the Jews that were rebuilding Jerusalem and in the decree declared that any nation refusing to do so would be destroyed. This decree is found in Ezra 6:3-12. Zion is a boom town and no longer despised. She is called, “the city of the LORD.” Zion had been an animal sanctuary for 70 years, and is now being inhabited and a joy to all nations. Israel was trading on the world market—brass for gold—iron for silver—stones for iron. The good news was the lack of violence and border security. Their days of mourning were over—a new day had arrived—they were walking in the light of the LORD. As long as God’s people would do good and live right the land would remain theirs forever. God had planted them in their homeland like a garden in springtime. The prophet forecasts a population explosion. More insight is in the commentary section.
EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 60

1Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the LORD is risen upon thee.

Rise in splendor clothed in light—they were called upon to rise from the depression in which they had been held. Zion was the recipient and the reflector of God’s light.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Luk 1:78-79 Through the tender mercy of our God; whereby the dayspring from on high hath visited us, To give light to them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace.

Luk 2:32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel. Read: Isa 9:2

2For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the LORD shall arise upon thee, and his glory shall be seen upon thee.

Similar to the dark ages—their mind was darkened—the whole world was walking in darkness, they were alienated from God and had no true knowledge of the LORD. Their foolish heart was darkened because of the blindness of their heart. The light of the word of God brought enlightenment.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Rom 1:21 Because that, when they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened.

Eph 4:17-18 This I say therefore, and testify in the Lord, that ye henceforth walk not as other Gentiles walk, in the vanity of their mind, Having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the
ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart: Read: Act 26:18; 2Co 4:4-6

3And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising.

Rays of light flowed from Zion—kings from other nations paid them a visit and brought gifts.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Psa 68:29 Because of thy temple at Jerusalem shall kings bring presents unto thee.

Rev 11:15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

4Lift up thine eyes round about, and see: all they gather themselves together, they come to thee: thy sons shall come from far, and thy daughters shall be nursed at thy side.

Their grand and great grandchildren were brought home by their captors.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Isa 49:20-22 The children which thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the other, shall say again in thine ears, The place is too strait for me: give place to me that I may dwell. Then shalt thou say in thine heart, Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? and who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where had they been? Thus saith the Lord GOD, Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

5Then thou shalt see, and flow together, and thine heart shall fear, and be
enlarged; because the abundance of the sea shall be converted unto thee, the forces of the Gentiles shall come unto thee.

They will be thrilled when their relatives are returned like the flow of a mighty stream—the sea shall be converted unto thee meaning that their relatives who had been sold on the slave market were now returning to Zion along with the wealth of other nations.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Rom 11:25 For I would not, brethren, that ye should be ignorant of this mystery, lest ye should be wise in your own conceits; that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in. Read: Act 10:45; Isa 24:15

6The multitude of camels shall cover thee, the dromedaries of Midian and Ephah; all they from Sheba shall come: they shall bring gold and incense; and they shall shew forth the praises of the LORD.

Caravans and traders from Sheba, which was renown for wealth, and incense, and gold from Midian. They came with gifts, trade, and praise.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

1Ki 10:2 And she came to Jerusalem with a very great train, with camels that bare spices, and very much gold, and precious stones: and when she was come to Solomon, she communed with him of all that was in her heart. Read: Isa 45:14; Mal 1:11

7All the flocks of Kedar shall be gathered together unto thee, the rams of Nebaioth shall minister unto thee: they shall come up with acceptance on mine altar, and I will glorify the house of my glory.

Flocks from Kedar will be brought by the tribal leaders and offered in sacrifice at Jerusalem.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Hag 2:7-9** And I will shake all nations, and the desire of all nations shall come: and I will fill this house with glory, saith the LORD of hosts. The silver is mine, and the gold is mine, saith the LORD of hosts. The glory of this latter house shall be greater than of the former, saith the LORD of hosts: and in this place will I give peace, saith the LORD of hosts. Read: **Isa 56:7**

*Who are these that fly as a cloud, and as the doves to their windows?*

Ships are going to roll into port like clouds—their sails resemble fast moving clouds, and birds returning to their roosts.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Luk 13:29** And they shall come from the east, and from the west, and from the north, and from the south, and shall sit down in the kingdom of God.

**Rev 7:9** After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands;

*Surely the isles shall wait for me, and the ships of Tarshish first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them, unto the name of the LORD thy God, and to the Holy One of Israel, because he hath glorified thee.*

These vessels assembling from coast lands and islands led by the ships from Spain will bring your sons and daughters, silver and gold and other precious cargo for trade and all because God has glorified Israel.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

**Isa 66:19-20** And I will set a sign among them, and I will send those that escape of them unto the nations, to Tarshish, Pul, and Lud, that draw the bow, to Tubal, and Javan, to the isles afar off, that have not heard my fame, neither
have seen my glory; and they shall declare my glory among the Gentiles. And they shall bring all your brethren for an offering unto the LORD out of all nations upon horses, and in chariots, and in litters, and upon mules, and upon swift beasts, to my holy mountain Jerusalem, saith the LORD, as the children of Israel bring an offering in a clean vessel into the house of the LORD.

Zep 2:11 The LORD will be terrible unto them: for he will famish all the gods of the earth; and men shall worship him, every one from his place, even all the isles of the heathen.

10 And the sons of strangers shall build up thy walls, and their kings shall minister unto thee: for in my wrath I smote thee, but in my favour have I had mercy on thee.

Sons of foreigners with their building skills will help build their walls—kings will wait on you. I struck you down now I am lifting you up.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 61:5 And strangers shall stand and feed your flocks, and the sons of the alien shall be your plowmen and your vinedressers.

Ezr 6:3-12 In the first year of Cyrus the king the same Cyrus the king made a decree concerning the house of God at Jerusalem, Let the house be builded, the place where they offered sacrifices, and let the foundations thereof be strongly laid; the height thereof threescore cubits, and the breadth thereof threescore cubits; With three rows of great stones, and a row of new timber: and let the expenses be given out of the king’s house: And also let the golden and silver vessels of the house of God, which Nebuchadnezzar took forth out of the temple which is at Jerusalem, and brought unto Babylon, be restored, and brought again unto the temple which is at Jerusalem, every one to his place, and place them in the house of God. Now therefore, Tatnai, governor beyond the river, Shetharboznai, and your companions the Apharsachites, which are beyond the river, be ye far from thence: Let the work of this house of God alone; let the governor of the Jews and the elders of the Jews build this house of God in his place. Moreover I make a decree what ye shall do to the elders of these Jews for the building of this house of God: that of the king’s goods, even of the tribute beyond the river, forthwith expenses be given unto these men, that they be not hindered. And that which they have need of, both young
bullocks, and rams, and lambs, for the burnt offerings of the God of heaven, wheat, salt, wine, and oil, according to the appointment of the priests which are at Jerusalem, let it be given them day by day without fail: That they may offer sacrifices of sweet savours unto the God of heaven, and pray for the life of the king, and of his sons. Also I have made a decree, that whosoever shall alter this word, let timber be pulled down from his house, and being set up, let him be hanged thereon; and let his house be made a dunghill for this. And the God that hath caused his name to dwell there destroy all kings and people, that shall put to their hand to alter and to destroy this house of God which is at Jerusalem. I Darius have made a decree; let it be done with speed.

11Therefore thy gates shall be open continually; they shall not be shut day nor night; that men may bring unto thee the forces of the Gentiles, and that their kings may be brought.

The gates shall be open continually means that they were closed at night for protection and opened in the day for visitors and trade. See the books of Nehemiah and Ezra for the building of these gates and how they were guarded.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Dan 2:35 Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors; and the wind carried them away, that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth.

Dan 2:44-45 And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever. Forasmuch as thou sawest that the stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it brake in pieces the iron, the brass, the clay, the silver, and the gold; the great God hath made known to the king what shall come to pass hereafter: and the dream is certain, and the interpretation thereof sure.

12For the nation and kingdom that will not serve thee shall perish; yea, those nations shall be utterly wasted.
Cyrus, king of Persia, made a decree that bullocks, rams, lambs, wheat, salt, wine, oil, and tribute be brought to the Jews that were rebuilding Jerusalem and in the decree declared that any nation refusing to do so would be destroyed. This decree is found in Ezra 6:3-12. Quoted in verse ten.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Pro 21:1 The king’s heart is in the hand of the LORD, as the rivers of water: he turneth it whithersoever he will.

Ezr 7:27 Blessed be the LORD God of our fathers, which hath put such a thing as this in the king’s heart, to beautify the house of the LORD which is in Jerusalem:

13 The glory of Lebanon shall come unto thee, the fir tree, the pine tree, and the box together, to beautify the place of my sanctuary; and I will make the place of my feet glorious.

Cyrus gave orders to the forester in charge of the forests of Lebanon to supply all the materials necessary for this rebuilding project.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 35:2 It shall blossom abundantly, and rejoice even with joy and singing: the glory of Lebanon shall be given unto it, the excellency of Carmel and Sharon, they shall see the glory of the LORD, and the excellency of our God.

Hos 14:6-7 His branches shall spread, and his beauty shall be as the olive tree, and his smell as Lebanon. They that dwell under his shadow shall return; they shall revive as the corn, and grow as the vine: the scent thereof shall be as the wine of Lebanon.

14 The sons also of them that afflicted thee shall come bending unto thee; and all they that despised thee shall bow themselves down at the soles of thy feet; and they shall call thee; The city of the LORD, The Zion of the Holy One of Israel.
The tables are turned—masters became servants—Zion is no longer despised but called “the city of the LORD.”

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 62:12** And they shall call them, The holy people, The redeemed of the LORD: and thou shalt be called, Sought out, A city not forsaken.

**Isa 14:1-2** For the LORD will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land: and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob. And the people shall take them, and bring them to their place: and the house of Israel shall possess them in the land of the LORD for servants and handmaids: and they shall take them captives, whose captives they were; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

15 Whereas thou has been forsaken and hated, so that no man went through thee, I will make thee an eternal excellency, a joy of many generations.

This land and city had been an animal sanctuary while they were in exile. Now they were a joy to Jacob and the pride to other nations.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:**

**Jer 33:11** The voice of joy, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride, the voice of them that shall say, Praise the LORD of hosts: for the LORD is good; for his mercy endureth for ever: and of them that shall bring the sacrifice of praise into the house of the LORD. For I will cause to return the captivity of the land, as at the first, saith the LORD.

**Lam 1:1-2** How doth the city sit solitary, that was full of people! how is she become as a widow! she that was great among the nations, and princess among the provinces, how is she become tributary! She weepeth sore in the night, and her tears are on her cheeks: among all her lovers she hath none to comfort her: all her friends have dealt treacherously with her, they are become her enemies.

16 Thou shalt also suck the milk of the Gentiles, and shalt suck the breast
of kings: and thou shalt know that I the LORD am thy Saviour and thy Redeemer, the mighty One of Jacob.

The term suck the milk of Gentiles, and suck the breast of kings is figurative language, representing the great wealth that would come to them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Isa 66:11-12  That ye may suck, and be satisfied with the breasts of her consolations; that ye may milk out, and be delighted with the abundance of her glory. For thus saith the LORD, Behold, I will extend peace to her like a river, and the glory of the Gentiles like a flowing stream: then shall ye suck, ye shall be borne upon her sides, and be dandled upon her knees.

17For brass I will bring gold, and for iron I will bring silver, and for wood brass, and for stones iron: I will also make thy officers peace, and thine exactors righteousness.

They would barter brass for gold, iron for silver, wood for brass, and stones for iron. They were importing and exporting the aforementioned items.

18Violence shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction within thy borders; but thou shalt call thy walls Salvation, and thy gates Praise.

The news of the day will not be violence nor ruin and wreck of your borders. Your walls will be named salvation and your gates praises.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Psa 72:3-4  The mountains shall bring peace to the people, and the little hills, by righteousness. He shall judge the poor of the people, he shall save the children of the needy, and shall break in pieces the oppressor.

Mic 4:3  And he shall judge among many people, and rebuke strong nations afar off; and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up a sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.
19 The sun shall be no more thy light by day; neither for brightness shall the moon give light unto thee: but the LORD shall be unto thee an everlasting light, and thy God thy glory.

Your days of mourning will end—grieving has come to an end—you are a permanent possession in the land and your sun will never go down and your moon will never fade. You will be walking in God’s sunlight all of your journey.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Psalm 36:9 For with thee is the fountain of life: in thy light shall we see light.

Revelation 21:23 And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof.

Luke 2:32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel.

20 Thy sun shall no more go down; neither shall thy moon withdraw itself: for the LORD shall be thine everlasting light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended.

From a poetical standpoint the prophets saw God as their sun and shield and a fountain of water.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Psalm 84:11 For the LORD God is a sun and shield: the LORD will give grace and glory: no good thing will he withhold from them that walk uprightly.

Malachi 4:2 But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall.

Isaiah 30:19 For the people shall dwell in Zion at Jerusalem: thou shalt weep no more: he will be very gracious unto thee at the voice of thy cry; when he shall hear it, he will answer thee.

Isaiah 35:10 And the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion
with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and
 gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away. Read: Rev 7:15-17

21Thy people also shall be all righteous: they shall inherit the land for ever,
the branch of my planting, the work of my hands, that I may be glorified.

My people shall live right and do good and the land shall always be theirs. I
have planted them back in their homeland and they will grown up like plants
in a garden.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Zec 14:20-21 In that day shall there be upon the bells of the horses,
HOLINESS UNTO THE LORD; and the pots in the LORD’S house shall
be like the bowls before the altar. Yea, every pot in Jerusalem and in Judah
shall be holiness unto the LORD of hosts: and all they that sacrifice shall
come and take of them, and seethe therein: and in that day there shall be no
more the Canaanite in the house of the LORD of hosts.

Isa 61:3 To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty
for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of
heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the
LORD, that he might be glorified.

22A little one shall become a thousand, and a small one a strong nation:
I the LORD will hasten it in his time.

It would be a time of population explosion for Jacob.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 66:8 Who hath heard such a thing? who hath seen such things? Shall the
t earth be made to bring forth in one day? or shall a nation be born at once? for
as soon as Zion travailed, she brought forth her children.

Rev 7:9 After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number,
of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and
before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands;
God sends Cyrus to open the prisons—this is the year of the LORD’s pardon and the day of vengeance of our God on the heathen nation, who had been a part of the exile. God appointed Israel beauty for ashes—a garland for a head dress instead of marking one’s self with ashes. They removed the old mourning robe and wore a robe of joy. They wore a suit of praise instead of a garment of despondency. They were the trees of righteousness, the planting of the LORD. My two commentaries on Ezra and Nehemiah give a full description of repairing the breach and building the former desolations. Foreigners will feed your flocks, plow your fields, and dress your vines. Israel will be famous and the wealth of nations flow to them. Read the commentary section for more information.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 61

'The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me; because the LORD hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

God had put his spirit in Cyrus and instructed him to release these people in prison. This verse is quoted in the New Testament and applied to our Messiah. Prophecy has a primary fulfillment and also a secondary fulfillment or in other words as history repeats itself. However, as you read the entire chapter you will see the following statements, “He hath sent me… day of wrath to their enemies.” V. 2 and “they shall rebuild the ancient ruins.” V.4 This verse as well as the rest of the chapter has its fulfillment when the exiles returned.
The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

To proclaim the acceptable year of the LORD, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn;

The acceptable year of the LORD, and the day of vengeance of our God refers to the end of Babylonian captivity and the slaughter of Israel’s enemies.

For this is the day of the Lord GOD of hosts, a day of vengeance, that he may avenge him of his adversaries: and the sword shall devour, and it shall be satiated and made drunk with their blood: for the Lord GOD of hosts hath a sacrifice in the north country by the river Euphrates.

To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the LORD, that he might be glorified.

The year of the LORD’s pardon and the prisons opened by Cyrus; God appointed to those that mourned in Zion beauty for ashes—a garland for a head dress instead of marking one’s self with ashes. They were to remove the mourning robe and wear the robe of joy—They were to wear the garment of praise, instead of the garment of despondency. They were called trees of righteousness, the planting of the LORD.

Thou hast turned for me my mourning into dancing: thou hast put off my sackcloth, and girded me with gladness; To the end that my glory
may sing praise to thee, and not be silent. O LORD my God, I will give thanks unto thee for ever.

*And they shall build the old wastes, they shall raise up the former desolations, and they shall repair the waste cities, the desolations of many generations.*

Read my two books of Ezra and Nehemiah which deal with the building of the old waste, and raising up of former desolations, and repairing of waste cities.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT MAKE THE CASE:**

**Isa 58:12** And *they that shall be* of thee shall build the old waste places: thou shalt raise up the foundations of many generations; and thou shalt be called, The repairer of the breach, The restorer of paths to dwell in.

*And strangers shall stand and feed your flocks, and the sons of the alien shall be your plowmen and your vinedressers.*

Foreigners will feed your flocks and tend your farms. Aliens will plow your ground and be your vine dressers.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT INDORESE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 60:10-14** And the sons of strangers shall build up thy walls, and their kings shall minister unto thee: for in my wrath I smote thee, but in my favour have I had mercy on thee. Therefore thy gates shall be open continually; they shall not be shut day nor night; that *men* may bring unto thee the forces of the Gentiles, and *that* their kings *may be* brought. For the nation and kingdom that will not serve thee shall perish; yea, *those* nations shall be utterly wasted. The glory of Lebanon shall come unto thee, the fir tree, the pine tree, and the box together, to beautify the place of my sanctuary; and I will make the place of my feet glorious. The sons also of them that afflicted thee shall come bending unto thee; and all they that despised thee shall bow themselves down at the soles of thy feet; and they shall call thee, The city of the LORD, The Zion of the Holy One of Israel.
6But ye shall be named the Priests of the LORD: men shall call you the Ministers of our God: ye shall eat the riches of the Gentiles, and in their glory shall ye boast yourselves.

Your title will be “priests of God.” You are going to have the wealth of other nations and with their riches you will be famous.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Exo 19:6 And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.

7For your shame ye shall have double; and for confusion they shall rejoice in their portion: therefore in their land they shall possess the double: everlasting joy shall be unto them.

Because Israel suffered a double portion and foul treatment in exile (disgrace, dishonor, contempt, insult and jeers) they will inherit a double portion of wealth and everlasting joy in their land.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 35:10 And the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

8For I the LORD love judgment, I hate robbery for burnt offering; and I will direct their work in truth, and I will make an everlasting covenant with them.

God loves fair dealings and hates thievery and crime. The everlasting covenant is mentioned in Jer. 31:31 and Heb. 8:10.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Jer 7:8-11 Behold, ye trust in lying words, that cannot profit. Will ye steal, murder, and commit adultery, and swear falsely, and burn incense unto Baal,
and walk after other gods whom ye know not; And come and stand before me in this house, which is called by my name, and say, We are delivered to do all these abominations? Is this house, which is called by my name, become a den of robbers in your eyes? Behold, even I have seen it, saith the LORD.

9And their seed shall be known among the Gentiles, and their offspring among the people: all that see them shall acknowledge them, that they are the seed which the LORD hath blessed.

Israel’s seed shall be known in every place. Everyone will acknowledge that they are a race favored by the LORD!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Gen 22:18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.

10I will greatly rejoice in the LORD, my soul shall be joyful in my God; for he hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels.

He clothed them in a robe of salvation and in a garment of integrity. All dressed up like a bride and groom on a wedding day.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Eze 16:10-14 I clothed thee also with broidered work, and shod thee with badgers’ skin, and I girded thee about with fine linen, and I covered thee with silk. I decked thee also with ornaments, and I put bracelets upon thy hands, and a chain on thy neck. And I put a jewel on thy forehead, and earrings in thine ears, and a beautiful crown upon thine head. Thus wast thou decked with gold and silver; and thy raiment was of fine linen, and silk, and broidered work; thou didst eat fine flour, and honey, and oil: and thou wast exceeding beautiful, and thou didst prosper into a kingdom. And thy renown went forth among the heathen for thy beauty: for it was perfect through my comeliness, which I had put upon thee, saith the Lord GOD.
"For as the earth bringeth forth her bud, and as the garden causeth the things that are sown in it to spring forth; so the Lord GOD will cause righteousness and praise to spring forth before all the nations.

It’s like budding of trees or day lilies in springtime so the LORD will make righteousness and praise blossom before all nations.

Isa 60:18 Violence shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction within thy borders; but thou shalt call thy walls Salvation, and thy gates Praise.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 62

The prophet couldn’t hold his tongue and stop praying till the judges were restored, and Zion’s converts were righteous and salvation went forth like a blazing fire. Zion will be a crown of splendor and a royal diadem. Zion will no longer be called the God forsaken land. Their new names are Hephzibah and Beulah, meaning “God’s delight” and “The Bride.” The maker of atoms and angels is pleased with his new bride. Sentinels were interceding day and night for God to fulfill his promise. God swore by an oath that the foreigners would not eat their produce or drink their wine. The exiles are told to pass through the gates of Babylon and build roads to return to the homeland on. They are called a holy people—redeemed and saved. They will no longer be called forsaken by God but a people sought out.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 62

1For Zion’s sake will I not hold my peace, and for Jerusalem’s sake I will not rest, until the righteousness thereof go forth as brightness, and the salvation thereof as a lamp that burneth.

He couldn’t hold his tongue and stop praying till the judges were restored, and her converts with righteousness, and her salvation goes forth like a blazing torch.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 62:6-7 I have set watchmen upon thy walls, O Jerusalem, which shall never hold their peace day nor night: ye that make mention of the LORD, keep not silence, And give him no rest, till he establish, and till he make Jerusalem a praise in the earth.
Lewis P. Hussell

2And the Gentiles shall see thy righteousness, and all kings thy glory: and thou shalt be called by a new name, which the mouth of the LORD shall name.

Foreign nations will see your righteousness—world leaders will see your glory. You will be renamed. See comments in Isa. 65:15.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 49:6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.

3Thou shalt also be a crown of glory in the hand of the LORD, and a royal diadem in the hand of thy God.

You will be a crown of splendor and a royal diadem carried in the hand of your God.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Zec 9:16 And the LORD their God shall save them in that day as the flock of his people: for they shall be as the stones of a crown, lifted up as an ensign upon his land.

4Thou shalt no more be termed Forsaken; neither shall thy land any more be termed Desolate: but thou shalt be called Hephzibah, and thy land Beulah: for the LORD delighteth in thee, and thy land shall be married.

You will no longer be called “The God forsaken land.” You will have a new name. “God’s delight,” you will be married to me.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Hos 2:19-20 And I will betroth thee unto me for ever; yea, I will betroth
thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies. I will even betroth thee unto me in faithfulness: and thou shalt know the LORD.

5 For as a young man marrieth a virgin, so shall thy sons marry thee: and as the bridegroom rejoiceth over the bride, so shall thy God rejoice over thee.

The maker and builder of the universe is thrilled with his bride. Everything is looking like a planned wedding celebration.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 65:19 And I will rejoice in Jerusalem, and joy in my people: and the voice of weeping shall be no more heard in her, nor the voice of crying.

6 I have set watchmen upon thy walls, O Jerusalem, which shall never hold their peace day nor night: ye that make mention of the LORD, keep not silence,

The watchmen on the walls were crying day and night for the fulfillment of God’s promises.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

2Ch 8:14 And he appointed, according to the order of David his father, the courses of the priests to their service, and the Levites to their charges, to praise and minister before the priests, as the duty of every day required: the porters also by their courses at every gate: for so had David the man of God commanded.

7 And give him no rest, till he establish, and till he make Jerusalem a praise in the earth.

The sentinels were intercessors on the waling walls invoking God’s blessing upon Zion—they were to take no rest or give God rest till he made Jerusalem the most renowned city on earth.
The LORD hath sworn by his right hand, and by the arm of his strength, Surely I will no more give thy corn to be meat for thine enemies; and the sons of the stranger shall not drink thy wine, for the which thou hast laboured:

God has raised his right hand and arm and sworn by his power that their enemies shall not eat their produce, or beef production or, drink their wine.

And they shall build houses, and inhabit them; and they shall plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them. They shall not build, and another inhabit; they shall not plant, and another eat: for as the days of a tree are the days of my people, and mine elect shall long enjoy the work of their hands. They shall not labour in vain, nor bring forth for trouble; for they are the seed of the blessed of the LORD, and their offspring with them.

They raised it and a tenth of it went to the store house at the temple for the temples staff, and widows and strangers within the gates. Those who had labored in the harvest or gathered the clusters of grapes were to enjoy the vintage.

And there ye shall eat before the LORD your God, and ye shall rejoice in all that ye put your hand unto, ye and your households, wherein the LORD thy God hath blessed thee.

Go through, go through the gates; prepare ye the way of the people; cast up, cast up the highway; gather out the stones; lift up a standard for the people.
They are told to pass through the gates—the means by which they left Babylon and build a highway—remove stones and debris—march under the flag of Israel for everyone to see.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORESE THE TEXT:

Isa 18:3 All ye inhabitants of the world, and dwellers on the earth, see ye, when he lifteh up an ensign on the mountains; and when he bloweth a trumpet, hear ye.

Behold, the LORD hath proclaimed unto the end of the world, Say ye to the daughter of Zion, Behold, thy salvation cometh; behold, his reward is with him, and his work before him.

Your deliverance has come—he will do what he said and complete his promises.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Mar 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Psa 98:1-3 A Psalm. O sing unto the LORD a new song; for he hath done marvellous things: his right hand, and his holy arm, hath gotten him the victory. The LORD hath made known his salvation: his righteousness hath he openly shewed in the sight of the heathen. He hath remembered his mercy and his truth toward the house of Israel: all the ends of the earth have seen the salvation of our God.

And they shall call them, The holy people, The redeemed of the LORD: and thou shalt be called, Sought out, A city not forsaken.

They are a chosen generation—a holy people—redeemed and saved. They will no longer be called forsaken but a people sought out. You will be called by new names: Holy people, God-redeemed—sought-out—a city not forsaken. The land of God’s delight—the Bride.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 60:21** Thy people also *shall be* all righteous: they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of my planting, the work of my hands, that I may be glorified.

**Exo 19:5-6** Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people: for all the earth *is* mine: And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation. These *are* the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 63

Edom—brother of Israel thru Esau. The land of Edom” Gen. 36:16, was mountainous. It was called “the mountain of Seir.” It is a wild and rugged region, and its old capital was Bozrah Isa 63:1. The early inhabitants of the land were Horites. They were destroyed by the Edomites Deut. 2:12. At the time of the Exodus they refused permission to the Israelites to pass through their land Num. 20:14-21, and always maintained an attitude of hostility toward them. They were conquered by David 2 Sam 8:14, and afterwards by Amaziah 2 Ch. 25:11. But they regained their independence, and in later years, during the decline of the Jewish kingdom 2 Ki. 16:6, made war against Israel. They took part with the Chaldeans when Nebuchadnezzar captured Jerusalem, and afterwards they invaded and held possession of the south of Palestine as far as Hebron. At length, however, Edom fell under the growing Babylonian power Jer. 27:3-6. The present desolate condition of that land is a standing testimony to the inspiration of these prophecies. After an existence as a people for above seventeen hundred years, they have utterly disappeared, and their language even is forgotten for ever. In Petra, “where kings kept their court, and where nobles assembled, there no man dwells; it is given by lot to birds, and beasts, and reptiles.” God has deeded all the land of Edom to be a wildlife refuge forever.

Jer 27:3-6 And send them to the king of Edom, and to the king of Moab, and to the king of the Ammonites, and to the king of Tyrus, and to the king of Zidon, by the hand of the messengers which come to Jerusalem unto Zedekiah king of Judah; And command them to say unto their masters, Thus saith the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel; Thus shall ye say unto your masters; I have made the earth, the man and the beast that are upon the ground, by my great power and by my outstretched arm, and have given it unto whom it seemed meet unto me. And now have I given all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, my servant; and the beasts of the field have I given him also to serve him.
No student of prophecy will be satisfied till he learns the full story of Edom. Genesis 25 records the birth of Esau (Edom), Rebecca had two nations in her womb, then Jacob bought Esau birth right—Esau's land inheritance resulted in Esau becoming so embittered that he decided to kill Jacob. First we see Esau in Sacred History. Then we trace his lineage to Mt. Seir, and his nation was known as Edom. A full list of the dukes and kings are recorded in Genesis. This nation always gave Israel trouble 2 Sam 8:14. After 7 centuries these nations existed side by side, the older made servant to the younger by David. The rivalry and cruelty of Edom were not able to keep his stubborn neck from the yoke. In the days of Jeorham, king of Judah, they revolted. 2 Kings 8:2 Later Amaziah was back at war with Edom. 2 Kings 14:7 2 Ch. 25:12 The Edomites were often subject to the Jews, and the Jews were never the servants of the Edomites. Thus the prophecy was fulfilled for 13 centuries. Take a trip up Mount Seir and you will see the ruins of thirty cities utterly laid waste and desolate all of these ruins lay within 3 days journey of the Red Sea. These cities and their ruins can be viewed on the internet. The Edomites have disappeared from the earth. They have not been heard from since the second century. The land that they inhabited is a God forsaken land that is occupied by animals. God gave this territory to the animals and tells us that their deed is perpetual. This territory is guarded by Arabs with a degree of hostility scarcely paralleled. They do not live there and allow no one else to. Archeologist write about the numerous tombs, ancient sepulchers, mausoleums, fragments of columns, ruins of palaces. Edom is nothing more than a grave yard inhabited by snakes, scorpions, lions, etc. Esau had married two heathen wives and a daughter of Ishmael. He hated God and the Jewish religion. He sold his birthright and was a profane man. He went down the path of superstition and wickedness. They lived by kidnapping and plunder. Their territory was called the border of wickedness. "From this remote past the prophecy hung over him. And now his capital city rises up to testify to the truth of heaven. A city of rock, its temples, theaters, palaces, triumphal arches, dwelling houses, aqueducts, all hewn out of solid rock, presenting one of the greatest lessons in the whole world. A vast amphitheater surrounded by mountains on all sides, in their native grandeur, lifting their summits five or six hundred feet high, the city of rock, the capital of Edom, (Petra) lies in desolation. The tombs and mausoleums in number and greatness testify to the fact that long ago kings ruled in that land. Where are they now? Shall we believe Moses and the prophets, when we see a city as imperishable as the rock-ribbed hills, her monuments of greatness forsaken, not a foot of man to tread her streets, worship in her temples, visit her theaters or live in her palaces? This city so singular, so remote in origin, so rich in historical associations, as beautiful in desolation, stands forth as a colossal
monument to the veracity of the prophets of God.” The Prophecies Unveiled by A.M. Morris P.26, 27. (1914)

Now to the testimony of Scriptures.

Gen 25:19-33 Now these are the records of the generations of Isaac, Abraham’s son: Abraham became the father of Isaac; and Isaac was forty years old when he took Rebekah, the daughter of Bethuel the Aramean of Paddan-aram, the sister of Laban the Aramean, to be his wife. And Isaac prayed to the LORD on behalf of his wife, because she was barren; and the LORD answered him and Rebekah his wife conceived. But the children struggled together within her; and she said, “If it is so, why then am I this way?” So she went to inquire of the LORD. And the LORD said to her, “Two nations are in your womb; And two peoples shall be separated from your body; And one people shall be stronger than the other; And the older shall serve the younger.” When her days to be delivered were fulfilled, behold, there were twins in her womb. Now the first came forth red, all over like a hairy garment; and they named him Esau. And afterward his brother came forth with his hand holding on to Esau’s heel, so his name was called Jacob; and Isaac was sixty years old when she gave birth to them. When the boys grew up, Esau became a skillful hunter, a man of the field; but Jacob was a peaceful man, living in tents. Now Isaac loved Esau, because he had a taste for game; but Rebekah loved Jacob. And when Jacob had cooked stew, Esau came in from the field and he was famished; and Esau said to Jacob, “Please let me have a swallow of that red stuff there, for I am famished.” Therefore his name was called Edom. But Jacob said, “First sell me your birthright.” And Esau said, “Behold, I am about to die; so of what use then is the birthright to me?” And Jacob said, “First swear to me”; so he swore to him, and sold his birthright to Jacob. Read: Heb 12:14-17; Mal 1:2-5; Oba 1:1-17; Eze 35:1-15; Jer 49:14-21; Isa 34:10-17; Psa 83:1-8

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 63

‘Who is this that cometh from Edom, with dyed garments from Bozrah? this that is glorious in his apparel, travelling in the greatness of his strength? I that speak in righteousness, mighty to save.

See my commentary on Amos 1:11 for a description of Edom. Edom was Esau, who was a brother of Jacob, who was Israel. Predicted in Gen. 27:40
Lewis P. Hussell

God will not tolerate any improper motive against his people. This one who comes from Edom is our Messiah—his garments are dyed red with blood. He is announcing vindication for he marched in the fullness of his strength. Bozrah was the chief town of Edom.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Isa 34:5-6 For my sword shall be bathed in heaven: behold, it shall come down upon Idumea, and upon the people of my curse, to judgment. The sword of the LORD is filled with blood, it is made fat with fatness, and with the blood of lambs and goats, with the fat of the kidneys of rams: for the LORD hath a sacrifice in Bozrah, and a great slaughter in the land of Idumea.

Psa 137:7 Remember, O LORD, the children of Edom in the day of Jerusalem; who said, Rase it, rase it, even to the foundation thereof.

Amo 1:12 But I will send a fire upon Teman, which shall devour the palaces of Bozrah.

Wherefore art thou red in thine apparel, and thy garments like him that treadeth in the winefat?

His clothes looked like he had been in a wine press tromping on the grapes—the winepress is a symbol of a blood battle.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Isa 25:10 For in this mountain shall the hand of the LORD rest, and Moab shall be trodden down under him, even as straw is trodden down for the dunghill.

Lam 1:15 The Lord hath trodden under foot all my mighty men in the midst of me: he hath called an assembly against me to crush my young men: the Lord hath trodden the virgin, the daughter of Judah, as in a winepress.

I have trodden the winepress alone; and of the people there was none with me: for I will tread them in mine anger, and trample them in my
fury; and their blood shall be sprinkled upon my garments, and I will stain all my raiment.

Jesus says that he had to tread the winepress alone for no man helped him. No nation had made war with Edom for its wrong doing. The Messiah says he will tread them in his fury and they will be trod down in his rage. His garment was stained with Edom’s blood.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Mal 4:3 And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the LORD of hosts. Read: Rev 19:13-15

4For the day of vengeance is in mine heart, and the year of my redeemed is come.

The clock had run down—the Messiah had waited long enough—vengeance was mine saith the LORD.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 34:8 For it is the day of the LORD’S vengeance, and the year of recompences for the controversy of Zion.

5And I looked, and there was none to help; and I wondered that there was none to uphold: therefore mine own arm brought salvation unto me; and my fury, it upheld me.

I looked, amazed and astonished that no one had meted out vengeance, so I took on the job alone.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 59:16-18 And he saw that there was no man, and wondered that there was no intercessor: therefore his arm brought salvation unto him; and his righteousness, it sustained him. For he put on righteousness as a breastplate,
and an helmet of salvation upon his head; and he put on the garments of vengeance for clothing, and was clad with zeal as a cloke. According to their deeds, accordingly he will repay, fury to his adversaries, recompence to his enemies; to the islands he will repay recompence.

6And I will tread down the people in mine anger, and make them drunk in my fury, and I will bring down their strength to the earth.

The Messiah crushed Edom in his fury—today Edom is a wasteland and there are no Edomites.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Psa 60:3 Thou hast shewed thy people hard things: thou hast made us to drink the wine of astonishment.

Isa 51:21-23 Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, but not with wine: Thus saith thy Lord the LORD, and thy God that pleadeth the cause of his people, Behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, even the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again: But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; which have said to thy soul, Bow down, that we may go over: and thou hast laid thy body as the ground, and as the street, to them that went over.

7I will mention the lovingkindnesses of the LORD, and the praises of the LORD, according to all that the LORD hath bestowed on us, and the great goodness toward the house of Israel, which he hath bestowed on them according to his mercies, and according to the multitude of his lovingkindnesses.

The loving kindness of the LORD must never be forgotten or neglected to be taught. We must reflect upon what he has done for us.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Zec 9:17 For how great is his goodness, and how great is his beauty! corn shall make the young men cheerful, and new wine the maids. Read: Neh 9:19-21
8For he said, Surely they are my people, children that will not lie: so he was their Saviour.

God had high expectations for his people—“surely they are my people, children that will not lie.” So he became their savior.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Exo 3:7 And the LORD said, I have surely seen the affliction of my people which are in Egypt, and have heard their cry by reason of their taskmasters; for I know their sorrows;

Psa 78:36 Nevertheless they did flatter him with their mouth, and they lied unto him with their tongues.

9In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old.

He rescued them from Egypt and carried them along and put up with them for a long, long time.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Jdg 10:16 And they put away the strange gods from among them, and served the LORD: and his soul was grieved for the misery of Israel.

Act 7:34-35 I have seen, I have seen the affliction of my people which is in Egypt, and I have heard their groaning, and am come down to deliver them. And now come, I will send thee into Egypt. This Moses whom they refused, saying, Who made thee a ruler and a judge? the same did God send to be a ruler and a deliverer by the hand of the angel which appeared to him in the bush.

10But they rebelled, and vexed his holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them.
They turned on him and he turned on them and he poured out his fury on them and burnt their strongholds and destroyed their palaces.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Eze 6:9** And they that escape of you shall remember me among the nations whither they shall be carried captives, because I am broken with their whorish heart, which hath departed from me, and with their eyes, which go a whoring after their idols: and they shall loathe themselves for the evils which they have committed in all their abominations.

**Act 7:51** Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.

**Lam 2:4-5** He hath bent his bow like an enemy: he stood with his right hand as an adversary, and slew all that were pleasant to the eye in the tabernacle of the daughter of Zion: he poured out his fury like fire. The Lord was as an enemy: he hath swallowed up Israel, he hath swallowed up all her palaces: he hath destroyed his strong holds, and hath increased in the daughter of Judah mourning and lamentation.

"Then he remembered the days of old, Moses, and his people, saying, Where is he that brought them up out of the sea with the shepherd of his flock? where is he that put his holy Spirit within him?"

They remembered the story of the exodus and now they are saying “What happened to his Holy Spirit?”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Num 11:17** And I will come down and talk with thee there: and I will take of the spirit which is upon thee, and will put it upon them; and they shall bear the burden of the people with thee, that thou bear it not thyself alone.

**Num 11:25** And the LORD came down in a cloud, and spake unto him, and took of the spirit that was upon him, and gave it unto the seventy elders: and it came to pass, that, when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied, and did not cease.
A Commentary on Isaiah

12 That led them by the right hand of Moses with his glorious arm, dividing the water before them, to make himself an everlasting name?

What happened to this God who took Moses by the hand and divided the water and made himself an everlasting name?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Lev 26:40-45 If they shall confess their iniquity, and the iniquity of their fathers, with their trespass which they trespassed against me, and that also they have walked contrary unto me; And that I also have walked contrary unto them, and have brought them into the land of their enemies; if then their uncircumcised hearts be humbled, and they then accept of the punishment of their iniquity: Then will I remember my covenant with Jacob, and also my covenant with Isaac, and also my covenant with Abraham will I remember; and I will remember the land. The land also shall be left of them, and shall enjoy her sabbaths, while she lieth desolate without them: and they shall accept of the punishment of their iniquity: because, even because they despised my judgments, and because their soul abhorred my statutes. And yet for all that, when they be in the land of their enemies, I will not cast them away, neither will I abhor them, to destroy them utterly, and to break my covenant with them: for I am the LORD their God. But I will for their sakes remember the covenant of their ancestors, whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt in the sight of the heathen, that I might be their God: I am the LORD.

13 That led them through the deep, as an horse in the wilderness, that they should not stumble?

Where is he who accomplished the Red Sea crossing?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Psa 106:9 He rebuked the Red sea also, and it was dried up: so he led them through the depths, as through the wilderness.

14 As a beast goeth down into the valley, the Spirit of the LORD caused him to rest: so didst thou lead thy people, to make thyself a glorious name.
What has happened to this God that led Moses and Israel through the deep sea like sure footed horses running in the wild?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Hab 3:15 Thou didst walk through the sea with thine horses, through the heap of great waters.

15Look down from heaven, and behold from the habitation of thy holiness and of thy glory: where is thy zeal and thy strength, the sounding of thy bowels and of thy mercies toward me? are they restrained?

O LORD, look down from the window of your heavenly palace, and tell us what ever happened to your mercy—your love for us—your compassion. Where are they now?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Psa 80:14 Return, we beseech thee, O God of hosts: look down from heaven, and behold, and visit this vine;

Psa 102:19 For he hath looked down from the height of his sanctuary; from heaven did the LORD behold the earth;

Hos 11:8 How shall I give thee up, Ephraim? how shall I deliver thee, Israel? how shall I make thee as Admah? how shall I set thee as Zeboim? mine heart is turned within me, my repentings are kindled together.

16Doubtless thou art our father, though Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not: thou, O LORD, art our father, our redeemer; thy name is from everlasting.

We still recognize thee as our Father even if Abraham and Jacob disown us.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 64:8 But now, O LORD, thou art our father; we are the clay, and thou our potter; and we all are the work of thy hand.
Isa 43:14-15 Thus saith the LORD, your redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; For your sake I have sent to Babylon, and have brought down all their nobles, and the Chaldeans, whose cry is in the ships. I am the LORD, your Holy One, the creator of Israel, your King.

_17O LORD, why hast thou made us to err from thy ways, and hardened our heart from thy fear? Return for thy servants’ sake, the tribes of thine inheritance._

Why did you let us wander so far away? Why did you harden our hearts? O God, please return to us because we need you so.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:**

Eze 14:7-9 For every one of the house of Israel, or of the stranger that sojourneth in Israel, which separateth himself from me, and setteth up his idols in his heart, and putteth the stumblingblock of his iniquity before his face, and cometh to a prophet to enquire of him concerning me; I the LORD will answer him by myself: And I will set my face against that man, and will make him a sign and a proverb, and I will cut him off from the midst of my people; and ye shall know that I am the LORD. And if the prophet be deceived when he hath spoken a thing, I the LORD have deceived that prophet, and I will stretch out my hand upon him, and will destroy him from the midst of my people Israel. Read: **Isa 6:10; Deu 2:30**

_18The people of thy holiness have possessed it but a little while: our adversaries have trodden down thy sanctuary._

This holy house that we possessed for a short time—thy temple—the heathen have chopped its paneling into kindling and burnt it to the ground.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:**

Isa 64:11-12 Our holy and our beautiful house, where our fathers praised thee, is burned up with fire: and all our pleasant things are laid waste. Wilt thou refrain thyself for these things, O LORD? wilt thou hold thy peace, and afflict us very sore?
19We are thine: thou never barest rule over them; they were not called by thy name.

We are your people—the ones that you ruled over—it’s been a long time since you ruled over us.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Psa 79:6 Pour out thy wrath upon the heathen that have not known thee, and upon the kingdoms that have not called upon thy name.

Isa 65:1 I am sought of them that asked not for me; I am found of them that sought me not: I said, Behold me, behold me, unto a nation that was not called by my name.

Jer 10:25 Pour out thy fury upon the heathen that know thee not, and upon the families that call not on thy name: for they have eaten up Jacob, and devoured him, and consumed him, and have made his habitation desolate.
They wanted God to rip the skies open and come down like he did at Mt. Sinai. Mountains would shutter and oceans boil. What a God we have and what miracles he can do—He is about ready for another awesome act—this one will be greater than the opening of the Red Sea—It’s all about opening prisons and rivers in deserts—all about a nation coming home from prison. It was about nation building. The real question was about their sin. They were polluted, rotten and infected with unrightness. Were they hopeless? They were ready for the potter to reshape their lives. Their sacred places had been torn down and destroyed by the heathen, and Zion was a ghost town, overgrown with brush, nettles, briers and weeds. How long before God would rend the heavens and do something and how long will God keep quiet? They spoke their minds and said, “are you just going to stand there and be silent and keep punishing us?”

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 64

1 Oh that thou wouldest rend the heavens, that thou wouldest come down, that the mountains might flow down at thy presence,

Oh God, that you would rip open the skies and come down. That you would make the mountains shudder before you and flow like lava.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Psa 18:7-10 Then the earth shook and trembled; the foundations also of the hills moved and were shaken, because he was wroth. There went up a smoke out of his nostrils, and fire out of his mouth devoured: coals were kindled by it. He bowed the heavens also, and came down: and darkness was under his
feet. And he rode upon a cherub, and did fly: yea, he did fly upon the wings of the wind.

As when the melting fire burneth, the fire causeth the waters to boil, to make thy name known to thine adversaries, that the nations may tremble at thy presence!

The consuming fire of your glory would set ablaze the world like a brush fire and boil the oceans dry.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Eze 38:22-23 And I will plead against him with pestilence and with blood; and I will rain upon him, and upon his bands, and upon the many people that are with him, an overflowing rain, and great hailstones, fire, and brimstone. Thus will I magnify myself, and sanctify myself; and I will be known in the eyes of many nations, and they shall know that I am the LORD. Read: Eze 39:27-28; Dan 4:1-3

When thou didst terrible things which we looked not for, thou camest down, the mountains flowed down at thy presence.

When God came down on Mt. Sinai, he did marvels—earth trembled—heavens dropped—people shook—he worked unexpected miracles.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Jdg 5:4-5 LORD, when thou wentest out of Seir, when thou marchedst out of the field of Edom, the earth trembled, and the heavens dropped, the clouds also dropped water. The mountains melted from before the LORD, even that Sinai from before the LORD God of Israel. Read: Exo 34:10-11; Psa 105:27-36

For since the beginning of the world men have not heard, nor perceived by the ear, neither hath the eye seen, O God, beside thee, what he hath prepared for him that waiteth for him.
No ear had ever heard nor eye ever seen—what a God we have—and he is ready to do another awesome act greater than opening the Red Sea.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Psa 31:19 Oh how great is thy goodness, which thou hast laid up for them that fear thee; which thou hast wrought for them that trust in thee before the sons of men!

Heb 11:16 But now they desire a better country, that is, an heavenly: wherefore God is not ashamed to be called their God: for he hath prepared for them a city.

Lam 3:25-26 The LORD is good unto them that wait for him, to the soul that seeketh him. It is good that a man should both hope and quietly wait for the salvation of the LORD.

5Thou meetest him that rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, those that remember thee in thy ways: behold, thou art wroth; for we have sinned: in those is continuance, and we shall be saved.

God was ready to meet those who were willing to work righteousness. They had sinned and kept right on sinning. After so long a time the question was, is there any hope—can we be saved?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Jer 31:18-20 I have surely heard Ephraim bemoaning himself thus; Thou hast chastised me, and I was chastised, as a bullock unaccustomed to the yoke: turn thou me, and I shall be turned; for thou art the LORD my God. Surely after that I was turned, I repented; and after that I was instructed, I smote upon my thigh: I was ashamed, yea, even confounded, because I did bear the reproach of my youth. Is Ephraim my dear son? is he a pleasant child? for since I spake against him, I do earnestly remember him still: therefore my bowels are troubled for him; I will surely have mercy upon him, saith the LORD. Read: Psa 112:1; Act 10:2-4

6But we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are as
filthy rags; and we all do fade as a leaf; and our iniquities, like the wind, have taken us away.

We are infected with sin and as impure as a ministerial cloth—defiled and polluted as a rotten corpse. We are as a faded leaf and the wind of our transgressions blew us away.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Eph 2:1-2 And you hath be quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience:

Psa 1:4 The ungodly are not so: but are like the chaff which the wind driveth away.

7And there is none that calleth upon thy name, that stirreth up himself to take hold of thee: for thou hast hid thy face from us, and hast consumed us, because of our iniquities.

No one would rouse himself and invoke your name, therefore you turned away from us and turned us over to our iniquities. We were left to stew in our own brew.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Eze 22:30 And I sought for a man among them, that should make up the hedge, and stand in the gap before me for the land, that I should not destroy it: but I found none.

 Isa 59:2 But your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid his face from you, that he will not hear.

8But now, O LORD, thou art our father; we are the clay, and thou our potter; and we all are the work of thy hand.
We are clay and God is the potter—they were ready to be shaped into a vessel of honor.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Jer 18:2-6 Arise, and go down to the potter’s house, and there I will cause thee to hear my words. Then I went down to the potter’s house, and, behold, he wrought a work on the wheels. And the vessel that he made of clay was marred in the hand of the potter: so he made it again another vessel, as seemed good to the potter to make it. Then the word of the LORD came to me, saying, O house of Israel, cannot I do with you as this potter? saith the LORD. Behold, as the clay is in the potter’s hand, so are ye in mine hand, O house of Israel.

They are asking God not to be furious with them—don’t hold us guilty forever.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Psa 6:1 To the chief Musician on Neginoth upon Sheminith, A Psalm of David. O LORD, rebuke me not in thine anger, neither chasten me in thy hot displeasure.

Jer 3:12 Go and proclaim these words toward the north, and say, Return, thou backsliding Israel, saith the LORD; and I will not cause mine anger to fall upon you: for I am merciful, saith the LORD, and I will not keep anger for ever.

Thy holy cities are a wilderness, Zion is a wilderness, Jerusalem a desolation.

Your sacred towns look like a desert—your cities have become a wilderness—everything that was beautiful was burned down, and our cities are filled with scrub brush and thickets of briers.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

**2Ki 25:9** And he burnt the house of the LORD, and the king’s house, and all the houses of Jerusalem, and every great man’s house burnt he with fire. Read: *Psa 79:1-7*

*Our holy and our beautiful house, where our fathers praised thee, is burned up with fire: and all our pleasant things are laid waste.*

Our sanctuary and sacred objects are all gone—everything that was beautiful is destroyed. Zion is a ghost city and Jerusalem is overgrown with sage brush, nettles and weeds.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

**2Ch 36:19** And they burnt the house of God, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem, and burnt all the palaces thereof with fire, and destroyed all the goodly vessels thereof.

**Mic 3:12** Therefore shall Zion for your sake be plowed as a field, and Jerusalem shall become heaps, and the mountain of the house as the high places of the forest.

*Wilt thou refrain thyself for these things, O LORD? wilt thou hold thy peace, and afflict us very sore?*

How long God before you rend the heavens and do something? In view of what has happened how long will you keep quiet? Are you just going to stand there and be silent and keep punishing us?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Psa 74:10** O God, how long shall the adversary reproach? shall the enemy blaspheme thy name for ever?
INTRODUCTION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 65

Gentiles had not sought after God but now they are seeking him. They hadn’t bothered to ask but now they want the only God and God says here I am. Twenty-four seven God had called Israel but they just ignored him. They insulted God to his face with idols. They even tried night séances in the grave yard. Their witches brew religion infuriated God. They violated the Ten Commandments and now God was going to make them pay for it—this punishment would continue unto the 3rd generation. God leaves a seed (remnant), God promises the elect lush fields for their flocks in Sharon, and their cattle in the valley of Achor. Those who had forsaken the LORD were destined for the sword and the legacy they leave would be cursed words. But the true servants would eat and drink well. The former hardships would be forgotten and their troubles would be over. They were coming back to Jerusalem with shouting and joy. Their “heaven on earth” had arrived. Long life expectancy was promised to the remnant. They will build, plant, harvest and enjoy life. Wolves and lambs will live together.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 65

*I am sought of them that asked not for me; I am found of them that sought me not: I said, Behold me, behold me, unto a nation that was not called by my name.*

The Gentiles had not sought after God but now they have access to him by faith and God responded by saying, “here I am.”

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

Isa 11:10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand
for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be

Isa 55:5 Behold, thou shalt call a nation that thou knowest not, and nations that knew not thee shall run unto thee because of the LORD thy God, and for the Holy One of Israel; for he hath glorified thee.

Rom 9:24-26 Even us, whom he hath called, not of the Jews only, but also of the Gentiles? As he saith also in Osee, I will call them my people, which were not my people; and her beloved, which was not beloved. And it shall come to pass, that in the place where it was said unto them, Ye are not my people; there shall they be called the children of the living God.

2I have spread out my hands all the day unto a rebellious people, which walketh in a way that was not good, after their own thoughts;

Twenty-four seven God had spread his hands unto Israel but they had been rebellious.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

Deu 31:27 For I know thy rebellion, and thy stiff neck: behold, while I am yet alive with you this day, ye have been rebellious against the LORD; and how much more after my death?

Eze 2:3 And he said unto me, Son of man, I send thee to the children of Israel, to a rebellious nation that hath rebelled against me: they and their fathers have transgressed against me, even unto this very day.

3A people that provoketh me to anger continually to my face; that sacrificeth in gardens, and burneth incense upon altars of brick;

They had insulted God to his face worshiping idols and burning incense.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

Deu 32:16-19 They provoked him to jealousy with strange gods, with abominations provoked they him to anger. They sacrificed unto devils, not
to God; to gods whom they knew not, to new gods that came newly up, whom your fathers feared not. Of the Rock that begat thee thou art unmindful, and hast forgotten God that formed thee. And when the LORD saw it, he abhorred them, because of the provoking of his sons, and of his daughters.

4Which remain among the graves, and lodge in the monuments, which eat swine’s flesh, and broth of abominable things is in their vessels;

This was a witch’s brew religion—they camped at night among the dead and claim to get messages from them.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Mat 8:28 And when he was come to the other side into the country of the Gergesenes, there met him two possessed with devils, coming out of the tombs, exceeding fierce, so that no man might pass by that way.

Isa 66:17 They that sanctify themselves, and purify themselves in the gardens behind one tree in the midst, eating swine’s flesh, and the abomination, and the mouse, shall be consumed together, saith the LORD.

5Which say, Stand by thyself, come not near to me; for I am holier than thou. These are a smoke in my nose, a fire that burneth all the day.

This religion infuriated God—They were too sacred to be touched—they irritated God like smoke from a smoldering fire.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Mat 9:11 And when the Pharisees saw it, they said unto his disciples, Why eateth your Master with publicans and sinners?

Luk 18:9-13 And he spake this parable unto certain which trusted in themselves that they were righteous, and despised others: Two men went up into the temple to pray; the one a Pharisee, and the other a publican. The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself, God, I thank thee, that I am not as other men are, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican. I fast twice in the week, I give tithes of all that I possess. And the publican,
standing afar off, would not lift up so much as his eyes unto heaven, but smote upon his breast, saying, God be merciful to me a sinner.

6\textit{Behold, it is written before me: I will not keep silence, but will recompense, even recompense into their bosom,}

The list of their sins was written out before him and God was not going to tolerate it any longer.

\textbf{CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:}

\textbf{Exo 17:14} And the LORD said unto Moses, Write this\textit{ for} a memorial in a book, and rehearse\textit{ it} in the ears of Joshua: for I will utterly put out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven.

\textbf{Jer 16:18} And first I will recompense their iniquity and their sin double; because they have defiled my land, they have filled mine inheritance with the carcasses of their detestable and abominable things.

7\textit{Your iniquities, and the iniquities of your fathers together, saith the LORD, which have burned incense upon the mountains, and blasphemed me upon the hills: therefore will I measure their former work into their bosom.}

God says it is written in Ex. 20:5 and that they are going to pay for their crimes—they had scorned and insulted God, on the hill tops and mountains. God is going to measure out the punishment not only on the fathers but on the children unto the 3\textsuperscript{rd} and 4\textsuperscript{th} generation. It was the 4\textsuperscript{th} generation that returned.

\textbf{CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:}

\textbf{Exo 20:5} Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God\textit{ am} a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

\textbf{Eze 20:27-28} Therefore, son of man, speak unto the house of Israel, and say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Yet in this your fathers have
blasphemed me, in that they have committed a trespass against me. For when I had brought them into the land, for the which I lifted up mine hand to give it to them, then they saw every high hill, and all the thick trees, and they offered there their sacrifices, and there they presented the provocation of their offering: there also they made their sweet savour, and poured out there their drink offerings.

8Thus saith the LORD, As the new wine is found in the cluster, and one saith, Destroy it not; for a blessing is in it: so will I do for my servants’ sakes, that I may not destroy them all.

God says that he is not going to make a full end of Israel—he will end up with a remnant.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Amo 9:8-9 Behold, the eyes of the Lord GOD are upon the sinful kingdom, and I will destroy it from off the face of the earth; saving that I will not utterly destroy the house of Jacob, saith the LORD. For, lo, I will command, and I will sift the house of Israel among all nations, like as corn is sifted in a sieve, yet shall not the least grain fall upon the earth. Read: Jer 30:11

9And I will bring forth a seed out of Jacob, and out of Judah an inheritor of my mountains: and mine elect shall inherit it, and my servants shall dwell there.

God says Jacob will yield some heirs and Judah will become an inheritor of Zion—God says the elect will inherit these promises.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 11:11-12 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea. And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.
10 And Sharon shall be a fold of flocks, and the valley of Achor a place for the herds to lie down in, for my people that have sought me.

I will give you the lush fields of Sharon in the west for your flocks and the valley of Achor in the east for your cattle.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

Eze 34:13-14 And I will bring them out from the people, and gather them from the countries, and will bring them to their own land, and feed them upon the mountains of Israel by the rivers, and in all the inhabited places of the country. I will feed them in a good pasture, and upon the high mountains of Israel shall their fold be: there shall they lie in a good fold, and in a fat pasture shall they feed upon the mountains of Israel.

11 But ye are they that forsake the LORD, that forget my holy mountain, that prepare a table for that troop, and that furnish the drink offering unto that number.

But the rest of you who forsake me—that have forgot my holy mountain, look out—I am about to consign you to the sword.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

1Ch 28:9 And thou, Solomon my son, know thou the God of thy father, and serve him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind: for the LORD searcheth all hearts, and understandeth all the imaginations of the thoughts: if thou seek him, he will be found of thee; but if thou forsake him, he will cast thee off for ever.

Isa 11:9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea.

12 Therefore will I number you to the sword, and ye shall all bow down to the slaughter: because when I called, ye did not answer; when I spake, ye did not hear; but did evil before mine eyes, and did choose that wherein I delighted not.
Their destiny was the sword—you will bend your neck to the chopping block, because I called you and you wouldn’t listen—you deliberately sinned—you knew that I didn’t like what you were doing but you did it anyway.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:**

**Isa 3:25** Thy men shall fall by the sword, and thy mighty in the war.

**Eze 14:17-21** Or if I bring a sword upon that land, and say, Sword, go through the land; so that I cut off man and beast from it: Though these three men were in it, as I live, saith the Lord GOD, they shall deliver neither sons nor daughters, but they only shall be delivered themselves. Or if I send a pestilence into that land, and pour out my fury upon it in blood, to cut off from it man and beast: Though Noah, Daniel, and Job, were in it, as I live, saith the Lord GOD, they shall deliver neither son nor daughter; they shall but deliver their own souls by their righteousness. For thus saith the Lord GOD; How much more when I send my four sore judgments

**Verse 13** Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD, Behold, my servants shall eat, but ye shall be hungry: behold, my servants shall drink, but ye shall be thirsty: behold, my servants shall rejoice, but ye shall be ashamed:

My servants will have a banquet but you will not get invited. My servants will drink but you will have a parched tongue. My servants will throw a party and have a good time but you will be ashamed.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:**

**Psa 34:10** The young lions do lack, and suffer hunger: but they that seek the LORD shall not want any good thing.

**Mal 3:18** Then shall ye return, and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

**Luk 14:23** And the lord said unto the servant, Go out into the highways and hedges, and compel them to come in, that my house may be filled. For I say unto you, That none of those men which were bidden shall taste of my supper.
Behold, my servants shall sing for joy of heart, but ye shall cry for sorrow of heart, and shall howl for vexation of spirit.

While my servants are singing and having a good time, you will be crushed and broken hearted.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 52:9 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem: for the LORD hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

15And ye shall leave your name for a curse unto my chosen: for the Lord GOD shall slay thee, and call his servants by another name:

The legacy they leave will be that God slew them and their name became a curse word.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Isa 62:2 And the Gentiles shall see thy righteousness, and all kings thy glory: and thou shalt be called by a new name, which the mouth of the LORD shall name.

Act 11:26 And when he had found him, he brought him unto Antioch. And it came to pass, that a whole year they assembled themselves with the church, and taught much people. And the disciples were called Christians first in Antioch.

16That he who blesseth himself in the earth shall bless himself in the God of truth; and he that sweareth in the earth shall swear by the God of truth; because the former troubles are forgotten, and because they are hid from mine eyes.

If you pray for a blessing then you will use the name of the God of Truth. If you take an oath then you will invoke the name of the God of Truth. All of your former troubles and hardships are over and forgotten and hid from my eyes. Don’t live with your life hitched to the hitching post of the past. Forget the things that are behind you and live the new life in Christ. Don’t
live on the fringe edge of doom. Don’t live yesterday’s woes today—don’t cheat yourself.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:**

**Jer 4:2** And thou shalt swear, The LORD liveth, in truth, in judgment, and in righteousness; and the nations shall bless themselves in him, and in him shall they glory.

**Isa 48:1** Hear ye this, O house of Jacob, which are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, which swear by the name of the LORD, and make mention of the God of Israel, but not in truth, nor in righteousness.

**Deu 6:13** Thou shalt fear the LORD thy God, and serve him, and shalt swear by his name.

17 *For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth: and the former shall not be remembered, nor come into mind.*

So wonderful will be the new Jerusalem—when you get home from Babylon’s hell-hole, this place will be a new heaven and a new earth. Your moaning and groaning is over—joy and gladness has arrived like spring time.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:**

**Isa 66:22** For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will make, shall remain before me, saith the LORD, so shall your seed and your name remain.

**2Pe 3:13** Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness.

18 *But be ye glad and rejoice for ever in that which I create: for, behold, I create Jerusalem a rejoicing, and her people a joy.*

Look! Jerusalem is a place of happiness—you have joy, joy, joy deep down in your heart. The earlier troubles are gone—chaos, pain and persecution is over with.
Isa 44:23 Sing, O ye heavens; for the LORD hath done it: shout, ye lower parts of the earth: break forth into singing, ye mountains, O forest, and every tree therein: for the LORD hath redeemed Jacob, and glorified himself in Israel.

Zep 3:14 Sing, O daughter of Zion; shout, O Israel; be glad and rejoice with all the heart, O daughter of Jerusalem.

19And I will rejoice in Jerusalem, and joy in my people: and the voice of weeping shall be no more heard in her, nor the voice of crying.

God says that he is rejoicing in Jerusalem—why shouldn’t you? Look ahead—focus on the future—anticipate the time to come—live with a foretaste of things divine. Weeping and cries of anguish like those recorded in lamentation are all over—your “heaven and earth” has arrived.

Isa 35:10 And the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

Isa 51:11 Therefore the redeemed of the LORD shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy shall be upon their head: they shall obtain gladness and joy; and sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

20There shall be no more thence an infant of days, nor an old man that hath not filled his days: for the child shall die an hundred years old; but the sinner being an hundred years old shall be accursed.

Child mortality in Babylon was the norm. Child sacrifice was like abortion in our day. God tells Israel “no more thence an infant of days.” They won’t have their infants snatched out from under them while in the crib like former time. Old men and women will enjoy a full lifetime. Many are enjoying their 100th birthdays.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:

Deu 4:40 Thou shalt keep therefore his statutes, and his commandments, which I command thee this day, that it may go well with thee, and with thy children after thee, and that thou mayest prolong thy days upon the earth, which the LORD thy God giveth thee, for ever.

Job 5:26 Thou shalt come to thy grave in a full age, like as a shock of corn cometh in in his season.

And they shall build houses, and inhabit them; and they shall plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them.

They built their mega homes and live in them. They planted and raised their crop and vineyards without fear of invading armies.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 62:8-9 The LORD hath sworn by his right hand, and by the arm of his strength, Surely I will no more give thy corn to be meat for thine enemies; and the sons of the stranger shall not drink thy wine, for the which thou hast laboured: But they that have gathered it shall eat it, and praise the LORD; and they that have brought it together shall drink it in the courts of my holiness. Read: Deu 28:30-33

22 They shall not build, and another inhabit; they shall not plant, and another eat: for as the days of a tree are the days of my people, and mine elect shall long enjoy the work of their hands.

They will plant and enjoy their produce. My people will be tough as an oak, and live like trees, and enjoy the work of their hands.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Deu 28:30 Thou shalt betroth a wife, and another man shall lie with her: thou shalt build an house, and thou shalt not dwell therein: thou shalt plant a vineyard, and shalt not gather the grapes thereof.
23*They shall not labour in vain, nor bring forth for trouble; for they are the seed of the blessed of the LORD, and their offspring with them.*

Their children and grand children will be blessed unto 10 generations.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:**

**Lev 26:3-10** If ye walk in my statutes, and keep my commandments, and do them; Then I will give you rain in due season, and the land shall yield her increase, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit. And your threshing shall reach unto the vintage, and the vintage shall reach unto the sowing time: and ye shall eat your bread to the full, and dwell in your land safely. And I will give peace in the land, and ye shall lie down, and none shall make you afraid: and I will rid evil beasts out of the land, neither shall the sword go through your land. And ye shall chase your enemies, and they shall fall before you by the sword. And five of you shall chase an hundred, and an hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight: and your enemies shall fall before you by the sword. For I will have respect unto you, and make you fruitful, and multiply you, and establish my covenant with you. And ye shall eat old store, and bring forth the old because of the new.

24*And it shall come to pass, that before they call, I will answer; and while they are yet speaking, I will hear.*

While you are thinking about your needs—before you pray, God is preparing your answer.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES**
**THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:**

**Psa 91:15** He shall call upon me, and I will answer him: I *will be* with him in trouble; I will deliver him, and honour him.

**Dan 10:12** Then said he unto me, Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words.

25*The wolf and the lamb shall feed together, and the lion shall eat straw*
**like the bullock: and dust shall be the serpent’s meat. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, saith the LORD.**

In those days wolf and lamb, lion and bullock, will dwell together. Daniel has a lion with eagle’s wings and a leopard with a fowl’s wings and four heads in Dan. 7, which represented the kingdom of Persia and Greece. When kingdoms stopped acting like animals and laid down their arms and become peaceful with their neighbors it could be said that the wolf was laying down with the lamb. When Israel returned from captivity wolf and lamb, lion and bullock are dwelling together. In the scriptures a lion with four wings represented Babylon and it receives a heart transplant (heart of a man) and becomes human. Persia is represented under the image of a bear with three ribs in its mouth. (She had eaten up Lydia, Babylon and Egypt), Greece was represented as a leopard with four wings of a fowl. Isa. 14:29 “Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken: for out of the serpent’s root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.” Ahaz is dead but out of this serpent’s root (Ahaz), a snake will come (Hezekiah) and from his roots will come a fiery flying serpent (Manasseh). Even though the rod is broken his son will be a worse scourge than his father and out of him will come a fiery flying serpent. This King of Israel (Manasseh) was represented as a flying fiery serpent, (he was always flying off the handle and had a hot temper) Israel was represented as sheep. Jesus was represented as a Lion and a lamb. Herod was the fox and false teachers were represented as wolves. Babylon was represented as a dragon or a serpent. Ethiopia was represented as flies. Egypt was represented as the crocodile of the Nile. Syria was represented as bees and hornets. Jacob was represented as a worm. In Jer. 50:17 the king of Assyria is called a lion and the king of Babylon is also called a Lion. In Isa 56:11 Israel’s shepherds are called greedy dogs. Finally, let me point out to you that we name our ball clubs hornets, dolphins, wolves, bears and beavers. In conclusion, it was no strange thing that wolves and lambs were eating together, (a peace pact was made between nations) lions were eating with oxen.. Snakes were eating dust and not biting their children. After careful examination of the scriptures you will arrive at this conclusion: Israel has returned from captivity and Persia rules the world and all the nations were under this one world government and so the wolf was dwelling with the lamb and the leopard was lying down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together and dust is the serpent’s meat. In todays language; we might say of two ball clubs that the Jaguars were having dinner with the rams. Peace had finally arrived and Israel (Lamb) was lying down with Persia (bear). See Daniel chapter 7.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

**Isa 11:6-10** The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them. And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice’ den. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea. And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.

**Rev 14:1** And I looked, and, lo, a Lamb stood on the mount Sion, and with him an hundred forty and four thousand, having his Father’s name written in their foreheads.
H eaven is God’s throne—no house on earth can compare. God was not looking for a house, he was looking for a humble man who trembles at his word. They sacrificed, held meetings, observed Sabbaths, new moons and appointed feasts—God hated every minute of it—what he wanted was a person who did justice, loved mercy and walked humbly with him. God had called this self serving—self centered bunch but they never answered—just ignored the prophets. Those who listen and stand in awe will be hated and rejected because of their loyalty. The prophet launches into a discourse on birth and then tells us that Israel was born in one day. When a woman gives birth there is rejoicing so also when this new nation was born. Israel was nurtured in Babylon and like a baby getting its nourishment from its mothers breast Israel got its nourishment from Persia. The prophet says that she would suck the breast of kings—they furnished her everything to rebuild with. She was being breast fed by all nations—from Spain to Syria—from Media to Mesopotamia—from Assyria to Asia. After World War II she comes back to her homeland and sucks the breast of Europe—she is still sucking the breast of America as we send her billions of dollars and arms and the latest technology. This river of prosperity continued to flow. When you feast your eyes on the scriptures regarding the birth of this nation your whole frame will be as vigorous as fresh grass in early spring. God is going to send as missionaries to Spain, Lydia, Russia, Africa, Turkey and far off islands and they will tell his glory to the nations—they will return with the exiles on dromedaries, horses, sleds, mules, and ships. Some of those who return will become priests and assistants. As they leave the gates of Jerusalem they will pass a cemetery where the enemies of God are buried.

EXPOSITION TO ISAIAH CHAPTER 66

1Thus saith the LORD, The heaven is my throne, and the earth is my
footstool: where is the house that ye build unto me? and where is the place of my rest?

Heaven is the seat of God’s power. Where will you build me a house? What temple can you build me that would compare with what I have?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

2Ch 36:22-23 Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the LORD spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah might be accomplished, the LORD stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying, Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, All the kingdoms of the earth hath the LORD God of heaven given me; and he hath charged me to build him an house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all his people? The LORD his God be with him, and let him go up.

2For all those things hath mine hand made, and all those things have been, saith the LORD: but to this man will I look, even to him that is poor and of a contrite spirit, and trembleth at my word.

God says that he owns it all and made it all. What God is looking for is a humble man that trembles at his word.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Isa 42:16 And I will bring the blind by a way that they knew not; I will lead them in paths that they have not known: I will make darkness light before them, and crooked things straight. These things will I do unto them, and not forsake them.

Psa 107:16 For he hath broken the gates of brass, and cut the bars of iron in sunder.

3He that killeth an ox is as if he slew a man; he that sacrificeth a lamb, as if he cut off a dog’s neck; he that offereth an oblation, as if he offered swine’s blood; he that burneth incense, as if he blessed an idol. Yea, they have chosen their own ways, and their soul delighteth in their abominations.
Slaughtering animals or sacrificing a lamb without reverence for God and his word was to no purpose—their solemn meetings, Sabbaths and new moons, calling of assemblies, and appointed feasts was like smoke in one’s eyes. What God wanted was a person who did justice, loved mercy and walked humbly with him.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

Jer 27:5-7 I have made the earth, the man and the beast that are upon the ground, by my great power and by my outstretched arm, and have given it unto whom it seemed meet unto me. And now have I given all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, my servant; and the beasts of the field have I given him also to serve him. And all nations shall serve him, and his son, and his son’s son, until the very time of his land come: and then many nations and great kings shall serve themselves of him.

Jer 50:37 A sword is upon their horses, and upon their chariots, and upon all the mingled people that are in the midst of her; and they shall become as women: a sword is upon her treasures; and they shall be robbed.

Ezr 1:2 Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, The LORD God of heaven hath given me all the kingdoms of the earth; and he hath charged me to build him an house at Jerusalem, which is in Judah.

*I also will choose their delusions, and will bring their fears upon them; because when I called, none did answer; when I spake, they did not hear: but they did evil before mine eyes, and chose that in which I delighted not.*

This deluded bunch had chose nonsense—it was a self-serving, self centered worship that lacked the real ingredient. God had called and called and called—no answer—no return call—they just ignored the prophets.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Exo 19:5 Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people: for all the earth is mine:
Jer 50:17-20 Israel is a scattered sheep; the lions have driven him away: first the king of Assyria hath devoured him; and last this Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon hath broken his bones. Therefore thus saith the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel; Behold, I will punish the king of Babylon and his land, as I have punished the king of Assyria. And I will bring Israel again to his habitation, and he shall feed on Carmel and Bashan, and his soul shall be satisfied upon mount Ephraim and Gilead. In those days, and in that time, saith the LORD, the iniquity of Israel shall be sought for, and there shall be none; and the sins of Judah, and they shall not be found: for I will pardon them whom I reserve.

Isa 46:9 Remember the former things of old: for I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me,

Deu 32:39 See now that I, even I, am he, and there is no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither is there any that can deliver out of my hand.

Job 12:18 He looseth the bond of kings, and girdeth their loins with a girdle.

5Hear the word of the LORD, ye that tremble at his word; Your brethren that hated you, that cast you out for my name’s sake, said, Let the LORD be glorified: but he shall appear to your joy, and they shall be ashamed. Those who anxiously listen and stand in awe at his word and tremble at his word will be hated and rejected—they will cast you out because you are loyal to my name.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT MAKE THE CASE:

6A voice of noise from the city, a voice from the temple, a voice of the LORD that rendereth recompence to his enemies.

The prophet tells them that he can already hear the tumult—it was a city in uproar—it was the thunderous voice coming from the temple. It was God rendering recompense upon his foes.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORE THE TEXT:

Mal 1:11 For from the rising of the sun even unto the going down of the same my name shall be great among the Gentiles; and in every place incense shall be offered unto my name, and a pure offering: for my name shall be great among the heathen, saith the LORD of hosts.

"Before she travailed, she brought forth; before her pain came, she was delivered of a man child."

Long before the labor pains came on she gives birth to a child. Has anyone seen anything as strange as this?

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Jer 18:7-9 At what instant I shall speak concerning a nation, and concerning a kingdom, to pluck up, and to pull down, and to destroy it: If that nation, against whom I have pronounced, turn from their evil, I will repent of the evil that I thought to do unto them. And at what instant I shall speak concerning a nation, and concerning a kingdom, to build and to plant it;

Jer 51:20 Thou art my battle axe and weapons of war: for with thee will I break in pieces the nations, and with thee will I destroy kingdoms;

Amo 3:6 Shall a trumpet be blown in the city, and the people not be afraid? shall there be evil in a city, and the LORD hath not done it?

Who hath heard such a thing? who hath seen such things? Shall the earth be made to bring forth in one day? or shall a nation be born at once? for as soon as Zion travailed, she brought forth her children.

Who ever heard of a woman having a child without labor pains? But, in one day, suddenly, a nation, Israel, is born, even before the birth pains set in. Was there ever a nation born in a day? Was there ever a country that came into existence in an instant? Israel became a country in a day at the end of Babylonian captivity. She was born without labor pains! In an instant, Zion is born; the nation begins.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 44:3** For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry ground: I will pour my spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring:

**Isa 61:3** To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the LORD, that he might be glorified.

9*Shall I bring to the birth, and not cause to bring forth? saith the LORD: shall I cause to bring forth, and shut the womb? saith thy God.*

God asks—should I bring to the birth (the full time of gestation) and not have the baby delivered? No! No! Never!

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT AUTHENTICATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 10:15** Shall the axe boast itself against him that heweth therewith? or shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? as if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself, as if it were no wood.

10*Rejoice ye with Jerusalem, and be glad with her, all ye that love her: rejoice for joy with her, all ye that mourn for her:*  

Rejoice—when a woman gives birth it is a time of rejoicing, singing, celebrating and jubilation. It was a time of congratulations, hugging and dancing—its hip-hip-hurrah! Three cheers.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT ESTABLISH THE CERTAINTY OF THE TEXT:

**Mal 1:6** A son honoureth his father, and a servant his master: if then I be a father, where is mine honour? and if I be a master, where is my fear? saith the LORD of hosts unto you, O priests, that despise my name. And ye say, Wherein have we despised thy name?
11 *That ye may suck, and be satisfied with the breasts of her consolations; that ye may milk out, and be delighted with the abundance of her glory.*

What a picture, a newborn sucking at its mother’s breast for nourishment. When Israel left Babylon they went to Persia and were nurtured there while the proper preparations were made for her to return to her homeland. When she finally returns she is sucking the breast of all the nations as she is furnished everything to rebuild the walls and cities. She was being breast-fed by all nations—from Spain to Syria, from Media to Mesopotamia, from Assyria to Asia. After World War II when she comes back to her homeland she sucks the breast of Europe, and she is still sucking the breast of America. We send her billions of dollars and share the latest technology.

**CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT PRESENT OVERWHELMING PROOF OF THE TEXT:**

**Jer 33:3** Call unto me, and I will answer thee, and shew thee great and mighty things, which thou knowest not.

**Dan 9:2-3** In the first year of his reign I Daniel understood by books the number of the years, whereof the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah the prophet, that he would accomplish seventy years in the desolations of Jerusalem. And I set my face unto the Lord God, to seek by prayer and supplications, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes:

**Eph 2:10** For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.

12 *For thus saith the LORD, Behold, I will extend peace to her like a river, and the glory of the Gentiles like a flowing stream: then shall ye suck, ye shall be borne upon her sides, and be dandled upon her knees.*

The picture continues—its peace like a river—and the glory of the Gentiles flowing like a stream to Israel—Israel is still sucking the prosperity and riches of Gentile nations—it’s a river of prosperity that is flowing to her. A child gets comfort from being dandled upon its mother’s knee and fondled on a mother’s lap.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT ARE CONCLUSIVE AND FINAL:

Isa 40:12 Who hath measured the waters in the hollow of his hand, and meted out heaven with the span, and comprehended the dust of the earth in a measure, and weighed the mountains in scales, and the hills in a balance?

13 As one whom his mother comforteth, so will I comfort you; and ye shall be comforted in Jerusalem.

God says he will console Israel like a mother caressing her son.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT RATIFY THE TEXT:

Isa 52:2-3 Shake thyself from the dust; arise, and sit down, O Jerusalem: loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion. For thus saith the LORD, Ye have sold yourselves for nought; and ye shall be redeemed without money. Read: Isa 48:14-15; Isa 44:28

14 And when ye see this, your heart shall rejoice, and your bones shall flourish like an herb: and the hand of the LORD shall be known toward his servants, and his indignation toward his enemies.

Feast your eyes on what the scriptures teach regarding Israel being born and you will rejoice and your whole frame will be a vigorous as fresh grass in early spring.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT BEAR OUT THE TEXT:

Isa 49:23 And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers: they shall bow down to thee with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the LORD: for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

Psa 149:8 To bind their kings with chains, and their nobles with fetters of iron; To execute upon them the judgment written: this honour have all his saints. Praise ye the LORD. Read: Isa 19:23-25; Isa 61:5-6
15For, behold, the LORD will come with fire, and with his chariots like a whirlwind, to render his anger with fury, and his rebuke with flames of fire.

God is coming with the fire of his anger—he will attack like a tornado—it is the fire of judgment against his enemies.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SPEAK VOLUMES ABOUT THE TEXT:

Isa 8:17 And I will wait upon the LORD, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

16For by fire and by his sword will the LORD plead with all flesh: and the slain of the LORD shall be many.

God will have a purging of the world—the victims will be many—this purging took place when God sent Cyrus to conquer the world which was under God’s judgment.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT SHED LIGHT ON THE TEXT:

Isa 42:17 They shall be turned back, they shall be greatly ashamed, that trust in graven images, that say to the molten images, Ye are our gods.

Jer 10:14-15 Every man is brutish in his knowledge: every founder is confounded by the graven image: for his molten image is falsehood, and there is no breath in them. They are vanity, and the work of errors: in the time of their visitation they shall perish.

17They that sanctify themselves, and purify themselves in the gardens behind one tree in the midst, eating swine’s flesh, and the abomination, and the mouse, shall be consumed together, saith the LORD.

God says that the people who are gathering in these sacred groves and engaging in rituals of eating swine flesh and mice and other abominations are living under a death sentence. Everyone who gathers in the sacred groves and are initiated into the idol religion by these rituals are going to die together.
CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT VERIFY THE TEXT:

**Joe 2:26-27** And ye shall eat in plenty, and be satisfied, and praise the name of the LORD your God, that hath dealt wondrously with you: and my people shall never be ashamed. And ye shall know that I am in the midst of Israel, and that I am the LORD your God, and none else: and my people shall never be ashamed.

18*For I know their works and their thoughts: it shall come, that I will gather all nations and tongues; and they shall come, and see my glory.*

God says he knows what they are doing and what they are thinking and that he is going to gather all nations and tongues to Jerusalem and they will witness his display of glory and might.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT GIVE COUNTEREVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

**Jer 10:12** He hath made the earth by his power, he hath established the world by his wisdom, and hath stretched out the heavens by his discretion.

**Psa 115:16** The heaven, even the heavens, are the LORD’S: but the earth hath he given to the children of men.

19*And I will set a sign among them, and I will send those that escape of them unto the nations, to Tarshish, Pul, and Lud, that draw the bow, to Tubal, and Javan, to the isles afar off, that have not heard my fame, neither have seen my glory; and they shall declare my glory among the Gentiles.*

Those who survive his judgment will be sent as missionaries to Spain, Lydia, Russia, Africa, Turkey and far off islands. They will tell my glory among the nations.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CONFIRM THE TEXT:

**Deu 29:29** The secret things belong unto the LORD our God: but those things
which are revealed belong unto us and to our children for ever, that we may do all the words of this law.

Isa 55:6-7 Seek ye the LORD while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near: Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.

20And they shall bring all your brethren for an offering unto the LORD out of all nations upon horses, and in chariots, and in litters, and upon mules, and upon swift beasts, to my holy mountain Jerusalem, saith the LORD, as the children of Israel bring an offering in a clean vessel into the house of the LORD.

They will return with exiles on dromedaries, horses, sleds, liters and mules and war ships. Their return will be like bringing an offering to the temple.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT CARRY WEIGHT REGARDING THE TEXT:

Isa 41:5 The isles saw it, and feared; the ends of the earth were afraid, drew near, and came. They helped every one his neighbour; and every one said to his brother, Be of good courage.

21And I will also take of them for priests and for Levites, saith the LORD.

Some of the returning exiles who were the priestly tribe became priests and assistants.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT MAKE THE CASE:

Isa 41:1-4 Keep silence before me, O islands; and let the people renew their strength: let them come near; then let them speak: let us come near together to judgment. Who raised up the righteous man from the east, called him to his foot, gave the nations before him, and made him rule over kings? he gave them as the dust to his sword, and as driven stubble to his bow. He pursued them, and passed safely; even by the way that he had not gone with his feet. Who hath wrought and done it, calling the generations from the beginning? I the LORD, the first, and with the last; I am he.
For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will make, shall remain before me, saith the LORD, so shall your seed and your name remain.

God calls this a new heaven and a new earth. In a book written by Cecil Roth he describes the phenomenon as a New World and a Resurrection.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT INDORSE THE TEXT:

Isa 41:22-23 Let them bring them forth, and shew us what shall happen: let them shew the former things, what they be, that we may consider them, and know the latter end of them; or declare us things for to come. Shew the things that are to come hereafter, that we may know that ye are gods: yea, do good, or do evil, that we may be dismayed, and behold it together.

And it shall come to pass, that from one new moon to another, and from one sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith the LORD.

From month to month and week to week all mankind will come to worship me.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES
THAT LEND EVIDENCE TO THE TEXT:

Gen 22:15-17 And the angel of the LORD called unto Abraham out of heaven the second time, And said, By myself have I sworn, saith the LORD, for because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son: That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

And they shall go forth, and look upon the carcases of the men that have transgressed against me: for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh.

As they leave the gates of Jerusalem they will pass the cemetery where the enemies of God have been buried. Worms that never die and fires never quenched is a picture of the horror that these leaders brought on their people.
The memory of these worms lives on in infamy. What they did will seethe and smolder as long as time goes on. The atrocities of men like Hitler and Stalin and Roman rulers will always be remembered and will burn and burn and burn in our memory.

CROSS REFERENCE SCRIPTURES THAT DEMONSTRATE THE TEXT:

**Isa 54:17** No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the LORD, and their righteousness is of me, saith the LORD.

**Zec 10:12** And I will strengthen them in the LORD; and they shall walk up and down in his name, saith the LORD.

**Isa 60:9** Surely the isles shall wait for me, and the ships of Tarshish first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them, unto the name of the LORD thy God, and to the Holy One of Israel, because he hath glorified thee.